Techniques in Sedimentology

Edited by
MAURICE TUCKER
BSc, PhD
Department of Geological Sciences
University of Durham
Durham DH1 3LE
UK

Blackwell Scientific Publications
OXFORD LONDON EDINBURGH BOSTON MELBOURNE
Contents

List of contributors vii

Preface ix

1 Introduction 1

MAURICE TUCKER

2 Collection and analysis of field data 5

JOHN GRAHAM

3 Grain size determination and interpretation 63

JOHN MCMANUS

4 Microscopical techniques: I. Slices, slides, stains and peels 86

JOHN MILLER

5 Microscopical techniques: II. Principles of sedimentary petrography 108

GILL HARWOOD

6 Cathodoluminescence microscopy 174

JOHN MILLER

7 X-ray powder diffraction of sediments 191

RON HARDY and MAURICE TUCKER

8 Use of the scanning electron microscope in sedimentology 229

NIGEL TREWIN

9 Chemical analysis of sedimentary rocks 274

IAN FAIRCHILD, GRAHAM HENDRY, MARTIN QUEST and MAURICE TUCKER

References 355

Index 387
List of contributors

IAN FAIRCHILD
Department of Geological Sciences, The University, Birmingham B15 2TT.

JOHN GRAHAM
Department of Geology, Trinity College, Dublin, Eire.

RON HARDY
Department of Geological Sciences, The University, Durham DH1 3LE.

GILL HARWOOD
Department of Geology, The University, Newcastle upon Tyne NE1 7RU.

GRAHAM HENDRY
Department of Geological Sciences, The University, Birmingham B15 2TT.

JOHN MCMANUS
Department of Geology, The University, Dundee DD1 4HN.

JOHN MILLER
Grant Institute of Geology, The University, Edinburgh EH9 3JW.

MARTIN QUEST
Department of Geological Sciences, The University, Birmingham B15 2TT.
Present address: Core Laboratories, Isleworth, Middlesex TW7 5AB.

NIGEL TREWIN
Department of Geology and Mineralogy, The University, Aberdeen AB9 1AS.

MAURICE TUCKER
Department of Geological Sciences, The University, Durham DH1 3LE.
Preface

Sedimentologists are keen to discover the processes, conditions and environments of deposition and diagenesis of their rocks. They currently use a whole range of quite sophisticated instruments and machines, in addition to routine fieldwork and microscopic study. Although geologists have been making field observations for nearly 200 years, in the last two decades there have been many new approaches to the collection and processing of field data. New sedimentary structures and relationships are still being found in ‘classic’ well sites, and the interpretation of sediments, but there is a need to maximize the information a thin slice of rock will yield. Chemical analyses are being increasingly used to prise the stories from other branches of the earth sciences or are more frequently used by other geologists.

This book aims to cover all the various techniques used in the study of sedimentary rocks. It aims to provide instructions and advice on the various approaches and to give examples of the information obtained and interpretations possible.

One chapter is concerned with the collection of field data, with the emphasis on how these data can be analysed and presented. The following chapter looks at grain size analyses, and grain size parameters and their interpretation. Two chapters deal with microscopic studies: one being concerned with the production of thin sections, peels and depositional and diagenetic textures. The now popular technique of cathodoluminescence, which can reveal hidden structures, follows. The X-ray diffraction of mudrocks, carbonates and cherts, providing information on mineralogy and composition, is treated in and how samples are best prepared and viewed, and then gives examples of SEM uses in soft-rock geology. A final chapter reviews the principles behind the chemistry of sedimentary rocks and discusses the collection and preparation of samples, followed by the techniques of electron beam microanalysis, XRF, AAS, ICP, INAA and stable isotope analysis and the reporting of results. The chapter concludes with examples of the application of chemical analysis to sedimentary problems. This book is a multi-authored volume and so naturally there are different levels of treatment and emphasis throughout the text.

Techniques in Sedimentology is written for final year undergraduates and postgraduates, to give them information and ideas on how to deal with their rocks in the field and samples. The laboratory during dissertation and thesis research. Much suitable background material is also provided which will be relevant to lecture courses. The book will also be invaluable to professional sedimentologists, in industry and academia alike, and to other earth scientists, as a source book for the various techniques covered and for tips and recipes on extracting information from sedimentary rocks.

Maurice Tucker
Durham, March 1988
1. Introduction

MAURICE TUCKER

1.1 Introduction and Rationale

The study of sediments and sedimentary rocks has come a long way from the early days of field observations followed by a cursory examination of samples in the laboratory. Now many sophisticated techniques are applied to data collected in the field and to specimens back in the laboratory. Some of these techniques have been brought in from other branches of the earth sciences, while some have been specifically developed by sedimentologists.

Research on sediments and sedimentary rocks is usually a progressive gathering of information. First, there is the fieldwork, an essential part of any sedimentological project, from which data relating to the conditions and environments of deposition are obtained. With modern sediments, measurements can be made of the various environmental parameters such as salinity, current velocity and suspended sediment content, and the sediments themselves can be subject to close scrutiny and sampling. With ancient sediments, the identification of facies types and facies associations follows from detailed examination of sedimentary structures, lithologies, fossil content etc., and subsequent laboratory work on representative rocks. After consideration of depositional environment, the larger scale context of the sequence in its sedimentary basin may be sought, necessitating information on the broad palaeogeographical setting, the tectonics of the region, both in terms of synsedimentary and post-sedimentary movements, and the subsurface structure, perhaps with input from seismic sections.

With an understanding of a sedimentary rock's deposition and tectonic history, leading to an appreciation of the rock's burial history, the diagenetic changes can be studied to throw light on the patterns of cementation and alteration of the original sediment, and on the nature of pore fluids which have moved through the sedimentary sequence. Although much information on the diagenesis can be obtained from petrographic microscopic examination of thin sections of the rock, sophisticated instruments are increasingly used to analyse the rocks and their components for mineralogical composition, major, minor and trace elements, isotopic signatures and organic content. The data obtained provide much useful information on the diagenesis, and also on the original depositional conditions.

Which techniques to use in sedimentological research depend of course on the questions being asked. The aims of a project should be reasonably clear before work is commenced; knowing what answers are being sought makes it much easier to select the appropriate techniques. There is usually not much point in hitting a rock with all the sophisticated techniques going, in the hope that something meaningful will come out of all the data. It may be that the problem would be solved with a few simple field measurements or five minutes with the microscope on a thin section, rather than a detailed geochemical analysis giving hundreds of impressive numbers which add little to one's understanding of the rock.

The techniques available to sedimentologists, and those covered in this book, often cannot be used for all sedimentary rock types. It is necessary to be aware of what all the various instruments available in a well-found earth sciences department can do and how they can be used with sedimentary rocks. Many such instruments are more frequently used and operated by hard rocks petrologists and geochemists, but they can be used with great success on sedimentary rocks, as long as one is still seeking an answer to a particular question rather than just another analysis. Certain techniques are best suited to specific sedimentary rock types and cannot be used generally to analyse any rock. In the next sections of this introduction (1.2 to 1.9), the techniques covered in this book, in Chapters 2 to 9 are briefly reviewed. Not all the possible techniques available are included in this book and Section 1.10 notes what is omitted and where to find details. It also indicates where new techniques in soft-rock geology are frequently published, so that the keen student can keep up to date with developments in this field.
1.2 COLLECTION AND ANALYSIS OF FIELD DATA: CHAPTER 2

In Chapter 2, John Graham examines the rationale behind fieldwork, and the various ways in which field data can be collected and presented in graphic form are shown. The various sedimentary structures and the identification of lithologies and fossils are not described in detail since there are textbooks on these topics (e.g. Collins & Thompson, 1982; Tucker, 1982), but the problems of recognizing certain structures are aired. The collection and analysis of palaeocurrent data (described in Section 2.3) are important in facies analysis and paleogeographical reconstruction and statistical treatments are available to make the data more meaningful. There are many ways in which to examine a sedimentary sequence for rhythms and cycles (Section 2.4) and again the field data can be manipulated by statistical analysis to reveal trends. This chapter also shows the many ways in which information from the field can be presented for publication.

1.3 GRAIN SIZE DETERMINATION AND INTERPRETATION: CHAPTER 3

It is very important to know quite precisely what the rock size distribution is in a sediment sample and the procedures here are described by John McManus. Sample preparation varies from the unnecessary to having to break up the rock into its constituent grains, dissolve out the cement in acid, or make a thin section of the sample. Sieving, sedimentation methods and Coulter counter analysis can be used for unconsolidated or disaggregated samples, but microscopic measurements are required for fully lithified sandstones and most limestones. With a grain size analysis at hand, many statistical parameters are calculated. From these, with care, it is possible to make deductions on the sediment's conditions and environment of deposition.

1.4 MICROSCOPIC TECHNIQUES I: SLICES, SLIDES, STAINS AND PEELS: CHAPTER 4

The rock thin section is the basis of much routine description and interpretation but all too often the production of the slide is not given thought. John Miller explains how the best can be achieved by double-polished thin sections and describes the various techniques of impregnating, staining and etching to encourage the slide to give up more of its hidden secrets. Acetate peels are frequently made of limestones and the manufacture of these is also discussed.

1.5 MICROSCOPIC TECHNIQUES II: PRINCIPLES OF SEDIMENTARY PETROGRAPHY: CHAPTER 5

This chapter is by Gill Harwood and follows on from the previous one by explaining how the various minerals and textures in sedimentary rocks can be recognized and interpreted. The chapter is written in such a way so that it is applicable to all sedimentary rock types, rather than discussing each separately, as is frequently the case in sedimentary petrography texts. There is a huge textbook literature on 'sed. pet.' and many of the books will be readily available in a university or institute library (see, e.g. Folk, 1966; Scholle, 1978, 1979; Tucker, 1981; Blatt, 1982). Thus, in depositional fabrics (Section 5.2), grain identification, modal composition, point counting techniques, grain morphology, size and orientation, and provenance studies are briefly treated with pertinent literature references and many diagrams, photomicrographs and tables. In diagenetic fabrics (Section 5.3), again a topic with a voluminous literature, the various diagenetic environments and porosity types are noted, and then compaction-related fabrics are described and illustrated. Here, compaction is divided into that resulting from mechanical processes, from chemical (solution) processes between grains, and from chemical processes in lithified sediments. Cementation is a major factor in a rock's diagenesis and Section 5.3.3 demonstrates the variety of cements in sandstones and limestones, their precipitational environments and how the timing of cementation can be deduced. Typical fabrics of dissolution, alteration and replacement are described and illustrated, with emphasis on how these can be distinguished from other diagenetic fabrics. This overview of microscopic fabrics shows what can be seen, how they can be described, and their significance in terms of depositional and diagenetic processes. Sound microscope work is a fundamental prerequisite for geochemical analyses, and of course it provides much basic information on the nature, origin and history of a sedimentary rock.

1.6 CATHODOLUMINESCENCE: CHAPTER 6

This chapter is presented by John Miller and describes a technique which has been very popular amongst carbonate sedimentologists for the last few years. Very pretty colour photographs can be obtained with CL and these have enhanced many a lecture and published paper. The specimen in a vacuum chamber is bombarded with electrons and light is emitted if activator elements are present. An explanation of the luminescence is given, with a consideration of excitation factors and luminescence centres, and then a discussion of equipment needs and operation. Sample preparation is relatively easy; polished thin sections (or slabs) are used. General principles of the description and interpretation of CL results are given, along with applications to sedimentology. It is with carbonate rocks that CL is most used and here it is particularly useful for recognizing different cement generations and for distinguishing replacements from cements. In sandstones it can differentiate between different types of quartz grain, help to spot smallfeldspar crystals, and reveal overgrowths on detrital grains. Good photography is important in CL studies and hints are provided on how the quality of photomicrographs can be improved. These days, a study of carbonate diagenesis is not complete without consideration of cathodoluminescence and the textures it reveals.

1.7 X-RAY DIFFRACTION OF SEDIMENTARY ROCKS: CHAPTER 7

X-ray diffraction is a routine technique in the study of mudrocks and is frequently used with carbonate rocks too, and cherts. Ron Hardy and Maurice Tucker provide a brief general introduction to XRD, the theory and the instrument. XRD is the standard technique for determining clay mineralogy and various procedures are adopted to separate the different clay minerals. Examples are given of how XRD data from muds can be used to infer palaeoclimates, transport direction, conditions of deposition, and the pattern of diagenesis. With carbonates, XRD is mostly used to study the composition of modern sediments. Elements of calcite, and the stoichiometry and ordering of dolomites. The procedure is relatively straightforward and the precision is good, and much useful information is provided.

Fine-grained siliceous rocks are often difficult to describe petrographically, but XRD enables the minerals present,opal A, opal C-T or quartz, to be determined readily. It has been especially useful in documenting the diagenesis of deep sea siliceous ooze through to radiolarian and diatom cherts.

1.8 SCANNING ELECTRON MICROSCOPY IN SEDIMENTOLOGY: CHAPTER 8

The SEM has become popular for studying fine-grained sedimentary rocks and for examining the ultrastructure of grains, fossils and cements. Nigel Trewhin briefly describes the microscope and provides an account of how sedimentary materials are prepared for the machine. The SEM is a delicate machine and often the picture on the screen or the photographs may not be as good as expected. Comments are given on how such difficulties can be overcome or minimized. The SEM also has the facility for attachments providing analysis, EDS and EDAX, and these can be most useful when the elemental composition of the specimen is not known. An SEM can also be adjusted to give a back-scattered electron image and with mudrocks this can reveal the nature of the clay minerals themselves. The SEM has been applied to many branches of sedimentology, particularly the study of the surface textures of grains, both carbonate and clastic. In diagenetic studies, the SEM is extensively used with sandstones, to look at the nature of clay cements, evidence of grain dissolution and quartz overgrowths. In carbonates too, the fine structure of ooids and cements is only seen with SEM examination.

1.9 CHEMICAL ANALYSIS OF SEDIMENTARY ROCKS: CHAPTER 9

In many branches of sedimentology, chemical analyses are made to determine major, minor and trace element concentrations and stable isotope signatures, to give information on the conditions of deposition and diagenesis, and on long- and short-term variations in seawater chemistry and elemental cycling. This chapter, largely written by Ian Fairchild, with contributions from colleagues Graham Hendry and Martin Quest, and Maurice Tucker, offers a quite detailed background is given on some of the
4 M. E. TUCKER

important principles of sedimentary geochemistry: concentrations and activities, equilibrium, adsorption, incorporation of trace elements and partition coefficients, and stable isotope fractionation. This chapter should help the reader appreciate some of the problems in interpreting geochemical data from rocks where, commonly, inferences are being made about the nature of fluids from which precipitation took place. In sedimentary geochemistry much emphasis is now placed on the sample itself since there is a great awareness of the chemical inhomogeneities in a coarse-grained, well-cemented rock. Individual phases and the sorts of data that are obtained. A further section discusses precision and accuracy, the use of standards and how data can be presented. To illustrate the use of geochemical data from sedimentary rocks, applications are described to the study of provenance and weathering, the deduction of environmental parameters, diagenesis and pore fluid chemistry, and elemental cycling.

1.10 TECHNIQUES NOT INCLUDED

This book describes most of the techniques currently employed by sedimentologists in their research into facies and diagenesis. It does not cover techniques more in the field of basin analysis, such as seismic stratigraphic interpretation, and decompaction, backstripping and geohistory analysis. A recent book on this which includes wire-line log interpretation and the tectonic analysis of basins is published by the Open University (1987). The measurement of porosity-permeability is also not covered.

This book does not discuss the techniques for collecting modern sediments through shallow coring, including vibracoring. The latter is described by Lanesky et al. (1979). Smith (1984) and others. There are many papers describing very simple inexpensive coring devices for marsh, tidal flat and shallow subtidal sediments (see, e.g. Perillo et al., 1984). Also with modern deposits (and some older unconsolidated sands), large peels can be taken to demonstrate the sedimentary structures. Cloth is put against a smoothed, usually vertical surface of damp sand and a low viscosity epoxy resin spray or painted on to and through the cloth to the sand. On drying and removal, the sedimentary structures are neatly and conveniently preserved on the cloth. This technique is fully described by Bouma (1969). The techniques used by sedimentologists are constantly being improved and new ones developed. Many sedimentological journals publish the occasional accounts of a new technique or method, and in many research papers there is often a methods section, which may reveal a slightly different, perhaps better, way of doing something. The Journal of Sedimentary Petrology publishes many 'research methods papers', all collected together into one particular issue of the year. It is useful to keep an eye out for this section for the latest developments in techniques in sedimentology.

2 Collection and analysis of field data

JOHN GRAHAM

2.1 INTRODUCTION

Much of the information preserved in sedimentary rocks can be observed and recorded in the field. The amount of detail which is recorded will vary with the purpose of the study and the amount of time and money available. This chapter is primarily concerned with those studies involving sedimentological aspects of sedimentary rocks rather than structural or other aspects. Common aims of such studies are the interpretation of depositional environments and stratigraphic correlation. Direction is towards ancient sedimentary rocks rather than modern sediments, since techniques for studying the latter are often different and specialized, and are admirably covered in other texts such as Bouma (1969). In fieldwork the tools and aids commonly used are relatively simple, and include maps and aerial photographs, hammer and chisels, dilute acid, hand lens, penknife, tape, camera, binoculars and compassclinometer.

During fieldwork, information is recorded at selected locations within sedimentary formations. This selection is often determined naturally such that all available exposures are examined. In other cases, e.g. in glaciated terrains, exposure may be sufficiently abundant that deliberate sampling is possible. The generation of natural exposures may well include a bias towards particular lithologies, e.g. sandstones tend to be exposed preferentially to mudrocks. These limitations must be considered if statements regarding bulk properties of rock units are to be made. For many purposes, vertical profiles of sedimentary strata are most useful. In order to construct these, continuous exposures perpendicular to dip and strike are preferred. With such continuous exposures, often chosen where access is easy, one must always be cautious of a possible bias because of an underlying lithological control.

The main aspects of sedimentary rocks which are likely to be recorded in the field are:

- Lithology: mineralogy/composition and colour of the rock.
- Texture: grain size, grain shape, sorting and fabric designation of beds and bedding planes, bed thickness, bed geometry, contacts between beds.
- Sedimentary structures: internal structures of beds, structures on bedding surfaces and larger scale structures involving several beds.
- Fossil content: type, mode of occurrence and preservation of both body fossils and trace fossils.
- Palaeocurrent data: orientation of palaeocurrent indicators and other essential structural information.

In some successions there will be an abundance of information which must be recorded concisely and objectively. Records are normally produced in three complementary forms and may be augmented by data from samples collected for further laboratory work. These are:

(i) Field notes: These are written descriptions of observations which will also include precise details of location. Guidance on the production of an accurate, concise and neat notebook is given in Barnes (1981), Moseley (1981) and Tucker (1982).

(ii) Drawings and photographs: Many features are best described by means of carefully labeled field sketches, supplemented where possible by photographs. All photographs must be cross referenced to field notes or logs and it is important to include a scale on each photograph and sketch.

(iii) Graphic logs: These are diagrams of measured vertical sections through sedimentary rock units. There are a variety of formats which are discussed below (Section 2.2.9). Although many logs are constructed on pre-printed forms, additional field notes accompany them in most cases.
important principles of sedimentary geochemistry; concentrations and activities, equilibrium, adsorption, incorporation of trace elements and partition coefficients, and stable isotope fractionation. This chapter should help the reader appreciate some of the problems in interpreting geochemical data from rocks where, commonly, inferences are being made about the nature of fluids from which precipitation took place. In sedimentary geochemistry much emphasis is now placed on the sample itself since there is a great awareness of the chemical inhomogeneities in a coarse-grained, well-cemented rock. Individual grains or growth zones in a cement are now analysed where possible, rather than the bulk analyses of whole rocks.

The techniques covered in this chapter are X-ray fluorescence, atomic absorption spectrometry, inductively-coupled plasma optical emission and mass spectrometry, electron microbeam analysis, neutron activation analysis and stable isotope (C.O.S) analysis. With the treatment of most of these techniques, the accent is not on the instrument operation, or theory — since there are many textbooks covering these aspects (e.g. Potts, 1987) — but on how sedimentary rocks can be analysed by these methods and the sorts of data that are obtained. A further section discusses precision and accuracy, the use of standards and how data can be presented.

To illustrate the use of geochemical data from sedimentary rocks, applications are described to the study of provenance and weathering, the deduction of environmental parameters, diagenesis and pore fluid chemistry, and elemental cycling.

1.10 TECHNIQUES NOT INCLUDED

This book describes most of the techniques currently employed by sedimentologists in their research into facies and diagenesis. It does not cover techniques more in the field of basin analysis, such as seismic stratigraphic interpretation, and decomposition, backstripping and geohistory analysis. A recent book on this which includes wire-line log interpretation and the tectonic analysis of basins is published by the Open University (1987). The measurement of porosity-permeability is also not covered.

This book does not discuss the techniques for collecting modern sediments through shallow coring, including vibrocoring. The latter is described by Lanesky et al. (1979). Smith (1984) and others. There are many papers describing very simple inexpensive coring devices for marsh, tidal flat and shallow subtidal sediments (see, e.g. Perillo et al., 1984). Also with modern deposits (and some older unconsolidated sands), large peels can be taken to demonstrate the sedimentary structures. Cloth is put against a smoothed, usually vertical surface of damp sand and a low viscosity epoxy resin sprayed or painted on to and through the cloth to the sand. On drying and removal, the sedimentary structures are neatly and conveniently preserved on the cloth. This technique is fully described by Bouma (1969).

The techniques used by sedimentologists are constantly being improved and new ones developed. Many sedimentological journals publish the occasional accounts of a new technique or method, and in many research papers there is often a methods section, which may reveal a slightly different, perhaps better, way of doing something. The Journal of Sedimentary Petrology publishes many 'research-methods papers', all collected together into one particular issue of the year. It is useful to keep an eye out for this section for the latest developments in techniques in sedimentology.

2 Collection and analysis of field data

JOHN GRAHAM

2.1 INTRODUCTION

Much of the information preserved in sedimentary rocks can be observed and recorded in the field. The amount of detail which is recorded will vary with the purpose of the study and the amount of time and money available. This chapter is primarily concerned with those studies involving sedimentological aspects of sedimentary rocks rather than structural or other aspects. Common aims of such studies are the interpretation of depositional environments and stratigraphic correlation. Direction is towards ancient sedimentary rocks rather than modern sediments, since techniques for studying the latter are often different and specialized, and are admirably covered in other texts such as Bouma (1969).

Fieldwork the tools and aids commonly used are relatively simple, and include maps and aerial photographs, hammer and chisels, dilute acid, hand lens, penknife, tape, camera, binoculars and compass-clinometer.

During fieldwork, information is recorded at selected locations within sedimentary formations. This selection is often determined naturally such that all available exposures are examined. In other cases, e.g. in glaciated terrains, exposure may be sufficiently abundant that deliberate sampling is possible. The generation of natural exposures may well include a bias towards particular lithologies, e.g. sandstones tend to be exposed preferentially to mudrocks. These limitations must be considered if statements regarding bulk properties of rock units are to be made. For many purposes, vertical profiles of sedimentary strata are most useful. In order to construct these, continuous exposures perpendicular to dip and strike are preferred. With such continuous exposures, often chosen where access is easy, one must always be cautious of a possible bias because of an underlying lithological control.

The main aspects of sedimentary rocks which are likely to be recorded in the field are:

- Lithology: mineralogy/composition and colour of the rock.
- Texture: grain size, grain shape, sorting and fabric.
- Beds: designation of beds and bedding planes, bed thickness, bed geometry, contacts between beds.
- Sedimentary structures: internal structures of beds, structures on bedding surfaces and larger scale structures involving several beds.
- Fossil content: type, mode of occurrence and preservation of both body fossils and trace fossils.
- Palaeocurrent data: orientation of palaeocurrent indicators and other essential structural information.

In some successions there will be an abundance of information which must be recorded concisely and objectively. Records are normally produced in three complementary forms and may be augmented by data from samples collected for further laboratory work. These are:

(i) Field notes; These are written descriptions of observed features which will also include precise details of location. Guidance on the production of an accurate, concise and neat notebook is given in Barnes (1981), Moseley (1981) and Tucker (1982).

(ii) Drawings and photographs: Many features are best described by means of carefully labelled field sketches, supplemented where possible by photographs. All photographs must be cross referenced to field notes or logs and it is important to include a scale on each photograph and sketch.

(iii) Graphic logs: These are diagrams of measured vertical sections through sedimentary rock units. There are a variety of formats which are discussed below (Section 2.2.9). Although many logs are constructed on pre-printed forms, additional field notes accompany them in most cases.
2.2 Recording in the Field

2.2.1 Lithology Identification and Description

The ability to recognize different sedimentary rock types is embodied in most geology courses and is amply covered in texts such as Tucker (1981) and Blatt (1982). Such identification is generally quicker and more reliable with increased experience in the field, acquired initially under controlled conditions, i.e., with supervision and laboratory back up. Although there is a huge range of sedimentary rock types, by far the majority of successions contain only mudrocks, sandstones, conglomerates, limestones and dolomites, evaporites, and their admixtures. Thus some comments are made here on the recording of these major rock types.

Mudrocks

Mudrocks can be subdivided in the field according to a simple objective scheme such as the widely accepted one shown in Table 2.1 (Ingram, 1953). It involves only the approximate determination of grain size and fissility. Colour, which is also particularly useful in mudrocks, is generally employed as a prefix. Application of more sophisticated laboratory techniques is necessary to obtain compositional information (Chapters 4, 5 and 9).

Sandstones

The lithology of sandstones, in terms of the grains/matrix ratio, the main detrital constituents, and the type of cement, can commonly be identified in the field, although detailed description and classification require thin section analysis (Chapters 7, 8 and 9). The problem of matrix percentage and origin is difficult even in thin section (Blatt, 1982), but it is often possible in a crude way to distinguish matrix-rich (wackes) from matrix-poor (arenites) sandstones in the field. This is most difficult when lithic grains are dominant and the sandstones are dark coloured and slightly metamorphosed and/or deformed.

Conglomerates

Conglomerates contrast with other rock types in that most of the measurement, description and classification is undertaken in the field, and laboratory study often takes a secondary role. A full description will involve measurement of size, determination of clast or matrix support, description of internal fabric and structures and data on composition (Fig. 2.1). Some commonly used descriptive terms for these coarse grained sedimentary rocks are:

Diamictite: a non-genetic term referring to any poorly sorted, terrigenous, generally non-calcareous, clast-sand-mud admixture regardless of depositional environment.

Breccia: a term used when the majority of the clasts are angular (in the sense of Section 2.2.2).

Extraformational: a term to describe clasts from source rocks outside the basin of deposition.

Intraformational: a term to describe clasts from fragmentation processes that take place within the basin of deposition and that are contemporaneous with sedimentation.

Oligomict: a term to describe conglomerates where one clast type, usually of stable, resistant material, is dominant.

Polymict (petromict): a term to describe conglomerates where several clast types are present.

Description can be enhanced by using the dominant clast size and clast type as prefixes, e.g. granite boulder conglomerate. A special series of terms is used where volcanic processes are involved in conglomerate formation (Lajoie, 1984).

Further information on the sedimentary structures present in conglomerates can be conveyed by use of the concise lithofacies codes as developed by Miall (1977, 1978), Rust (1978) and Eyles, Eyles & Miall (1983) (Table 2.2). Although these have been developed specifically for alluvial fan, fluvial and glacial lithofacies, there is every likelihood that they will and can be used for all conglomerates. These

Table 2.1. Scheme for nomenclature of fine-grained clastic sedimentary rocks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grain size</th>
<th>General terms</th>
<th>Non-fissile</th>
<th>Fissile</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Silt + clay</td>
<td>Mudrock</td>
<td>Mudstone</td>
<td>Shale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silt &gt; clay</td>
<td>Siltrock</td>
<td>Siltstone</td>
<td>Silt shale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clay &gt; silt</td>
<td>Clayrock</td>
<td>Claystone</td>
<td>Clay shale</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 2.1. Features used in a textural and structural classification of conglomerate (from Harms, Southard & Walker, 1982). Under fabric, codes a and b refer to long and intermediate axes respectively; p = parallel to flow, t = transverse to flow. i = imbricate. (Reproduced by permission of SEPM.)
(a) Criteria used for low sinuosity and glaciofluvial stream deposits (modified from Miall, 1977)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Lithofacies Description</th>
<th>Sedimentary Structures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gms</td>
<td>Massive, matrix-supported gravel</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gm</td>
<td>Massive or crudely bedded gravel</td>
<td>Horizontal bedding, imbrication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gr</td>
<td>Gravel, stratified</td>
<td>Trough crossbeds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gp</td>
<td>Gravel, stratified</td>
<td>Planar crossbeds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>St</td>
<td>Sand, medium to coarse, may be pebbly</td>
<td>Solitary (theta) or grouped (pi) trough crossbeds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sp</td>
<td>Sand, medium to coarse, may be pebbly</td>
<td>Solitary (alpha) or grouped (omicron) planar crossbeds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sr</td>
<td>Sand, very fine to coarse</td>
<td>Ripple marks of all types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sh</td>
<td>Sand, very fine to very coarse, may be pebbly</td>
<td>Horizontal lamination, parting or streaming lineation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Si</td>
<td>Sand, fine</td>
<td>Low angle (10°) crossbeds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Se</td>
<td>Erosional scours with intraclasts</td>
<td>Crude crossbedding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ss</td>
<td>Sand, fine to coarse, may be pebbly</td>
<td>Broad, shallow scours including cross-stratification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ssc</td>
<td>Sand</td>
<td>Analogous to Ss, Sh, Sp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fl</td>
<td>Sand, silt, mud</td>
<td>Fine lamination, very small ripples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fac</td>
<td>Silt, mud</td>
<td>Laminated to massive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fcf</td>
<td>Mud</td>
<td>Massively with freshwater molusces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fm</td>
<td>Mud, silt</td>
<td>Massive, dessication cracks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fr</td>
<td>Silt, mud</td>
<td>Rootlet traces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Coal, Carbonaceous</td>
<td>Plants, mud films</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>Carbonate</td>
<td>Pedogenic features</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) Diagnostic criteria for recognition of common matrix-supported diamict lithofacies (from Eyles et al., 1983)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Lithofacies Description</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dmm</td>
<td>Matrix-supported, massive</td>
<td>Structureless mud/sand/pebble admixture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dmm(r)</td>
<td>Dmm with evidence of resedimentation</td>
<td>Initially appears structureless but careful cleaning, macro-sectioning, or X-ray photography reveals subtle textural variability and fine structure (e.g. silt or clay stringers with small flow noses). Stratification less than 10% of unit thickness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dms</td>
<td>Matrix-supported, massive, sheared</td>
<td>Dense, matrix supported diamicite with locally high clast concentrations. Presence of distinctively shaped flat-iron clasts oriented parallel to flow direction, sheared</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dms(r)</td>
<td>Dms with evidence of resedimentation</td>
<td>Flow noses frequently present; diamicite may contain rafts of deformed silt/clay laminae and abundant silt/stringers and rip-up clasts. May show slight grading. Dms(r) units often have higher clast content than massive units; clast clusters common. Clast fabric random or parallel to bedding. Erosion and incorporation of underlying material may be evident</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dmc</td>
<td>Matrix-supported, stratified diamicite</td>
<td>Diamicite often coarse (wiauswooled) interbedded with sandy, silty and gravelly beds showing evidence of traction current activity (e.g. ripples, trough or planar cross-bedding). May be recorded as Dmm, St, Dms, Sr etc. according to scale of logging. Abundant sandy stringers in diamicite. Units may have channelized bases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dmg</td>
<td>Matrix-supported, graded</td>
<td>Diamicite exhibits variable vertical grading in either matrix or clast content; may grade into Dcg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dmg(r)</td>
<td>Dmg — with evidence of resedimentation</td>
<td>Clast imbrication common</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Lithofacies Description</th>
<th>Sedimentary structures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dmm(c)</td>
<td>Dmm with evidence of current reworking</td>
<td>Initially appears structureless but careful cleaning, macro-sectioning, or X-ray photography reveals subtle textural variability and fine structure (e.g. silt or clay stringers with small flow noses). Stratification less than 10% of unit thickness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dmm(s)</td>
<td>Matrix-supported, massive, sheared</td>
<td>Dense, matrix supported diamicite with locally high clast concentrations. Presence of distinctively shaped flat-iron clasts oriented parallel to flow direction, sheared</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dms</td>
<td>Matrix-supported, stratified diamicite</td>
<td>Obvious textural differentiation or structure within diamicite. Stratification more than 10% of unit thickness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dms(r)</td>
<td>Dms with evidence of resedimentation</td>
<td>Flow noses frequently present; diamicite may contain rafts of deformed silt/clay laminae and abundant silt/stringers and rip-up clasts. May show slight grading. Dms(r) units often have higher clast content than massive units; clast clusters common. Clast fabric random or parallel to bedding. Erosion and incorporation of underlying material may be evident</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dmc</td>
<td>Dmc with evidence of current reworking</td>
<td>Diamicite often coarse (wiauswooled) interbedded with sandy, silty and gravelly beds showing evidence of traction current activity (e.g. ripples, trough or planar cross-bedding). May be recorded as Dmm, St, Dms, Sr etc. according to scale of logging. Abundant sandy stringers in diamicite. Units may have channelized bases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dmg</td>
<td>Dmg — with evidence of resedimentation</td>
<td>Clast imbrication common</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Schemes are still being refined and modified (cf. Eyles et al., 1983 with McCabe, Dardis & Hanvey, 1984 and Shultz, 1984) and the overlap between the D (diamicite) and G (gravel) codes needs further clarification. The codes should not be regarded as all that is needed for environmental interpretation.
Many published studies of clast composition are of limited value, either due to lack of specification of clast size or to problems of how the clasts to be measured were selected. Techniques of random selection of clasts involve the placing of a sampling grid, for example chalked squares or a piece of fish net, over the exposure and measuring either at grid intersections or within small grid squares. The former may be difficult to apply if only certain sizes are accepted; the latter may introduce bias if only a limited number of clasts per square are to be measured. It is important that the method of data collection is clearly stated so that its limitations can be assessed by later workers.

**LIMESTONES AND DOLOMITES**

Field distinction of carbonate rocks is possible, but detailed description is best performed in the laboratory using thin sections and acetate peels (Chapter 4) although under favourable conditions the latter may be made in the field. Dilute 10% HCl is a standard field aid. Whilst limestones will react vigorously, most dolomites will show little or no reaction unless they are powdered. The addition of Alizarin red S in HCl will stain limestones but not dolomites (Chapter 4) and this can be used in the field. In addition many dolomites are yellow or brown weathering, harder than limestones and may show poor fossil preservation. In sequences of alternating limestones and dolomites, the beds of dolomite are commonly more intensely jointed and fractured than the beds of limestone.

![Fig. 2.3. Diagram to show changes in clast composition with time for the Midland Valley of Scotland (from Bluck, 1984). GS = greenschist, LA = lithic arenite, VV = vesicular volcanics, V = other volcanics, O = other. (Reproduced by permission of the Royal Society, Edinburgh.)](http://jurassic.ru/)

**COLLECTION AND ANALYSIS OF FIELD DATA**

- **Diagram**

Limestones are classified according to two well tried and tested schemes which, although designed for microscope work, can often be applied in the field. It is more likely that a field identification can be made using the classification of Dunham (1962), while later laboratory work can identify the constituent components through which the Folk (1962) classification may be applied. Even if a full identification is not possible, any recognizable allochem
EVAPORITES

Evaporites are chemical sediments that have been precipitated from water following the evaporative concentration of dissolved salts. Where these rocks are preserved at outcrop there is little difficulty in field description and preliminary identification (see Kendall, 1984 for a recent review). However, because of their soluble nature, evaporites are frequently dissolved or replaced in the subsurface. It is thus important to be aware of the typical pseudomorphs of evaporites which can be recognized, e.g. cubic halite crystals. Replacement is commonly by calcite, quartz or dolomite. Collapse features are also common where dissolution has occurred and a careful check should be made where disrupted or brecciated horizons are found.

MIXED LITHOLOGIES

Lithologies which are essentially mixtures of other rock types are frequent in some successions. At present there seems to be little agreement on the nomenclature of admixtures. An objective and consistent procedure of labelling these rocks whilst identifying the main and admixing lithologies is necessary. The commonest admixtures are of siliciclastic and carbonate sediments and a textural and compositional classification for these has recently been proposed by Mount (1985).

2.2.2 Texture

GRAIN SIZE

Because the determination of grain size is basic to sedimentological fieldwork, it is fortunate that the grade scale proposed by Wentworth (1922) is now internationally accepted as a standard (see Chapter 3 and Table 3.4). However, the choice of what to measure can be somewhat different for different parts of the grade scale. For conglomerates it is commonly maximum clast size that is measured, although it is advisable to estimate modal size(s) as well. Techniques for measuring maximum clast size have varied considerably among different workers, as shown in Table 2.3. In the absence of an accepted standard it is thus necessary to state how the measurement was made. The maximum size of clasts is used as a parameter partly because the measurement is easily made but also because of its known relationship to flow competence. For sandstone it is usually modal size which is estimated by means of visual comparison to a reference card or block. These reference sets are constructed either by gluing sieved sand of each size

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Measurement of maximum clast size</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Block (1967)</td>
<td>Average of 10 largest clasts in 0.5 × 0.5 m square</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steel et al. (1977)</td>
<td>Average of 10 largest clasts (after omission of 'outsized' clasts) from an area over several metres on either side of the point of bed thickness measurement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heward (1978)</td>
<td>Average of longest axes of 25 largest clasts 1–5 m each side of section line at intervals 1 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suryik (1978)</td>
<td>Measure 12 largest clasts from each bed; omit two largest then average</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allen (1981)</td>
<td>Average of 10 largest clasts in rectangular sampling area, height 0.5 m, width determined by size of largest clast such that $l = 0.69r^2$ where $l =$ lateral sampling distance (cm), $r =$ long axis/2 of largest clast (cm)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 2.4. Regional distribution of gabbro pebbles in the Solund Conglomerate, Devonian, Norway (from Nilsen, 1968). (Reproduced by permission of Norges Geologiske Undersøkelse.)

Fig. 2.5. Construction of simple grain size comparator for field use in (a) sectional and (b) plan views (after Blatt, 1982). (Reproduced by permission of Freeman.)
fraction on to an annotated card (e.g. Friend et al., 1976) or by placing sieved sand within a series of depressions in a plastic ruler (e.g. Blatt, 1982 and Fig. 2.5). These reference sets must be small and durable. A similar approach for most sand sizes and finer gravels has long been used by Soviet geologists (Chilingar, 1982; Fig. 2.6). These charts can be easily fixed into the field notebook.

Grain size of mudrocks is much more difficult to estimate in the field and it is probably unrealistic to attempt more than the determination of whether silt exceeds clay or vice versa. This can be accomplished by using a combination of hand lens and ‘feel’. Nibbling a small piece of mudrock with the teeth can be a useful test. Lack of abrasion plus a generally greasy or soapy feel will suggest dominance of clay; a gritty abrasive feel indicates the presence of silt-grade quartz, of which some estimate may be possible with a powerful hand lens. In mudrocks where there is a regionally developed cleavage, the spacing of cleavage planes may locally be a useful guide.

**GRAIN SHAPE**

Shape of sedimentary particles is a complex property such that there are even differences of opinion as to what constitutes shape. It is taken here in the sense of Barrett (1980) as comprising form, roundness and surface texture. Only aspects of the first two are normally observable in the field.

Roundness is generally described by means of comparison to standard images which can be readily taped into the field notebook (Fig. 2.9). Field estimation of sorting in mudrocks is generally not possible. When studying limestones and conglomerates it is probably unrealistic to attempt more than the determination of whether silt exceeds clay or vice versa. This can be accomplished by using a combination of hand lens and ‘feel’. Nibbling a small piece of mudrock with the teeth can be a useful test. Lack of abrasion plus a generally greasy or soapy feel will suggest dominance of clay; a gritty abrasive feel indicates the presence of silt-grade quartz, of which some estimate may be possible with a powerful hand lens. In mudrocks where there is a regionally developed cleavage, the spacing of cleavage planes may locally be a useful guide.

Roundness is generally described by means of comparison to standard images which can be readily taped into the field notebook. It has been shown that there is considerable operator variation with these

Sorting

In the field degrees of sorting are most commonly determined for sandstones, usually by visual comparison with a number of standard images which can be taped into the fieldnote book (Fig. 2.9). Field estimation of sorting in mudrocks is generally not possible. When studying limestones and conglomerates the presence of clast or matrix support is important in description and classification, e.g. in the application of the Dunham nomenclature.

**FABRIC**

Fabric refers to the mutual arrangement of grains within a rock, i.e. their orientation and packing. Fabrics may be produced during sedimentation or by later tectonic processes. Careful measurement will generally allow this distinction. The commonest fabrics are those produced by the orientation of elongate particles such as fossils in limestones, disc, blades and rods in conglomerates. This alignment may define bedding or may provide evidence of palaeocurrent direction as in imbrication (Section 2.3.2, Potter & Pettijohn, 1977). Fabrics also occur in finer-grained sedimentary rocks but are not always observable in the field.

**POROSITY AND PERMEABILITY**

It may be possible to make rough estimates of the amount and origin of porosity and permeability in the field even though accurate measurement is not possible. For example, one may note partially filled openings in fossils, or irregular channels formed by fracturing, leaching or alteration. However, there are many problems such as lateral variability of porosity over small distances and the fact that surface samples may not be representative of the rock’s average porosity.

**2.2.3 Colour**

This can an important attribute in the description of many sedimentary rocks. There are basically two methods of description. By far the most rapid and simple is the subjective impression of the geologist in the field. Whilst this may be adequate for some general surveys it does lack objectivity, for colour perception is known to vary considerably among workers. More objective is the use of a standard colour chart such as that published by the Geological Society of America (Goddard et al., 1975) based on the Munsell Colour System. The form and arrangement of the colour system are shown in Fig. 2.10. The first step is to determine the hue of the rock. There are 10 major hues (Fig. 2.10), each one divided into 10 divisions. Thus SP would refer to the mid-point of the purple hue, 10P to a hue mid-way between purple and purple-blue and 7.5P to a hue mid-way between these two. Numbering is clockwise as shown in Fig. 2.10. After this a value is selected from 1 to 9 with 1 being the darkest and 9 the least saturated. The values 1 to 9 are used to describe the amount of a hue. A value of 1 means that the rock is the pure hue and 9 means that it is a mixture of the hue and another colour.

There are 10 major hues (Fig. 2.10), each one divided into 10 divisions. Thus SP would refer to the mid-point of the purple hue, 10P to a hue mid-way between purple and purple-blue and 7.5P to a hue mid-way between these two. Numbering is clockwise as shown in Fig. 2.10. After this a value is selected from 1 to 9 with 1 being the darkest and 9 the least saturated. The values 1 to 9 are used to describe the amount of a hue. A value of 1 means that the rock is the pure hue and 9 means that it is a mixture of the hue and another colour.
### Fig. 2.9. Sorting images and standard terms (from Compton, 1962). The numbers indicate the number of size classes included by c. 80% of the material. The drawings represent sandstones seen with a hand lens. (Reproduced by permission of Wiley.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roundness</th>
<th>Very angular 0.5</th>
<th>Angular 1.5</th>
<th>Sub-angular 2.5</th>
<th>Sub-rounded 3.5</th>
<th>Rounded 4.5</th>
<th>Well rounded 5.5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sphericity</td>
<td>Discoidal 0.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sub-discoidal 2.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sub-prismatic 2.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Prismatic -0.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Fig. 2.10. The form and arrangement of the Munsell Colour System (from Goddard et al., 1975). See text for explanation. (Reproduced by permission of the Geological Society of America.)

- Lightest (black to white when there is no hue). Also selected is a chroma which is a degree of colour saturation. These are given values from 0 (no colour saturation) to 6 for the most vivid colours. Thus a colour can be represented by a code such as 5P4/2 as well as a name — greyish-purple. Several standard colours are arranged on sheets in a small booklet which is taken into the field and then visually compared with the rocks. Intermediates are estimated.

#### 2.2.4 Induration and degree of weathering

Although induration (hardness) cannot be readily quantified, it may be useful to record the variation in this property using the qualitative scheme below:

- Unconsolidated: Loose.
- Very friable: Rubbles easily between fingers. Gentle blow with hammer disintegrates sample.
- Hard: Grains can be separated from sample with a steel probe. Breaks easily when hit with hammer.
- Extreme hard: Sharp hard hammer blow required. Sample breaks across most grains.

The degree of weathering will be a complex function of lithology, topography, climate and vegetation. In particular in humid tropical regions there may be an extremely thick regolith and little available 'fresh' bedrock. Some general comments on the nature and degree of weathering are appropriate, especially where these may influence or restrict interpretation.

#### 2.2.5 Bedding

In descriptive terms, a bed is a layer that is sufficiently distinct from adjoining layers. In genetic terms, a bed represents a depositional episode during which conditions were relatively uniform. The main problem is that these two definitions do not always coincide, leading to some contention over exactly what constitutes a bed.

Campbell (1967) stated that distinction of beds depends on recognition of bedding surfaces produced during periods of non-deposition or by an abrupt change of conditions. This is the concept of the 'sedimentation unit' (Otto, 1938) which has been
adopted by many later workers (e.g. Reineck & Singh, 1975; Collinson & Thompson, 1982). Other workers follow the convention that beds are recognizably distinct strata that have some lithologic or structural unity (Pettijohn, 1975, p. 102). Campbell acknowledged that bedding surfaces (using his definition) might not be readily recognized or may appear to be discontinuous. Thus there can be different judgements of the positions, thicknesses and features of beds depending on which concept is followed. The problem can be demonstrated by exposures of turbidites in the Carboniferous of Morocco (Figs 2.11 and 2.12). Following Otto (1938) or Campbell (1967), a 'bed' in Fig. 2.11 would be (1) + (2), a turbidite, or (3), a hemipelagite; the bedding surfaces would be between (3) and (1) and between (2) and (3). However, in many examples the boundary between units (2) and (3) is not recognizable due either to low quality exposure or simply to a lack of lithological contrast between units (2) and (3). Here the 'beds' recognized may well be (1) and (2) + (3). Such ambiguity of description is clearly undesirable but at times difficult to avoid. In general the problems will be least where exposure is best and these are the areas in which detailed measurement is most likely to be made. However, the problem illustrates that there should be a consistent single definition of a bed.

The definition of a bed as a sedimentation unit, after Campbell (1967) and Reineck & Singh (1975) should be retained, despite its problems. Assignment of a particular thickness limitation is not necessary; thicknesses may range from a few millimetres to several metres and can be described using the terms in Fig. 2.13. The main use of bed thickness measurements has been in helping to estimate competence and capacity of the transporting medium, particularly in terrestrial aqueous systems. For example, Black (1967), Steel (1974) and Nemec & Steel (1984) presented many plots of maximum particle size versus bed thickness and show that the relationship varies for different depositional processes (Fig. 2.14). Potter & Scheidegger (1965) suggested a correlation between maximum particle size and bed thickness in turbidites and between median clast diameter and bed thickness in ash falls. In all these cases interpretation is clearly dependent upon the sedimentation unit concept for bed thickness. Thus if there is any uncertainty in the definition of bedding surfaces, this must be made very clear in the field notes. This problem may be particularly acute in many limestone successions where the bedding surfaces may show extreme diagenetic modification, usually accompanied by pressure solution and the formation of stylolites. Recognition is complicated because bedding parallel stylolitic seams may form at levels unrelated to true bedding surfaces (Simpson, 1985). A summary of the complexity observed in a series of tabular limestone beds from the Lower Carboniferous of South Wales is shown in Fig. 2.15 (after Simpson, 1985).

A single bed may be internally homogenous, show continuous gradational variation, or be internally layered, these smaller layers being termed laminae. Laminae are generally a few millimetres thick but may exceptionally reach a few centimetres (Fig. 2.13). Beds may also show a variety of internal structures, such as types of cross stratification. It is common to find two superimposed beds that are...
Bedding, the primary nature of contacts between beds and the way in which they thicken and thin, is important in environmental analysis. Any information which can be observed on observation of two-dimensional sections. The accurate recognition and recording of bedding surfaces as well as vertical sections. The value of commenting on the three-dimensional geometry of any available structures cannot be overstated. Some beds can be delineated within a single exposure, whereas others may extend for tens or even hundreds of metres. The lateral extent can be deduced from gross surface features such as a channel, terraces, or evidence of erosion features such as a channel. The relationship of internal structures to the external geometry is also important in interpretation. Some structures are the subject of several texts at various levels, e.g. Allen (1982), Collinson & Petts (1986), Pettijohn & Potter (1964), Tucker (1982, chapter 5).

The relationship of internal structures to the external geometry is also important in interpretation. Some structures are the subject of several texts at various levels, e.g. Allen (1982), Collinson & Petts (1986), Pettijohn & Potter (1964), Tucker (1982, chapter 5).

Table 2.4. Sedimentary structures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Structure</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laminae</td>
<td>lamellae, graded bedding, lamination</td>
<td>Graded bedding, bioturbation, trace fossils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bedding planes</td>
<td>surfaces of discontinuity between beds</td>
<td>Pedogenic horizons, hardgrounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>layer sets</td>
<td>repeatable bedding sequences</td>
<td>Cross stratal dip and three-dimensional geometry of beds and bedsets can be measured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bedsets</td>
<td>combination of beds</td>
<td>Some beds can be delineated within a single exposure, whereas others may extend for tens or even hundreds of metres. The lateral extent can be deduced from gross surface features such as a channel, terraces, or evidence of erosion features such as a channel. The relationship of internal structures to the external geometry is also important in interpretation. Some structures are the subject of several texts at various levels, e.g. Allen (1982), Collinson &amp; Petts (1986), Pettijohn &amp; Potter (1964), Tucker (1982, chapter 5).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cross strata</td>
<td>two-dimensional bedding planes</td>
<td>Some beds can be delineated within a single exposure, whereas others may extend for tens or even hundreds of metres. The lateral extent can be deduced from gross surface features such as a channel, terraces, or evidence of erosion features such as a channel. The relationship of internal structures to the external geometry is also important in interpretation. Some structures are the subject of several texts at various levels, e.g. Allen (1982), Collinson &amp; Petts (1986), Pettijohn &amp; Potter (1964), Tucker (1982, chapter 5).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anticlines</td>
<td>fold structures with cores of older or different rock</td>
<td>Some beds can be delineated within a single exposure, whereas others may extend for tens or even hundreds of metres. The lateral extent can be deduced from gross surface features such as a channel, terraces, or evidence of erosion features such as a channel. The relationship of internal structures to the external geometry is also important in interpretation. Some structures are the subject of several texts at various levels, e.g. Allen (1982), Collinson &amp; Petts (1986), Pettijohn &amp; Potter (1964), Tucker (1982, chapter 5).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>synclines</td>
<td>fold structures with cores of different rock</td>
<td>Some beds can be delineated within a single exposure, whereas others may extend for tens or even hundreds of metres. The lateral extent can be deduced from gross surface features such as a channel, terraces, or evidence of erosion features such as a channel. The relationship of internal structures to the external geometry is also important in interpretation. Some structures are the subject of several texts at various levels, e.g. Allen (1982), Collinson &amp; Petts (1986), Pettijohn &amp; Potter (1964), Tucker (1982, chapter 5).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.2.6 Sedimentary structures

The accurate recognition and recording of sedimentary structures is vital in many environmental reconstructions. Description and interpretation of such structures are the subject of several texts at various levels, e.g. Allen (1982), Collinson & Petts (1986), Pettijohn & Potter (1964), Tucker (1982, chapter 5). These are not duplicated here but some comments on the one hand and using available parameters on the other hand. The lateral extent can be deduced from gross surface features such as a channel, terraces, or evidence of erosion features such as a channel. The relationship of internal structures to the external geometry is also important in interpretation. Some structures are the subject of several texts at various levels, e.g. Allen (1982), Collinson & Petts (1986), Pettijohn & Potter (1964), Tucker (1982, chapter 5).
the structures had been recorded, later interpretation of the structures as HCS would remain possible. How many examples of HCS can be confidently recognized? The recording of all parameters of cross-stratification in every case would be too time consuming. In most cases the available theoretical framework is used much more than is real. Thus some general guidelines are available for field recording.

(a) Be as familiar as possible with useful distinctions between the various sedimentary structures. If differences from a typical example of a particular structure are suggested it is better to over-divide than the reverse.

(b) Remember that our knowledge is never complete. If fossil concentrations occur, what proportion of body fossils are limited or absent. Description and classification of trace fossils utilize three main approaches:

(i) Taxonomic: traces can be assigned to morphological ichnogenera. Details of this approach can be found in Crimes & Harper (1970), Frey (1975), Hantzschel (1975), Basan (1978) and Ekdale, Bromley & Pemberton (1984). A concise summary of a procedure to follow is given in Collinson & Thompson (1982, chapter 9) (see also Table 2.5).

(ii) Taphonomic: description is based on mode of preservation of the trace fossils (Fig. 2.17).

(iii) Behavioural (ethological): subdivision is made on the interpretation of behavioural pattern represented by the trace fossil, i.e. crawling, grasping, resting, dwelling, feeding or escaping.

Fossils are important components of many sedimentary rocks and, even where present in small numbers, they can provide useful, often critical, information. Extracting the maximum information from fossils will usually require the services of a specialist palaeontologist. Nevertheless, important observations, particularly those useful for environmental rather than stratigraphic use, can and should be made by any investigator of sedimentary rocks. A useful checklist is given by Tucker (1982) (see also Table 2.5).

In most cases the available theoretical framework is used much more than is real. Thus some general guidelines are available for field recording.

(a) Be as familiar as possible with useful distinctions between the various sedimentary structures. If differences from a typical example of a particular structure are suggested it is better to over-divide than the reverse.

(b) Remember that our knowledge is never complete. If fossil concentrations occur, what proportion of body fossils are limited or absent. Description and classification of trace fossils utilize three main approaches:

(i) Taxonomic: traces can be assigned to morphological ichnogenera. Details of this approach can be found in Crimes & Harper (1970), Frey (1975), Hantzschel (1975), Basan (1978) and Ekdale, Bromley & Pemberton (1984). A concise summary of a procedure to follow is given in Collinson & Thompson (1982, chapter 9) (see also Table 2.5).

(ii) Taphonomic: description is based on mode of preservation of the trace fossils (Fig. 2.17).

(iii) Behavioural (ethological): subdivision is made on the interpretation of behavioural pattern represented by the trace fossil, i.e. crawling, grasping, resting, dwelling, feeding or escaping.

Table 2.5. Checklist for the examination of fossils in the field

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Distribution of fossils in sediment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(i) Fossils largely in growth position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Do they constitute a reef? — characterized by colonial organisms; interaction between organisms, e.g. encrusting growth; presence of original cavities (infilled with sediment and/or cement); unbedded appearance; describe growth forms of colonial organisms; do these change up through reef? Are some skeletons providing a framework?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) If non-reef, are fossils epifaunal or infaunal?; if infaunal, how have fossils been preserved?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Do epifaunal fossils have a preferred orientation, if so, measure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Are fossils encrusting substrate, i.e. is it a hardground surface?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) Are the plant remains rootlets?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) Fossils not in growth position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Are they concentrated into pockets, lenses or laterally persistent beds or are they evenly distributed throughout the sediment?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Do fossils occur in a particular lithofacies; are there differences in the faunal content of different lithofacies?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Do fossils occur in a particular lithofacies; are there differences in the faunal content of different lithofacies?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Do fossils show a preferred orientation?, if so, measure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) Have fossils been bored or encrusted?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) Note the degree of bioturbation and any trace fossils present</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fossil assemblages and diversity

(i) Determine the composition of the fossil assemblages by estimating the relative abundance of the different fossil groups.

(ii) Are fossil assemblages different for different lithofacies?

(iii) Consider the composition of the fossil assemblage. Is it dominated by only a few species, are they euryhaline or stenohaline? Are certain groups notably absent? Do all fossil groups present have a similar mode of life? Do pelagic forms dominate? Are infaunal organisms absent? Diagnosis of fossil skeletons

(i) Is the original mineralogy preserved or have the skeletons been replaced, if so, by what? |

(ii) Have the fossils been dissolved out to leave moulds? |

(iii) Do the fossils preferentially occur in nodules? |

Table 2.6. Trace fossils: how to describe them and what to look for

| (1) Sketch (and/or photograph) the structures; measure length, width, diameter etc. |
| (2) For trails and tracks: (seen on bedding surfaces) |
| (a) Note whether regular or irregular pattern, whether trial is straight, sinuous, curved, meandering or radial |
| (b) Has the trail a continuous ridge or furrow?; is there any central division or ornamentation?; if there are appendage marks or footprints measure the size and spacing of the impressions; look for tail marks |
| (3) For burrows (best seen within beds but also on bedding surfaces): |
| (a) Describe shape and orientation to bedding, i.e. horizontal, oblique, vertical, simple straight tube, simple curved or irregularly disposed tube. If branching note if regular or irregular branching pattern and any changes in burrow diameter |
| (b) Examine burrow fill; is the burrow lined with mud or pellets?; are there scratch marks?; are laminae in adjacent sediment deflected by the burrow? |
| (c) Examine the burrow fill; is it different from adjacent sediment?; e.g. coarser or finer, richer or poorer in skeletal debris?; is the fill pelleted?; are there curved backfill laminae within the burrow fill sediments? |

The last two approaches can usually be performed in the field without specialist knowledge. Taxonomic identification of common trace fossils is often possible but is best advised by accurate drawings and photographs and by consultation with specialists. 

2.2.8 Measurement of stratigraphic sections

The methods employed in measuring sections in sedimentary rocks will be determined by the degree of detail required, by the physical nature of the terrain and the exposures, and by the time, funds, equipment and personnel available. Details of the various procedures available are given in Compton (1962), Krumbein & Sloss (1963) and Kottlowski (1965). In cases of suitable exposure measurement can be made simply by direct contact of a tape or ruler held normal to both dip and strike directions. Where this is feasible the most common method for measuring vertical sections is probably the use of...
a compass and tape measure. This is relatively quick and with care is sufficiently precise for most purposes. It is most difficult to be accurate where the dip of the strata is at a low angle to the section to be measured. The procedure is easier with two persons but can be performed by individuals. Important points to note where the line of section is not at 90° to the dip of the beds are: (a) measure carefully the slope of the surface along with the strike and dip of the beds; (b) read the apparent thickness of beds, bedsets or facies units from the stretched tape (Fig. 2.18); (c) correct for both slope angles and oblique beds; (d) keep readings separate between changes of slope.

In many cases where the beds are very steeply inclined relative to the surface of measurement, the tape can be used as a small Jacob staff (see below) with reasonable accuracy, rendering the laborious corrections for slope unnecessary. An alternative to the use of a tape, where terrain permits, is to use a graduated pole termed a Jacob staff (Fig. 2.20). The pole provides a steady support for a level or clinometer, an Abney hand level being the most accurate. The dip of the units to be measured is determined and then this value is set on the "Horizontal plane" of the Jacob staff (Fig. 2.20). The base of the staff is placed at the base of the unit to be measured and the staff tilted forward until the level bubble of the clinometer is centred. The line of sight is then in a direction parallel to the dip of the beds and the Abney level can be slid up and down the staff as required (Hansen, 1960) until the top surface of the unit is in the line of sight (Fig. 2.20). If the staff is oriented within 10° of normal to the dip, then the error is likely to be no more than 2% (Compton, 1962). Outcrops are rarely exposed in a straight upslope line but a stepwise course of movements can easily be made.

2.2.9 Graphic logs

The prime moving force behind the use of graphic logs in the field is the need to record very large numbers of observations, often in a routine repetitive manner. The first major formulation of such a scheme was presented by Bouma (1962) who demonstrated a successful application to a succession of turbidites. He used in the field a series of preprinted recording sheets of the format shown in Fig. 2.21. These were later supplemented by an accompanying sheet based on laboratory investigations. However, the field record remained as the final display, with the added laboratory data shown alongside. Bouma's recording format was accompanied by a complex series of codes and notation symbols which permitted an unambiguous and detailed record.

Broadly similar techniques have since been employed by many other workers investigating a variety of sedimentary successions. Some examples of
different recording sheets are shown in Fig. 2.22. What are the reasons for this multiplicity of recording sheets?

(1) The features commonly recorded vary considerably with the type of succession, i.e. turbidites, fluvials, carbonates etc. If the broad nature of the succession is known in advance, there is an advantage in adapting the recording form to the particular data to be recorded. This is usually the case for advanced, detailed studies that follow a reconnaissance examination. An example of a complex but informative scheme is that of the Utrecht school used in their studies of ancient marginal-marine sediments in southwest Ireland (Kuijpers, 1972; Van Gelder, 1974; De Raaf, Boersma & Van Gelder, 1977; Fig. 2.22a).

(2) One can maintain at a higher level and for a longer period a discipline in the routine listing of features than one can in a free-format notebook. Conversely, there may be some loss of flexibility, leading to a tendency for the field geologist to neglect features other than those on the check list.

(3) Subsequent data retrieval is generally easier and more rapid than from written notebook records.

(4) The use of a standard format can give greater consistency of recording/observation where different operators are employed.

(5) If the logs are drawn to scale in the field, the investigator has a useful visual display which may assist thought processes and the formulation of hypotheses.

(6) There is often a tendency to think that the construction of a graphic log provides a complete description of a succession. In fact, vertical changes in the successions become over-emphasized at the expense of lateral relations.

(7) There is a strong similarity between most field logs and the final published logs used in formation description and interpretation.

(8) Some sort of remarks column is invariably necessary to accommodate features which are rare or were neglected during design of the form. Even with this, a field notebook remains a necessary aid for sketches etc. which cannot be accommodated on the recording forms.

A natural extension of graphic logs as the main recording technique was the attempt to design and use machine readable forms for field records (Alexander-Marrack, Friend & Yeats, 1970; Piper, Harland & Curbish, 1970; Friend et al., 1976). The main advantages over and above the use of graphic logs were speed, rapid data retrieval and processing, and easier data presentation, e.g. the data for computer-drawn stratigraphic sections are already stored in a retrievable form. The main disadvantage is the difficulty of building flexibility into the form whilst maintaining a manageable size and simplicity. Friend et al. (1976) demonstrated the value of this approach for recording thick, relatively monotonous successions under difficult and expensive field conditions (Fig. 2.23).

PRESENTATION OF GRAPHIC LOGS

Graphic logs are used in a large proportion of publications dealing with sedimentary rock successions but for appropriate reasons there is no standardization. Information must be presented on a variety of scales, and for a wide variety of facies associations. Even the basic unit of the logs may vary from being the bed or bedset to 'facies' which are defined either on the basis of a detailed field log or during a pilot study. An attempt to provide a comprehensive scheme of notation and symbols to cover all eventualities may be either too limiting for very detailed studies or too complex. Nevertheless there are many conventions which make comparison of different logs easier.

Thickness is almost always the vertical scale and the horizontal scale is most frequently grain size. Other features which can be readily presented are lithology, sedimentary structures and nature of contacts between units. Palaeocurrent data (Section 2.3) and some other data on vertical sequences (Section 2.4) can be conveniently located at the side of these logs. Figure 2.24 shows a variety of typical examples.

An overall aim in the presentation of logs should be that the reader has a good basis for comparison with the literature and the data on which to build preliminary interpretations of depositional environments and time-dependent changes.

2.2.10 Recording lateral relations

Lateral variability of rock units is often obvious where there are large natural or man-made exposures. In humid, temperate regions these are mainly cliff faces, road cuts and quarry sections in shallowly dipping strata. Extensive strike sections also occur in steeply dipping strata on many fore-shore sections and in recently glaciated areas. In arid areas with shallowly dipping strata, large lateral exposures are common. Description of lateral changes generally relies on the use of photo-mosaics supplemented by field sketches, use of binoculars, examination of accessible portions and, where possible, measuring spaced vertical logs. If the exposure is accessible, plane table mapping can also be useful, e.g. Bluck (1981) (Fig. 2.25).

For reports and publications it is more common to demonstrate lateral relations with line diagrams than with photographs although in some cases both approaches can be useful (e.g. Allen & Matter, 1982, fig. 7). This is often due to the difficulty of presenting photographs at a scale where they are clear but can still be accommodated within the report format. This problem can also apply to line drawings and in many journals pull outs are only rarely tolerated due to the expense of production. Some examples of the presentation of lateral variability are shown in Figs 2.25 to 2.28.

2.3 PALAEOCURRENT DATA

2.3.1 Introduction

Palaeocurrent data are those which provide information on the direction(s) of sediment transport in the past. As such they are an important part of sedimentological analysis on a variety of scales from individual bedforms to the whole sedimentary basin. The main categories of interpretation which may result from analysis of palaeocurrent data are direction of palaeoslope, patterns of sediment dispersal, relationship of palaeocurrent direction to lithosome (Krumbein & Sloss, 1963, p. 300) geometry and location of source area. Such interpretations may have economic as well as academic applications when dealing with phenomena such as washouts in coalfields or placer deposits.

The subject of palaeocurrents and basin analysis has been exhaustively treated by Potter & Pettijohn (1977). They emphasized that a variety of observations can contribute palaeocurrent data and these may be grouped into two classes:

(a) Properties which acquire directional significance only when mapped regionally. These consist of:

---

Fig. 2.21. Format for field recording sheets designed by Bouma (Bouma, 1962). Field records are drawn to scale (chosen according to the nature of the succession) and the sheets are accompanied by a complex set of notation symbols. (Reproduced by permission of Elsevier.)
Basic rock types

**Sandstone facies**

- **Sa**: Large-scale cross-stratified sandstone (bulk sand content 95–100%)
- **Sb**: Evenly laminated sandstone (bulk sand content 95–100%)
- **Sc**: Small-scale cross-laminated sandstone (bulk sand content 95–100%)

**Heterolithic facies**

- **Ha**: Sandy flaser bedding (bulk sand content 75–95%)
- **Hb**: Flaser bedding (bulk sandstone content 50–75%)
- **Hc1**: Sand-tensed mud (bulk sand content 10–50%)
- **Hc2**: Sand-streaked mud (bulk sand content 10–50%)

**Mudstone facies**

- **M**: Mudstone (bulk sand content 0–10%)

**Composite rock types**

- Mudstreaks in cross-laminated sand (Sc) also occurring in Sa, Sb, Ha, and Hb. Bulk sand content 75–100%
- Mud flasers in cross-laminated sand (Sc) also occurring in Ha. Bulk sand content 75–100%
- Lenticular and flaser bedding in random alternations. Both components up to a few metres thick. Bulk sandstone content 10–75%
- Mudstone (up to a few metres thick) with intercalations of evenly laminated sandstone sheets (up to 2 m thick). Bulk sandstone content 10–95%
- Cross-laminated sand (up to 10 cm thick) and mudbands (up to 4 cm thick) in regular alternation. Bulk sandstone content 50–75%
- Sandy mudstone homogenized by bioturbation. Bulk sand content 10–50%

Additional sedimentary structures

- current-ripples
- climbing ripples
- wave-ripples
- scours
- downcutting surface

**Collection and Analysis of Field Data**

Guide to reading of the logs

- The horizontal lines correspond to boundaries of intervals consisting either of a 'uniform' rock type or a complex alternation of rock types, which could not be drawn as separate units because of the scale used.
- Gradual upward decrease in sand content along several rock types.
- Gradual replacement of even lamination by cross-lamination from base to top.
- Scouring surface.
- Gradual increase in sand content within one rock type (here mudrock with intercalated sandstone sheets).
- Sharp junction.
- Gradual increase in sand content along several rock types.
- Scouring surface with shale flakes.
- Scouring surface with parallel infill.
- Downcutting surface.
- Flaser bedding, wave-ripples observed.
- Cross-laminated sandstone, structure at base not determinable.
- Gradual increase in sand content.
- Mud content estimated (binocular).

**Key**

- Weakly bioturbated
- Moderately bioturbated
- Strongly bioturbated
- Currents flowing to the south (small-scale current ripples)
- Opposite directed currents of equal importance
- Id. One current predominant
- Id. One current strongly predominant
- Wave-ripples, direction of oscillation east-west (crestline orientation at right angles)
- Wave-ripples, interference pattern

Additional symbols without directional significance:

- Current-ripples
- Climbing ripples
- Wave-ripples
- Scours
- Downcutting surface

**Additional sedimentary structures**

- Mudcracks
- Slumping
- Loadcasting
- Sandbars
- Concretions
- Channel of small size (width up to a few metres) filled with sand or mud-flakes
- Channel of small size with line grained infill
- Local unconformities within heterolithic unit
- Rock types in regular alternation
- Plant remains
- Fossiliferous
- Reddish colours
- Strongly tectonized

http://jurassic.ru/
(i) attributes — presence/absence of some distinctive feature such as boulder type or mineral assemblage; (ii) scalars — magnitude of some property such as grain size, roundness or unit thickness.

In these cases there is little extra recording of field data but merely a selection of specific properties from available records. Accordingly this class is given little treatment here apart from some examples.

(b) Properties which provide some directional information at the point of observation, although more information will be conveyed by presenting many observations in map form. These directional properties can indicate either: (i) a line of flow, e.g. primary current lineation, groove marks, symmetrical ripple crests or (ii) a unique direction of flow, e.g. imbrication, cross stratification, flute marks.

Directional properties form the basis of most palaeocurrent analysis because of the greater amount of information they contain.

2.3.2 Measurement of directional structures

For each measurement it is important to record the exact location, type and scale of structure, as well as the lithofacies in which it occurs. For example, it may be useful to investigate the relationship of cross bedding direction to set thickness, foreset dip angle or foreset shape, as environmental interpretation becomes more refined.

LINEAR STRUCTURES

In this category are structures in which it is not possible to distinguish between one 'end' of a structure and the other, e.g. primary current lineation, striae, groove marks, gutter casts, channels, some oriented elongate fossils and symmetrical ripple crests. The orientation of the lineation is recorded as a pitch on inclined strata or in horizontal beds as a direction. Techniques for unambiguous recording of
lines and planes are given in texts such as Ragan (1973) and Compton (1962).

**CROSS-STRATIFICATION**

The most commonly used sedimentary structure for palaeocurrent analysis is cross stratification. The foresets represent the former slip faces of bedforms that migrated in the direction of foreset dip. The average direction of foreset dip is a measure of the average local flow direction. The geometrical variability of cross stratification mirrors the natural variability of bedforms. Although most workers categorize cross stratification in the two very broad subdivisions of planar and trough varieties (McKee & Weir, 1953; Section 2.2.4) there is, in nature, much more of a form continuum between these two (Meckel, 1967; Allen, 1982). The dimensions of the foresets will clearly be related to the size of the bedform, but this relationship is not simple. Commonly each foreset is truncated by an erosion surface, and thus the set thickness can only give a minimum estimate of bedform height. Nevertheless set thickness is valuable information, important in the interpretation of palaeoenvironmental conditions and must always be recorded. Similarly the angle of inclination of the foresets is the result of a complex balance of factors such as grain size, current velocity, sediment load etc., but it can still yield useful information on both the bedforms and transport processes. Thus the dip and shape of the foresets should also be recorded.

The measurement of cross stratification is most simply accomplished where there is a reasonable degree of three-dimensional exposure. In these cases...
the orientation of a foreset plane is measured directly with a compass/clinometer (along with any additional structural information as noted in Section 2.3.3). Where such suitable exposure is lacking, the true (maximum) foreset dip can be calculated by measuring two apparent dips and solving by means of a stereographic projection.

Measurement problems generally centre around the ability to distinguish the three-dimensional geometry of the bedforms at outcrop. These problems may be compounded when the filling of troughs is asymmetrical. Thus it has been noted by several workers that trough axis orientations are much less variable than cross strata orientations (Meckel, 1967; Dott, 1973; Michelson & Dott, 1973; Slingerland & Williams, 1979) and are to be preferred for measurement. Unfortunately suitable exposures are only uncommonly available and less accurate approximations must generally be made. Careful recording of the geometry of the structures on the measured faces is most important for subsequent interpretation.

Techniques for deriving palaeocurrent data from common exposure types have been suggested by Slingerland & Williams (1979) and De Celles, Longford & Schwartz (1983). One method suggested by the latter is to attempt to measure both opposing trough limbs in relatively equal numbers on normal oblique exposures. Plotting these data on a stereographic net should yield two clusters of opposing limb sets from which the trough axis orientation can be estimated (Fig. 2.29). This technique may be useful for relatively flat lying strata but would be particularly susceptible to tectonic modification since the plunge of undisturbed trough axes is commonly less than 10°.

De Celles et al. (1983) also suggested a semi-quantitative technique which relies on assessing the overall geometry of the troughs by inspection of the foreset geometry relative to that of the basal scour surface, claiming accuracy to within 25° of the true palaeocurrent direction. The closer that a section approximates a true longitudinal section, the greater the apparent widening of the trough and the number of foresets that are truncated.

(c) Log of Triassic fluvial sediments from central England which shows palaeocurrent data and comments on specific features of interest. Assignment of particular beds and bedsets to defined lithofacies is shown to the left of the log (from Steel & Thompson, 1983).

(c) Log of Triassic fluvial sediments from central England which shows palaeocurrent data and comments on specific features of interest. Assignment of particular beds and bedsets to defined lithofacies is shown to the left of the log (from Steel & Thompson, 1983).

(c) Log of Triassic fluvial sediments from central England which shows palaeocurrent data and comments on specific features of interest. Assignment of particular beds and bedsets to defined lithofacies is shown to the left of the log (from Steel & Thompson, 1983).
IMBRICATION AND CLAST ORIENTATION

Ellipsoidal clasts frequently show a preferred alignment, particularly in coarse grained sedimentary rocks. This alignment is visible in both plan view, here termed orientation, and in vertical sections, here termed imbrication. In some cases this alignment is due to the position of the clasts within structures such as foresets of cross strata. Here they show a similar downstream dip direction to the foresets but commonly a shallower inclination (Johansson, 1965). In contrast the dip of the clasts not contained in large foresets is preferentially upstream. Clearly the presence or absence of foresets in these coarse grained rocks must be determined at the outset. Several factors appear to control the range of inclination including clast size, clast sphericity, degree of clast contact, and palaeohydraulic conditions (Johansson, 1965; Rust, 1975; Koster, Rust & Gendzwill, 1980). It has also been shown that the orientation of the longest a-axis (where a > b > c) tends to be either normal to or parallel to the flow direction, the difference depending in part on the nature of the flow. The former is the characteristic result of clasts rolling on the bed (Johansson, 1965; Rust, 1972) whereas the latter appears to be common only in conglomerates associated with sediment gravity flows (Walker, 1975), although the precise mechanism of formation is less clear.

In sedimentary rocks the best measure of palaeocurrent direction is to obtain the mean vector of the ab plane. The need to measure rod- or disc-shaped clasts involves some selection, usually by means of ignoring clasts more equant than say 2:2:1 (Rust, 1975). The dip and strike of the ab plane is estimated by eye and measured from a notebook held in that plane. If the rocks are poorly indurated the clasts may be extracted after measurement and the orientation of the a-axis determined. Application of this technique clearly requires good quality exposures. Random selection of clasts can be achieved by placing a sampling grid, e.g. a piece of fish net or chalk lines, over the bedding surface. The stronger alignment of larger clasts which has commonly been observed (Johansson, 1965; Rust, 1972, 1975) may suggest that some selection in terms of size as well as shape is useful. The number of clasts to be measured should be such that a clear non-random distribution is achieved (Koster et al., 1980). Experience suggests that about 40 clasts is generally sufficient.

In many cases the quality of exposure does not permit this technique of measurement. Where there is extensive bedding plane exposure but estimation of the dip of ab plane is difficult, a technique for measurement described by Nilsen (1968) can be employed. The elongation directions of 50 randomly selected clasts with axial ratios 1:5:1 are measured. This technique can also be used with a photograph and overlay if preferred. Such orientation readings may not provide an unambiguous palaeocurrent direction as long axis orientation modes tend to be either current normal or current parallel. Thus the same technique must also be applied to measure imbrication on vertical sections. Where possible vertical sections either parallel to the long axis orientation or perpendicular to it or both have commonly been chosen (Nilsen, 1968; Davies & Walker, 1974; Fig. 2.30). Davies & Walker (1974), in a study of the deep water Cap Enrage Formation of Quebec, noted that most of the available sections were fortuitously oriented parallel to modal clast orientation and that orthogonal faces had an inclination not significantly different from horizontal compared to a mean of 12°.
for the current parallel — in this case long axis parallel — sections. Thus they were able to obtain a statistical three-dimensional alignment. However, in many cases the available exposures may not be parallel to the palaeocurrent, and bedding plane exposures from which orientation can be estimated may also not be available. In these cases measurement is more difficult and less precise. It is necessary to measure imbrication on two faces, preferably 90° apart. That showing the greater dip to an octant of the compass for each reading and this apparent dip problem as there is for foresets of cross bedding.

SLUMP FOLDS

Slump folds are produced when unconsolidated sediments resting on a slope become unstable and move downslope under the influence of gravity. Thus the direction of that movement could be estimated a means of determining palaeoslope is obtained. It is clearly necessary as a first stage to distinguish slump folds from (a) those produced by vertical soft sediment movement; these generally produce little or no preferred orientation of axes, and (b) tectonic folds. The latter distinction is frequently more difficult. Criteria are summarized by Woodcock (1976a) who suggested that the more objective and reliable ones are: (i) angular discordance at some upper slump sheet contacts; (ii) miscellaneous but important features such as burrowed folds, dewatering structures, sand volcanoes, undeformed clasts and fossils; (iii) absence of tension cracks and veins in folds; (iv) absence of geometrically related macroscopic folds; (v) arrangement of slump sheets in a sequence in which unit thicknesses have strongly skewed distributions.

In many other respects slump folds and tectonic folds may be geometrically indistinguishable, e.g. similar range of layer and surface shape, similar lineation and cleavage patterns and similar spatial attitudes.

If slump folds can be confidently recognized, then a method of determining mean downslope direction is needed. Variability occurs mainly because slump sheets are three-dimensional structures and are commonly lobate in plan view. Detailed procedures are given by Woodcock (1979) and only a brief summary is given below. The two methods used are known as the mean axis method which estimates downslope direction as perpendicular to the means slump fold axis, and the separation arc method which uses the bisector of a planar separation angle between groups of folds with opposite downplunge asymmetry (Fig. 2.31).

The simpler mean axis method is preferred as it is amenable to the derivation of confidence limits, it is applicable where asymmetry data are unavailable, and it relies on average properties of the data. The average trend is taken either as the mode or, in most quantitative studies, as the mean of the axes. However, the separation arc method, which relies more on the extreme properties of the data, has advantages with strongly skewed distributions. Most studies have used data specified in two dimensions only but the technique is equally applicable to three-dimensional data. The method specifies a strike of palaeoslope and leaves two alternatives for dip. Solution generally comes from considering either the vergence or facing of the slump folds, or from regional considerations (Fig. 2.32).
enforced sample such that every available measurement must be taken. Designed sampling can only occur where there is a surplus of data and may be determined by cost (time + access) or for purely analytical reasons.

Over larger areas sampling usually aims at equalizing area coverage and uses some sort of pre-devised grid system. Selection of sample points within grid squares should be random but this is only rarely possible. In practice, outcrops are commonly sampled as encountered and some effort is made to distribute sample points evenly within a given area. The number of measurements will depend largely on the objectives of the study which must be defined before any specifications can be given. There has perhaps been a tendency to concentrate on estimation of mean values at the expense of investigating variability. Both are very important parameters in environmental interpretation. Despite the obvious advantages there have been few attempts at "nested" or hierarchical sampling where an attempt is made to analyse different components of the total variance. An interesting exception is the work of Kelling (1969) which is discussed in Section 2.3.5.

2.3.3 Removal of tectonic effects

As it is the original current direction at the time of deposition that is required for interpretation, any subsequent reorientation or deformation of the primary structures being used should be estimated and removed. The former of these operations is relatively simple but the latter may be difficult and in some cases impossible.

Neglect of tectonic modification will clearly introduce error into the resultant observation. For example, the error that is introduced by failing to untilt beds has been compiled graphically by Ramsay (1961, fig. 2). The error will depend on the angle of dip and the angle between the sedimentary structure (expressed as a lineation) and the fold axis. For tilts less than 30° there is little introduction of error, and the original orientation of directional structures as measured in the field could be employed. For tilts in excess of this it is necessary to make a correction. Removal of tilt can be accomplished by rotating the bedding about an axis parallel to its strike until it comes to lie in a horizontal position. The method is applicable for simple flexural folds having horizontal axes and is most conveniently accomplished using a stereographic net.

If the fold axis is inclined (i.e. a plunging fold), the strike of a bed at any position on the fold can never be parallel to it. This fact invalidates the method of unfolding about the strike which would introduce an amount of error varying with both the dip of the beds and the plunge of the fold. This error was presented graphically by Ramsay (1961, fig. 5) who showed that for steeply dipping or overturned beds it can be very large. To prevent this error the structure must first be unfolded by rotation about the fold axis to a position of lowest dip (equal to the plunge of the fold axis) and then the final tilt removed by rotation about the strike. Two worked examples for the common cases of cross bedding and sole marks are shown in Figs 2.33 and 2.34.

Correct for tectonic effects is much more problematical when flexural folding has been accompanied by significant compression (flattening) and when similar folding is involved. In these cases lines and planes suffer significant distortion which must be removed in the following order: (i) removal of compression effects, (ii) removal of shear folding, (iii) removal of plunge and tilt.

For the removal of compression it is necessary to know both the orientation of the tectonic axes and the amount of compression. Although techniques for this exist (Ramsay, 1961, 1967), they require a considerable amount of detailed structural information which in some cases may be unobtainable. The errors which may be introduced by neglecting these effects may be large (see graphs in Ramsay, 1961).
expected if the mechanisms of folding are considered (Ramsay, 1961, 1967). In flexural folding there is generally a systematic increase in angle between the cross bedding and the regional bedding on one fold limb and a decrease in angle on the other limb. Where flexural folding is accompanied by compression normal to the axial plane the angle of inclination of the cross bedding is further modified. Abnormally high and low cross bedding inclinations are produced on both folded limbs (Fig. 2.35). The magnitude of the modifications is dependent on the radius of curvature of the base of the bed, the thickness of the cross bedded unit, the amount of dip of the bedding and the position of the foreset/regional bedding intersection before folding. Most complex modifications result from the combination of shear folding and compression. This can result in abnormally high or low inclinations on both fold limbs and in the extreme case of the limbs ofaecic folds, the structure may be completely unrecognizable.

It is clear that the removal of tectonic effects from palaeocurrent readings can be laborious and time-consuming. Such a repetitive process is amenable to the application of computer techniques and some authors have advocated doing this in the field with pocket calculators (Freeman & Pierce, 1979). A program that adequately considers both plunge and tilt removal is presented by Cooper & Marshall (1981), who reviewed most earlier attempts. Such programs also frequently present the data in some of the standard formats outlined in the next section. These packages are now widely available and will probably be used increasingly in the future. Despite this some workers in structurally complex areas prefer to perform these operations by hand so that a careful check can be kept on the precision of each recording (McDonald & Tanner, 1983). It is important to state clearly any manipulations that were performed and to note any likely limitations, such as not taking account of tectonic deformation.

### 2.3.4 Presentation of data

In a few cases where data are scarce but geologically significant, e.g. major channel orientations or giant cross beds (Collinson, 1968), each palaeocurrent measurement may be shown individually. More normally, measurements are grouped into classes of 10°, 15°, 20° or 30°, the choice of interval depending on both the number of readings and directional variability. In general, the lower the variability the smaller the class interval although too small an interval can lead to irregular class frequencies. These are presented in the form of a histogram converted to a circular distribution and termed a current rose (see Fig. 2.36). These histograms (roses) can plot either total number of observations per class or percentages, the latter often being useful for comparative purposes. In the geological literature the current rose conventionally indicates the direction towards which the current moved.

Although many structures used to infer palaeocurrents are vectors, i.e. possessing magnitude as well as direction, they are all usually considered as having unit magnitude. This relates to the geological uncertainty of objectively assigning a magnitude component. However, there are many cases where presentation of only standard current roses may lead to loss of valuable data. Thus amongst workers in aeolian sediments it is common practice to present data on a polar stereographic projection (Reiche, 1953; Kierch, 1959; McKee, 1966; Carruthers, 1985; Fig. 2.37). Not only does this allow all readings to be shown individually but it also places visual emphasis on the larger dip angles as indicators of palaeowind direction. In addition Glennie (1970) has suggested the possibility that the type of dune structure can be recognized from the distribution of poles of dip planes.

![Fig. 2.34. A worked example of reorientation of cross beds.
](http://jurassic.ru/)
The vector mean ($\bar{x}$) is an expression of preferred orientation whilst the vector magnitude ($\%$) ($L$) is a sensitive measure of dispersion.

It is necessary to test whether a set of palaeocurrent data possesses a distribution of orientation which is significantly different from random. Several ways of performing this test are reviewed by Potter & Pettijohn (1977, pp. 377-380). The simplest is probably the Rayleigh test as outlined by Curray (1956), for which a graph can be used (Fig. 2.38) to read the probability that the measurements are uniformly distributed in the interval 0–360°. A desired level of significance, usually $p < 0.05$, is chosen at which the null hypothesis of a uniform distribution is rejected.

The use of vector statistics in a comparable manner to the use of moments of a normal distribution implies the presence of a von Mises (circular normal) distribution of data. The density function of the von Mises distribution may be written as $f(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi I_0(K)} e^{K \cos(x - \theta)}$ where $K$ is a parameter that expresses the concentration of the mass and $\theta$ is the angle where the function takes its maximum value. $I_0(K)$ is a Bessel function whose values are tabulated. Such distributions are not always present as is often assumed, e.g. Sengupta & Rao (1966), although this can be readily checked by the method outlined by Harvey & Ferguson (1976).

It is generally vector means which are presented in published data either on maps or accompanying stratigraphic columns. The number of readings and value of $L$ (or $R$) should also be readily accessible. It is often useful to present some visual impression of the amount of confidence attached to a vector mean by showing a confidence interval (of, say, 90 or 95%), e.g. Kelling (1969). This can be most readily produced by using a Batschelet chart as shown in Fig. 2.39. The techniques for calculating these confidence intervals numerically from the raw data are given by Mardia (1972, pp. 144–145).

It is also necessary to quantify the spread of values around the vector mean. For the von Mises distribution, $R$ is an estimate of the spread of the angular values around a unit circle. The mean angular deviation, $s$, can be calculated by $s = \sqrt{2(1 - R)}$ where $s$ is measured in radians. Although $s$ behaves mostly...
in the same way as the standard deviation of a normal distribution, it is not its circular analogue which is R. Tables are available for converting R to K and indeed K is used in many further tests (Mardia, 1972).

Having obtained reliable estimates for preferred orientation and concentration of values some further tests may be desirable or possible depending on the nature of the problem. Perhaps the commonest problem is that of comparing preferred current orientations for significant differences. Before advancing to testing equality of mean directions it is necessary to test that the samples are drawn from populations with equal concentration (Mardia, 1972, pp. 156–62; Cheeney, 1983, pp. 102–103). The test for equality of preferred direction is somewhat complex as it depends in part on the ratio of the two sample sizes and also on the strength of the concentration parameter, K, of the samples combined.

Details and worked examples are given by Reyment (1983, pp. 101–106).

Although vector statistics are both precise and powerful, it is clear that the underlying populations of directional data must be thoroughly understood and defined. For example, sole marks and ripple marks from the bases and tops of beds could, in the case of storm-modified turbidites, represent different current systems operating at different times. Grouping of data and assumption of one population may be statistically possible but would not be geologically reasonable. Moreover the application of vector statistics implies a unimodal distribution and plea are not directly applicable when the data are bimodal or polymodal. For this reason in particular current roses should always be drawn and the data inspected qualitatively.

Some methods have been proposed for further treatment of bimodal and polymodal distributions. For example the problem of bimodality may be resolved by calculating separate vector means for two circular frequency distributions, the overlap being separated by partition about the midpoint of the two shared classes containing the lowest frequencies (Fig. 2.36). This is possible where the two modes are almost opposite in direction but difficult to apply where they are closer together.

For polymodal distributions where vector statistics are inappropriate, simpler, semi-quantitative techniques can be used to express preferred direction (Tanner, 1959; Picard & High, 1968; Fig. 2.40). A compass is divided into 12 × 30° intervals and the mean number of occurrences per interval and the standard deviation are calculated. Those intervals that contain palaeocurrent directions in excess of one standard deviation above or below the mean represent prominent modes or nodes respectively. Intervals within one standard deviation are considered to be qualitatively indistinguishable from random distributions.

2.3.5 Interpretation of results

BEDFORM HIERARCHIES

It has long been realized that sedimentary structures show an hierarchical arrangement such that no one sedimentary structure fully specifies a complex flow system. Such a specification can only be made after sampling all types of structure generated within the limits of preservation. The concept of bedform hierarchies was formalized by Allen (1966), Black (1974) and Miall (1974) by whom parts of a fluvial system were given orders or ranks (Figs 2.41 and 2.42). In a general sense, the smaller structures in the hierarchy tend to be more variable because the currents forming them are controlled both by the overall transport direction and also by local deviations caused by larger bedforms. This phenomenon is particularly well known from fluvial systems (Collinson, 1968, 1971; Black, 1974; Miall, 1974) but also applies in varying degrees to other environments (Field et al., 1981; Link, Squires & Colburn, 1984). Thus one would be likely to regard the orientation of a single channel form as being in some way more significant than the orientation of a single set of trough cross beds. There have been only a few attempts to quantify this difference in scale by introducing a ‘weighting factor’. In many ways this is due to the difficulty of defining an objective and operational methodology. Miall (1974) suggested using the cube of set thickness as it may crudely reflect the volume of sediment displaced by the current. Erosional loss of varying proportions of the sets clearly presents problems as do assumptions of geometrical similarity. Although this method has been little used it does qualitatively emphasize the differing significance that might be attached to different bedforms.

It is sometimes possible to analyse or even sample palaeocurrent data with this concept of hierarchical organization in mind (Olson & Potter, 1954; Potter & Olson, 1954; Kelling, 1969). However, an assumption that chosen sampling levels (e.g. outcrops) will match any natural hierarchical level needs to be justified. An example of this is given by Kelling (1969) who carefully sampled and analysed the palaeocurrents of some Upper Carboniferous fluvial...
USE OF VARIABILITY IN ENVIRONMENTAL INTERPRETATION

It can be seen from the above section that the amount of variability, even in a predominantly unidirectional transport system, will depend in part on the level of bedform hierarchy which is sampled. Much of our knowledge of palaeocurrent variability comes from specific modern environments (Allen, 1967; Miall, 1974). Attempts to distinguish environments by means of the variance of their palaeocurrent pattern have been made by Potter & Pettijohn (1977) and Long & Young (1982) who tabulated large amounts of data from case histories. However, it should be remembered that modern environments record variability over a very short time period whereas most geological studies have data bases that are fundamentally different because the strata accumulated with an appreciable time dimension such that the grouping of data over a longer time interval might be expected to increase variance. More importantly, the inequalities and uncertainties of time-dependent changes and the difficulty of separating them from spatial variation make overall variance at best a very crude criterion.

In specific studies it is possible and often desirable to examine variability of palaeocurrents in both time and space (e.g. Chisholm & Dean, 1974; Miall, 1976; Pickering, 1981; Gray & Benton, 1982). Variation in time generally involves splitting vertical sections into meaningful subdivisions which can then be compared, e.g. by testing whether their vector means are significantly different. Clearly this technique will be limited by the accuracy with which such subdivisions can be correlated.

RELATIONSHIP OF SEDIMENTARY STRUCTURES TO ENVIRONMENT

Although palaeocurrent data themselves can be important environmental discriminants, their full significance usually requires independent interpretation of lithofacies and structures. It is particularly important in this respect that the structures that are measured in palaeocurrent analysis are described as thoroughly as possible. For example Bourgeois (1980) (Fig. 2.44) compared the dip amounts, as well as direction of, from HCS and trough cross beds and showed marked differences. In many earlier studies, written before the common recognition of HCS, such measurements would probably have been grouped as trough cross stratification. However if sufficient data were given on foreset inclination the possible presence of HCS might be suggested and re-investigation stimulated.

PALAEOCURRENT PATTERNS

It has been noted on a more general scale that palaeocurrent data tend to form a set pattern when seen over appreciable areas. Potter & Pettijohn...
(1977) suggested that, based purely on geometry, there are seven basic patterns (Fig. 2.45). Attempts have also been made to produce environmental classifications of palaeocurrent patterns, (e.g. by Selley, 1968) and also to relate these to geotectonic setting (e.g. by Potter & Pettijohn 1977). At a smaller scale palaeocurrent data can support environmental discrimination suggested by other criteria. Thus Laming (1966) showed that palaeocurrents derived from strata interpreted as aeolian have a totally different pattern from those inferred to be fluvial. Chisholm & Dean (1974) used palaeocurrent data as the main evidence that parts of a largely fluvial Carboniferous formation in Scotland were deposited under the influence of tidal currents.

Fluvial palaeocurrents, because of their basic control by gravity, tend to be unidirectional although with considerable spread over small areas (e.g. Leeder, 1973). Over larger areas it has been shown that major drainage often occurs parallel to tectonic strike (Van Houten, 1974; Steel et al., 1977; Bluck, 1978). Similar patterns have been shown to exist for deeper water marine sediments, particularly where there are submarine fan systems present (Jipa, 1966; Ricci Lucchi, 1975b, 1981; McDonald & Tanner, 1983).

Aeolian current directions are typically independent of other terrestrial transport directions (e.g. Hubert & Mertz, 1984) and in favourable cases it may be possible to relate patterns to trade wind circulation (e.g. Fryberger & Dean, 1979; Kocurek, 1981). Shallow marine patterns are typically the most complex (Klein, 1967) and difficult to interpret. In the cases where the currents are of different types and with different controls it is particularly important to attempt to relate palaeocurrent data to the palaeoenvironmental interpretation of the sedimentary structures from which they are derived.

2.4 SEDIMENTARY FACIES AND SEQUENCE ANALYSIS

2.4.1 Erection and use of facies

Much of the field recording of sedimentary rocks is aimed at classifying the strata being investigated into recurrent units and attempting to detect an order in the vertical and lateral arrangement of those units.

The term applied to these units is facies which are defined on a combination of lithological, structural and organic aspects in the field. The facies may be given informal designations, e.g. 'facies A' or brief descriptive designations, e.g. 'pebbly sandstone facies'. The main criteria used in delimiting facies will vary with the strata being investigated. A facies unit may in some cases be an individual bed or bedset but may also comprise several beds or bedsets. The origin and modern usage of the term facies has been reviewed by Reading (1978b) and Walker (1984).

The scale of facies subdivision is in part dependent on the variety of physical and biological structures in the rocks but also partly on the time and money available for the study and the scale and purpose of the investigation. Standardization becomes important particularly when several different investigators are describing the same succession, e.g. in many industrial studies, but must not be allowed to 'straightjacket' new observations. Objectivity of definition is most important. Unless the general nature of a succession is relatively well known at the outset, a reconnaissance study will generally precede facies subdivision. It is difficult to give general rules on how finely to subdivide in the field but it is better to...
**VERTICAL RELATIONSHIPS**

Very extensive studies have been made of vertical sequences of facies from almost every environment. This is largely because sections with appreciable vertical thickness but limited lateral extent are the most common data sources. There is probably also some element of tradition in this emphasis in that the simplest pictorial representation of such data resembles a stratigraphic column. It is often possible from such diagrams to see repeated patterns of facies or changes with time by simple inspection. However, not all observers will have the same impression of a succession, and thus it is necessary to present and analyse the data as objectively as possible. The recognition of repeated patterns of facies (facies sequences, cycles) has proven to be a most powerful tool in environmental interpretation (Reading, 1978a).

For any given succession there are two simple techniques which will normally form the first stage of any analysis. The first is to present a graphic log of the succession (see Section 2.2.7), and the second is to produce a facies relationship diagram (FRD) to summarize the observed vertical sequence of facies (Fig. 2.46a). In Fig. 2.46a the basic data are still accessible but have been arranged in an order suggested by visual inspection of the graphic logs; the accompanying pictorial representation (Fig. 2.46b) helps to summarize the information.

**Markov Chains**

Few successions have as clear a vertical order as the Upper Carboniferous deltaic sediments studied by De Raaf (Fig. 2.46). Some simple statistical techniques have been employed to investigate the possible presence of vertical order in sedimentary successions. Almost all use probability matrices and employ the idea of Markov Chains. The underlying questions can be generalized as: (i) is the observed vertical sequence of lithologies random or ordered? (ii) in which way is it ordered?

Early work in this field was presented by Potter & Blkey (1968) and Gingerich (1969) with similar statistical techniques proposed and used by Read (1969), Schwarzacher (1969), Selley (1969), Lumsden (1971), Doveton (1971), Muil (1973), Turner (1974), and the lateral pinch out of delta front sands (Ryer, 1981).

**LATERAL RELATIONSHIPS**

Lateral relationships are in some cases directly observable and do not rely on an inferential step from the application of Walther’s Law (Middleton, 1973) to a vertical sequence. However, the limited physical size of most exposures means that such situations are uncommon and require favourable circumstances. Such exposures are valuable in the description of the larger scale geometry of facies which is also seldom possible with limited vertical sections. For example Hornor et al. (1978) gave some excellent examples of interpretation of block diagrams constructed from laterally extensive road cuts through deltaic successions where exposure levels are between 60 and 95%, over 102–103 m.

Spectacular examples of lateral facies changes on a large scale are given by Bosellini (1984) for Triassic carbonate platform margins in the Alps, by Hurst & Surlyk (1984) for Silurian carbonate platform margins in North Greenland, by Newell et al. (1955) for the Permian reef complex of the United States, and by Playford (1980) for the Devonian reef complex of the Canning Basin, Western Australia, and by Ricci Lucchi (1975b) for the Cimmerian turbidites of the Apennines. In these and other cases unusually large natural exposures allow lateral relationships of mega-units such as carbonate platforms and slope complexes to be observed. On a smaller scale lateral tracing can, for example, illustrate the position of levee deposits in both submarine fan valleys (Ricci Lucchi, 1981) and in river systems (Horne et al., 1978, fig. 7; Stewart, 1981), the geometry of fluvial channel sandstones (Friend, Slater & Williams, 1979), and the lateral pinch out of delta front sands (Ryer, 1981).
Table 2.7. Matrices for Markov analysis (data from Gingerich, 1969)

(a) Transition count matrix

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SS</th>
<th>MS</th>
<th>LIG</th>
<th>LS</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SS</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MS</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>76</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIG</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LS</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) Transition probability matrix

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SS</th>
<th>MS</th>
<th>LIG</th>
<th>LS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SS</td>
<td>0.88</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MS</td>
<td>0.28</td>
<td>0.54</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIG</td>
<td>0.44</td>
<td>0.56</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LS</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>0.88</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(c) Independent trials probability matrix

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SS</th>
<th>MS</th>
<th>LIG</th>
<th>LS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SS</td>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MS</td>
<td>0.41</td>
<td>0.43</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIG</td>
<td>0.31</td>
<td>0.57</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LS</td>
<td>0.26</td>
<td>0.49</td>
<td>0.27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(d) Independent trials matrix (data calculated by Gingerich method)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SS</th>
<th>MS</th>
<th>LIG</th>
<th>LS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SS</td>
<td>23.3</td>
<td>13.8</td>
<td>4.9</td>
<td>42.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MS</td>
<td>31.0</td>
<td>35.2</td>
<td>11.8</td>
<td>76.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIG</td>
<td>14.1</td>
<td>25.5</td>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>45.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LS</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>16.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>49.2</td>
<td>56.3</td>
<td>51.4</td>
<td>22.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Both Carr (1982) and Powers & Easterling (1982) independently suggested a method (effectively the same one) of overcoming this problem using a technique initially developed by Goodman (1968). The model proposed by Goodman (1968) is termed quasi-independence which is similar to independence but is applied to a subset of a contingency table. This model can be applied to embedded matrices and allows preservation of both row and column totals which was not possible in earlier methods (cf. Table 2.7d, f).

The expected transition frequencies under a model of quasi-independence are generated by an iterative method illustrated in Table 2.8 using Gingerich's data as calculated by Powers & Easterling (1982). This model of quasi-independence can be tested using a chi-square statistic which has (m - 1)^2 degrees of freedom. A comparison of the expected transition frequencies derived by quasi-independence and by the Gingerich method is given by Table 2.7d, f. Testing for goodness of fit of the quasi-independence model yields \( \chi^2 = 35.7 \) (cf. 42.3 for the Gingerich method), which rejects the assumption of quasi-independence. In this case, the earlier method of Gingerich would have given a similar conclusion but the strata were deliberately chosen to demonstrate order and in other cases the conclusions would be different.

An alternative method has been proposed, although not widely used, to avoid problems quasi-independence under a model of quasi-independence after Goodman (1968) and Powers & Easterling (1982)

Table 2.8. Calculation of expected frequencies under a model of quasi-independence after Goodman (1968) and Powers & Easterling (1982)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SS</th>
<th>MS</th>
<th>LIG</th>
<th>LS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SS</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+0.13</td>
<td>-0.11</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MS</td>
<td>-0.13</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+0.09</td>
<td>-0.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIG</td>
<td>+0.26</td>
<td>-0.20</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LS</td>
<td>-0.10</td>
<td>+0.21</td>
<td>-0.11</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The model termed quasi-independence is

\[ E(a_{ij}) = a_i b_j, \quad i + j = 0, \quad i = j \]

The iterative procedure for calculating \( a_i \) and \( b_j \) under the model is as follows:

**First iteration**

\[ a_i = n_i / (m - 1), \quad i = 1, 2, \ldots, m \]

\[ b_j = n_j / n_i, \quad j = 1, 2, \ldots, m \]

**Ith iteration**

\[ a_i = n_i / (m - 1) + b_j, \quad i = 1, 2, \ldots, m \]

\[ b_j = n_j / (m - 1) + a_i, \quad j = 1, 2, \ldots, m \]

Beginning with \( a_i \) as the average of the ith row entries provides a useful starting point. Iteration is continued until:

\[ |a_i - a_i^{(i-1)}| < 0.01 a_i \quad \text{for} \quad i = 1, \ldots, m \]

\[ |b_j - b_j^{(i-1)}| < 0.01 b_j \quad \text{for} \quad j = 1, \ldots, m \]

When \( a_i \) and \( b_j \) are the final values of \( a_i \) and \( b_j \) then the estimated expected frequencies are given by \( E_{ij} = a_i b_j \) for \( i \neq j \). For example consider the data from Table 2.7(a). On the first iteration:

\[ a_1 = n_1 / (m - 1) = 42 / 3 = 14.0 \]

\[ a_2 = n_2 / (m - 1) = 49 / 3 = 3.33 \]

\[ a_3 = n_3 / (m - 1) = 45 / 3 = 15.0 \]

\[ b_1 = n_1 / n_2 = 42 / 14.0 = 3.00 \]

\[ b_2 = n_2 / n_3 = 49 / 15.0 = 3.27 \]

**On the second iteration:**

\[ a_1 = 42 / (2.21 + 1.01 + 0.29) = 11.97 \]

\[ a_2 = 34.23 \]

\[ a_3 = 13.16 \]

**Further**

\[ b_1 = 42 / 34.23 = 1.23 \]

\[ b_2 = 13.46 \]

\[ b_3 = 3.86 \]

Convergence to achieve 1% change requires 13 iterations at which point the estimates are:

\[ a_1 = 10.22 \]

\[ a_2 = 42.61 \]

\[ a_3 = 11.12 \]

\[ a_4 = 3.48 \]

\[ b_1 = 0.73 \]

\[ b_2 = 3.06 \]

\[ b_3 = 0.80 \]

\[ b_4 = 0.25 \]

Thus a value of \( E_{ij} = d_i b_j \) for \( i \neq j \) is 0.25 which is 2.78 times the observed counts at this stage.
problems as the choice of sample interval is very important. The sample interval must be sufficiently small to catch important transitions and this usually leads to large diagonal frequencies with which testing the full matrix for independence can be misleading. This can be overcome by testing off-diagonal frequencies against the model of quasi-independence. In general, there seems to be little advantage in following this more complex method.

Having established that a succession contains some order, the next question concerns the nature of that order and an identification of preferred transitions (question (ii) above). Gingerich (1969) attempted to express that order by constructing a difference matrix (Table 2.7e) produced by subtracting the independent trials matrix (the 'expected' results) from the observed transition probability matrix (the 'observed' results). An assumption is made that the positive elements in this matrix have a higher than random chance of occurring. All positive differences are used to indicate the path of the sedimentary 'cycle'. With minor alterations most later workers have employed a similar technique. However, small positive differences can arise from a random process and failure to evaluate the significance of positive differences can lead to the identification of too many preferred transitions (Harper, 1984). Similarly, negative departures are ignored by this technique even though they contribute to the test statistic and to the rejection of the model of independence.

The currently used techniques for identifying sources of non-randomness are relatively crude and demonstrate the need for further research. Such techniques involve the identification of 'extreme' cells, i.e. those which show the largest differences between observed and expected transition frequencies. A simple method (Turk, 1979; Powers & Easterling, 1982) is to tabulate:

\[ Z_{ij} = \frac{(O_{ij} - E_{ij})^2}{E_{ij}} \]

The \( Z_{ij} \)'s are squared and summed to yield \( \chi^2 \) and they have approximately the standard normal distribution. As 95% of the standard normal distribution falls between ±2.0, so a \( Z_{ij} \) value outside this is fairly unusual. Analysis of the Gingerich data (Table 2.7f) shows that the primary contributor to the large \( \chi^2 \) is the large number of transitions from lignite to sandstone.

Table 2.9. Normalized differences \( (O_{ij} - E_{ij})/E_{ij}^{0.5} \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SS</th>
<th>MS</th>
<th>LIG</th>
<th>LS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SS</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+1.02</td>
<td>-1.81</td>
<td>-0.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MS</td>
<td>-1.84</td>
<td>+1.19</td>
<td>+1.02</td>
<td>+1.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIG</td>
<td>+4.14</td>
<td>-1.55</td>
<td>-1.67</td>
<td>-1.07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LS</td>
<td>-0.98</td>
<td>+1.02</td>
<td>-1.07</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Where \( O_{ij} \) is shown in Table 2.7(a), \( E_{ij} \) is shown in Table 2.7(f).

Fig. 2.47. Tree diagrams for Devonian fluvial sediments which show upward facies transition probabilities >0.15. Arbitrary selection of this value is used to imply order of sequence (from Allen, 1970). (Reproduced by permission of SEPM.)

Fig. 2.48. Tree diagram constructed from the positive elements of the difference matrix (Gingerich, 1969; Miall, 1973; Hubert & Hyde, 1982) (Figs 2.48, 2.49 and 2.50). The data of Gingerich is shown in Table 2.7(f) and the test statistic is derived from the difference matrix. The Z_jy's are squared and summed to yield \( \chi^2 \) and they have approximately the standard normal distribution. As 95% of the standard normal distribution falls between ±2.0, a Z_jy value outside this is fairly unusual. Analysis of the Gingerich data (Tables 2.7f) shows that the primary contributor to the large \( \chi^2 \) is the large number of transitions from lignite to sandstone.

Fig. 2.49. Difference matrix constructed for Devonian fluvial sediments, Arctic Canada, following the methodology of Gingerich (1969). The accompanying tree diagram distinguishes between 'major' transition paths (solid lines) and 'minor' transition paths (dashed lines), on the basis of values in the difference matrix (from Miall, 1973).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>-0.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>-0.03</td>
<td>-0.01</td>
<td>-0.20</td>
<td>-0.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.19</td>
<td>-0.23</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>-0.01</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>-0.23</td>
<td>-0.02</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>-0.23</td>
<td>0.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>-0.15</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>-0.01</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>-0.20</td>
<td>-0.12</td>
<td>-0.02</td>
<td>-0.01</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>-0.21</td>
<td>-0.17</td>
<td>-0.02</td>
<td>-0.01</td>
<td>0.39</td>
<td>0.03</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Observed facies relationships — Sharp — Gradational

Preferred facies relationships

Vertical accretion

In-channel

(a) Facies relationship diagram which displays the basic field data (cf. Fig. 2.46a)

(b) Preferred facies relationships based on data from a difference matrix. Higher values in the difference matrix are given greater emphasis; thus, heavy solid arrows — >0.30, light solid arrows — 0.10—0.30, dotted arrows — 0.05—0.10. A generalized environmental interpretation has been added.

(c) A representation of (b) in the form of a vertical log with average facies thicknesses and palaeocurrents taken from the field data. (Reproduced by permission of Canadian Journal of Earth Sciences.)

Fig. 2.50. Summary of vertical facies relationships for the Battery Point Formation, Devonian, Canada (after Cant & Walker, 1976).

Other attempts to construct inferred facies relationship diagrams have also used difference matrices but have made subjective judgements on the statistical data (e.g., Figs 2.49 and 2.50). The assignment of environmental interpretations to the different facies in such diagrams is clearly useful but there is little statistical justification for the separation of values from the difference matrix into groups of differing significance. For example Fig. 2.50 was used to generate expected sequences of facies to which further data such as thickness of facies were added. Such an approach is potentially useful and care must be taken that the upward transitions used are statistically meaningful. It is particularly valuable to accompany presentation of the raw data with the number of transitions and the nature of boundaries (see Cant & Walker, 1976 and Fig. 2.50a).

http://jurassic.ru/
Environmental interpretation commonly includes statements on the lateral arrangement of facies as deduced from vertical sequences. This involves application of Walther’s Law of Facies, as succinctly summarized by Reading (1978a). Inferring lateral juxtaposition often necessitates the presence of ‘gradational’ contacts in vertical sequence. The techniques for analyzing vertical sequences do not normally consider the nature of contacts between facies. This must be borne in mind during interpretation and preferably presented on facies relationship diagrams such as that in Fig. 2.46.

Thus Markov analysis provides a powerful tool to test for order in vertical sequences. Techniques for investigating the nature of that order, where it exists, are less well developed but are available and allow for statistically definitive statements on vertical sequence.
2.4.4 Non-Markov techniques for sequence analysis

Presentation and analysis of vertical sequences of rock is not limited to Markov analysis. Several other, often simpler, techniques have been employed with considerable success. Perhaps the most common are those that consider vertical changes in grain size or bed thickness. The former have commonly been employed in the study of conglomerates (Figs. 2.24c, 2.51 and 2.52) (Bluck, 1967; Steel et al., 1977; Heward, 1978; Surlyk, 1978; Allen, 1981). The aim has largely been the detection of sequences showing a unidirectional variation of maximum clast size, i.e. coarsening up (CU) or fining up (FU) sequences. The detection of such sequences has often been by simple visual inspection of the data but they are also susceptible to techniques such as moving means.

Vertical changes in layer thickness have also been useful, particularly in turbidite successions (Ricci Lucchi, 1975b; Rupke, 1977; Shanmugam, 1980; Graham, 1982). Techniques of presentation show considerable variation, e.g. the vertical scale may be stratigraphic thickness as in Fig. 2.53 or sandstone number as in Fig. 2.54. A criticism of many of these presentations is that 'trends' are designated from visual inspection of the data (Fig. 2.53, Fig. 2.54—third order sequences) without any statistical justification. Techniques such as moving means (Fig. 2.54) can be useful here although these should always be presented along with the original data as averaging will lead to displacement of the peak values that are commonly used to delimit packets of sediment (rhythms or cycles). One must take care that compared units of thickness have similar definition and that their significance is understood (see Section 2.2.3).

3 Grain size determination and interpretation

JOHN MCMANUS

3.1 INTRODUCTION

The size of the component particles is one of the fundamental textural characteristics of all fragmentary deposits and their lithified equivalents. From the earliest days of observation and recording of geological features, terms such as 'coarse', 'medium' or 'fine' grained have been applied to unconsolidated deposits. Although considered a useful lithological discriminator for tracing individual horizons during geological mapping, little systematic study of grain size characterization and measurement occurred before the end of the nineteenth century. By that time there was already an appreciation that very substantial currents of water were necessary to transport coarse sediments but, without systematic means of establishing precisely the sizes of particles and the range of particle sizes within a deposit, little scientific advance was made.

In general terms, 'size' of particles is not readily defined as it is a measure of the dimensions which best describe a specific group of particles. At one extreme the particle dimensions may exceed one metre, but at the other are the very fine particles less than one micrometre in diameter. A cube may be best described by its edge length, a sphere by its diameter, a rod perhaps by its intermediate axis and a flake by its projection area. Thus 'size' is partly dependent on shape, a fact which was gradually recognized during the early years of the present century.

The methods used in determination of size vary widely from calipers on the coarsest fragments, through sieving and techniques dependent upon settling velocity, to those detecting changes in electrical resistance as particles are passed through small electrolyte-filled orifices. No single technique of assessing particle size is applicable throughout the entire size spectrum, and each is suited to specific size ranges.

Although when measuring pebbles to determine axial lengths individually, relatively small numbers of grains are considered, in most methods large numbers of grains are examined so that a statistically meaningful set of numbers is obtained to characterize the sample.

The techniques of processing the data on grain size were largely explored during the early 1920s and 1930s, when a series of textural classifications was introduced. In their simplest forms these classifications indicate average grain size, and the degree and form of the spread around that average. Statistical analysis is aided by means of a simple transformation of size from a metric scale to a logarithmic one which enables application of both graphic and moment statistical techniques. Explored initially for sand-dominated assemblages, the methods were refined during the 1950s and applied to thin section analysis of lithified deposits. Fresh techniques of exploring the information on grain populations with a view to interpreting depositional environment or transportation experienced by the deposits continue to be introduced with varying degrees of success. Many have appeared, been explored and found applicable only under certain restricted conditions.

Even the most sanguine grain size enthusiast would agree that no universal solution exists yet as to enable the sedimentologist unequivocally to distinguish depositional environments in ancient deposits on grain size criteria alone. Nevertheless, an enormous amount of information about a sedimentary deposit may be obtained from systematic examination of the multiple sub-populations of which most are formed. Specific sub-populations may be source- or process-diagnostic, a factor which frequently emerges from regional surveys.

From the outset it is most important that the investigator should decide precisely what information is required from the sediments to be analysed (McCave, 1979a). Analysis solely to obtain numerical assessment of the texture of a deposit is unlikely to satisfy the sedimentologist but this information may be all that is required to demonstrate to a fisheries expert the potential value of a site for the introduction of an economically important species.
such as *Nephrus* (Scampi). In assessment of the suitability of a deposit for supplying specific coarse concrete aggregates or finer mortar sands, very precise requirements are laid down by the construction industry. These often demand restricted ranges of particle sizes in fixed proportions within the gravel. In tracing characteristic source-specific sub-populations of sediment passing through a river system the closest possible spacing of sieves may be required. In estimating the potential 'activity' of a soil it may be necessary to determine the maximum projection area of the particle surfaces of various sizes to assist in the assessment of potential cationic exchanges, scanning electron microscopy may be necessary.

In this chapter attention is devoted to the techniques used commonly by sedimentologists to determine sizes of particles, i.e. sieving, pipetting, settling and Coulter counting, coupled with optical microscopy. Where other appropriate methods exist reference will be made to useful sources of information.

### 3.2 SAMPLE PREPARATION

The selection of materials to be processed is made in the field and usually collections comprising many samples arrive in the laboratory at any one time. The initial procedure in preparing for analysis is the systematic checking of the materials to ensure that identification numbers and labels are all present and legible. This is most readily achieved by laying out systematic checking of the materials to ensure that identification numbers and labels are all present and legible. This is most readily achieved by laying out the location of each sample and ensuring that individual samples there is no guarantee that individual particles there is no guarantee that individual particles are not lost during each process of decanting the water after washing.

When fine materials are present it is necessary to separate them by wet sieving so that sands and the silty/clay fraction may be examined separately using different size determination techniques. It is most important that separation of the fines be carried out before sieving. Centrifugation of the sediment for, on heating, silts and clays produce crusts or durable pellets. Although these may be later broken down physically to release individual particles there is no guarantee that individual particles themselves are not susceptible to attack. Removal of water from fine sediments is best achieved using dialysis. The sample, placed in a dialysing bag, is suspended in distilled or deionized water, circulation of which encourages osmotic exchange of the salts over a period of several days. Ideally many samples are dialysed simultaneously.

Once sample preparation has been completed the simplest analyses may be performed on the largest particles.

### 3.3 DIRECT MEASUREMENT OF GRAIN SIZE

The analysis of particle sizes of coarse unconsolidated sediments may be achieved through direct measurement of individual pebbles. The lengths of representative diameters or axes are determined with the aid of vernier calipers (Briggs, 1977). For every pebble several possible diameters may be recognized along the three principal axes of the pebble. A nominal diameter may also be derived from the volume of the pebble.

The particle is placed on a flat surface and the length of the intermediate axis, \( L \), is determined as the shortest visible diameter. The length of the largest axis, \( L \), is measured, and rotation of the particle by 90° about that axis reveals the shortest axis, \( S \) which may then be directly measured. It should be noted that \( L \) is not the greatest possible dimension of the pebble but is quite strictly defined in geometric terms. Thus three mutually perpendicular axes may be used to characterize the particle (Fig. 3.1). Addition of the three lengths, \( I, L, S \), and division by three yields a mean diameter \( D_{3.4} \) for the particle. A second mean

*Fig. 3.1. The principal axes measured in characterizing pebble size.*

Such measurements should be repeated for 100–400 pebbles at a site. Thereafter some workers analyse the results according to the numbers of pebbles falling into specific categories. However, because it is the weight distribution rather than the frequency distribution which determines sediment behaviour during transport and deposition the weight of the pebbles falling into each size class should be used for the purposes of comparison. In most cases the length of \( I \) provides a useful assessment of the mean diameter, and if determinations are to be made in the field this diameter provides a useful measure of average size.
1961, Folk, 1974b, Baller & McManus, 1979). With appropriate sieves, particles varying between 0.002 and 250 mm may be separated into regular size class intervals. Most commonly sieving is used for size determination in the pebble and sand ranges, i.e. particles coarser than 0.063 mm.

For the coarser particles sieve screens are formed of plates or strong wire of stainless steel or brass, and finer wire meshes are used for smaller particles. Between the wires are square openings, the numbers of which per unit length give the mesh number and the diagonal the nominal size.

The coarsest sieve required is placed at the top of a nest of sieves in which the screen openings become progressively smaller downwards. A pan is placed beneath the lowest sieve to retain the 'fines' which pass through the entire column. For the most detailed analysis the meshes are arranged at the closest possible intervals, but greater spacings by size may be used if less detail is required.

The sample for testing is placed on the uppermost sieve after weighing, the retaining lid closed and the nest of sieves arranged in a mechanical shaker (Fig. 3.2). The nest is agitated by the shaker for a predetermined time interval usually 15—20 minutes. It is most important that the base of the sieve nest is arranged exactly parallel to the shaker base and is firmly held in position during agitation (Metz, 1985). Not uncommonly only half of the sieves required may be mounted on the shaker at a time, so the pan residue from the coarser fraction is released into the upper sieve of the finer part of the nest in order to complete the analysis. This nest also requires a terminal pan.

The material retained in each successive sieve is emptied in turn on to a sheet of glazed paper, the sieve tapped gently in a direction diagonal to the meshes and swept with appropriate sieve brushes (camel hair for fine apertures, brass for coarse screens) to dislodge particles which have become firmly held. Each fraction of sediment obtained is weighed to 0.01 g. The material retained on each sieve screen is weighed in turn and the weight of any residue in the final pan is also determined.

Most workers find it convenient to record their sieving analysis data systematically on forms designed for the purpose. The sieve mesh sizes, raw weights, weight percentages and cumulative percentages, finer or coarser than the specific sieve, may be displayed. Likewise, further groupings such as percentage of coarse sand or of very fine sand may also be calculated. An example of such a record sheet is provided in Table 3.1.

### Table 3.1. Typical sieve analysis record sheet

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sieve number</th>
<th>Φ values</th>
<th>Approx. value (µm)</th>
<th>Approx. value (mm)</th>
<th>Weight retained (g)</th>
<th>Weight%</th>
<th>Weight% West/ Wentworth classification</th>
<th>Cumulative %</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>-1.04</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>NS</td>
<td>BS</td>
<td>PG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>-0.75</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>-0.49</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>-0.27</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>-0.00</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>0.23</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>CS</td>
<td>CS</td>
<td>CS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>0.52</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>CS</td>
<td>CS</td>
<td>CS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>0.74</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>CS</td>
<td>CS</td>
<td>CS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>CS</td>
<td>CS</td>
<td>CS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>1.24</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>1.59</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>1.76</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>1.99</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>2.24</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>2.49</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>2.72</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>3.01</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>3.26</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>170</td>
<td>3.49</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>3.71</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>240</td>
<td>3.91</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td>VCS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pan (loss)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 3.2. Sieve nest and shaker (photograph — Fritsch).

#### 3.4.1 Dry sieving

Perhaps the most commonly used method of determining particle sizes, dry sieving, is subject to potential errors from many sources.

(a) During the drying process particle aggregation may occur and it is most important that sieve residues should be checked, using a hand lens where necessary, to detect the presence of aggregates which form clusters considerably larger than the original single component grains.

(b) Thorough cleaning of the sieve meshes is important as retained particles severely restrict the aperture spaces available for grains to pass through.

(c) Overloading of the sieves restricts the opportunity for particles to progress down the nest to an appropriate mesh. The greatest load on a sieve should not exceed 4—6 grain diameters (McManus,

http://jurassic.ru/
particle shapes from spheres may lead to under-
estimation of the characteristic intermediate diam-
eter according to Ludwick & Henderson (1968).

However, it takes longer for irregularly shaped par-
ticles to pass down a sieve column than grains
which are smooth surfaced or equant (Kennedy, Meloy &
Durney, 1985). Visual inspection of sieve residues
should be undertaken to confirm the presence or
absence of substantial proportions of strongly non-
spherical particles in the sediment.

In a better attempt to define the intermediate
diameter \( D_{s} \) of particles retained on sieves of speci-
fic nominal diameters \( D_{n} \), Komar & Cui (1984) demonstrated that the relationship

\[
J = 1.32 D_{s}
\]

provided a means of obtaining a more closely repre-
sentative grain diameter than currently given by the
sieve mesh itself. This correction factor may be
applied to metric measures of diameter.

3.4.2 Wet sieving

Since many sediments contain mixtures of gravels,
sands and fine particles, the dry sieving technique
may be inappropriate for examination of only part of
the whole assemblage of particles. The finer particles
require other methods of analysis. Separation of the
coarse from the fine fractions is customarily made at
63 \( \mu \)m, which is the most commonly used lower limit
of dry sieving. However, it is not possible to analyse
satisfactorily both the coarse and the fine fractions
fully once the split has been achieved.

Some workers suggest that the entire sediment
sample should be oven dried at 110°C and weighed
to 0.1% before being immersed in water containing a
dispersant such as sodium hexametaphosphate.
The sample is periodically agitated in the water for
over an hour before being washed through 2 \( \mu \)m
and 0.063 mm stainless steel meshes using wash
bottles containing dispersant solution. The fines
continue to be washed through the sieve until the
water runs clear. The residue (not more than 105 g)
on the 0.063 mm sieve is dried at 110°C and sieved as
above. The total fines content is determined as the

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BS sieve mesh (mm)</th>
<th>Maximum weight (kg)</th>
<th>Sieve diameter (mm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3</td>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.35</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>0.200</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.18</td>
<td>0.100</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.600</td>
<td>0.075</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.425</td>
<td>0.075</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.300</td>
<td>0.050</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.212</td>
<td>0.050</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.150</td>
<td>0.050</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.063</td>
<td>0.025</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Computation of the diameters of grains from a
knowledge of their settling velocities is dependent
upon the exploitation of Stokes’ Law of settling.
When a particle in static water settles at a constant
velocity the gravitational force exerted on the par-
ticle is balanced by fluid resistances represented by
viscosity and particle drag coefficient. The balance
is normally represented within the equation

\[
V_{s} = \frac{d^{2}(\rho_{s} - \rho_{w})g}{18 \mu}
\]

where \( V_{s} \) is the settling velocity, \( d \) the particle di-
ameter, \( \rho_{s} \) the density of the grain and water
respectively, \( g \) is the gravitational acceleration and \( \mu \)
the dynamic viscosity of the fluid.

3.5 SIZE ANALYSIS BY SEDIMENTATION METHODS

Grain size analysis of fine sediments depends not on
direct measurement of the particles themselves but
rather upon indirect computations of diameters
based on observation of the grain behaviour in fluids
or the response of the fluids to displacement by the
grains. The principal methods based on the speed
with which particles settle through fluids yield set-
tling velocities from which equivalent grain dia-
\*(3.5.1 Pipette method)\

Inexpensive size analysis of naturally occurring fine
sediments or of material obtained from wet sieving
of a sediment containing significant fines is most
satisfactorily achieved by the use of the pipette
method (Krumbein & Pettijohn, 1961; Galehouse,
1971b; Folk, 1974b). In essence this technique re-
\*(3.5.2 Use of the equation)\

Use of the equation is based on the precept that
particles are dominantly spheres and are of identical
densities. The assumption that most are of quartz
permits computation of equivalent grain diameters.
In practice natural sediments are rarely composed of
spherical grains, and most contain assemblages of
many shapes. Shapes of identical composition and

diameter set at greatly differing velocities if their
shapes or surface textures differ, for the drag coeffi-
cients resisting passage through the water vary with
both of these properties.
hexametaphosphate and 7 g of sodium carbonate in distilled water to give one litre of solution. Although many variations of concentration have been tried that found most useful is 50 ml of the solution to 1000 ml of distilled water. Alternative dispersants used in some laboratories are Calgon (2 g per 1000 ml water) and Teepol (4 drops per 1000 ml of water).

A sample of 20 g of fine sediment is suspended in a 1000 ml measuring cylinder charged with water containing dispersant, and thoroughly mixed through end over end rotation or by means of a manual stirrer which travels from the base to the top of the fluid column. As the suspension begins standing a timing device is started.

A pipette is inserted gradually into the fluid so that its inlet is 20 cm below the surface and a volume of 20 ml is withdrawn 58 s from the start of settling. The fluid is released into a numbered 50 ml beaker of 20 ml is withdrawn 58 s from the start of settling. Which travels from the base to the top of the fluid and any particles retained within the pipette washed into the beaker using distilled water.

Successive 20 ml aliquots are extracted from the column at time intervals which calculations have shown reveal particles of known diameter (Table 3.3 after Krumbein & Pettijohn, 1961). The aliquots are withdrawn from specified depths at the time intervals shown for a full analysis of the fine particle content.

If no more than the contents of medium silt, fine silt or clay are required, aliquots may be withdrawn after the appropriate time intervals and the relative abundance calculated from differences in weights of suspension in each. In establishing sand: silt: clay ratios of sediments it may be necessary to withdraw samples no more often than after 58 s at 20 cm (0.063 mm) and 123 min at 10 cm (0.004 mm).

In each case the pipette should be gently inserted and withdrawn from the fluid in order to minimize disturbance. The lowering and extraction phases should each take about 10 s. Fluid withdrawal is most readily achieved with the aid of a manually operated vacuum device (Fig. 3.3). Beakers containing the fluids are placed in a ventilated oven and dried at 100°C for at least 24 hr, cooled in a desiccator, and weighed to 0.001 g.

In calculating the weight of sediment retained in each withdrawn aliquot, allowance must be made for the dispersant. The simplest computation is achieved by comparing the weights of successive withdrawals. As both contain the same quantity of dispersant the difference represents the weight within the size interval concerned. Since each aliquot forms 2% of the original sample the full size distribution may be calculated through continued withdrawals to the finest required size. The total weight of fine sediment undergoing analysis is fifty times the sediment extracted in the initial (58 s) sample.

Because the method depends on Stokes' Law the dynamic viscosity of the water is important. Viscosity varies greatly with temperature and the table of timings provided is calculated for analysis at the standardized temperature of 20°C. As full analysis may take several days to complete it is very important that it be carried out in a thermally regulated laboratory. In many countries stabilization may be possible but not to the relatively warm 20°C. Modified tables may be established for lower temperatures, the greater viscosities requiring extension of the sampling times as settling velocities decrease as the temperature falls.

The quantities of initial sample used in different centres varies from 4 to 35 g per 1000 ml but in practice the most satisfactory concentrations from the viewpoint of reproducibility have been found to be between 10 and 20 g per 1000 ml. The higher the concentrations the greater the possibility of entering the realms of hindered settling and settling convection in which upward motion of escaping waters impedes settling (Kuenen, 1968).

This time consuming analytical procedure has the advantage of simplicity and requires little specialist equipment. It also provides sufficient time to permit several analyses to be carried out simultaneously. Most workers find that four to six sets of analyses can be dealt with even if a very detailed withdrawal pattern is required. If for any reason a withdrawal time is missed the entire pattern of settling may be restarted by restirring and allowing the material to recommence settling until the required time interval has elapsed. Resuspension may also permit the analyst to leave the laboratory for sleep if the timings are carefully pre-arranged.

3.5.2 Sedimentation tube

The second widely used technique based on settling velocity is that of the sedimentation tube. However, unlike the pipette technique, this method is not confined to analysis of silts and clays, but is commonly applied to the sand fraction of the sediments. The earliest sedimentation tube widely used is the Emery tube (Emery, 1938). Samples released simultaneously at the top settle through a broad tube which narrows into a smaller diameter tube at the base. The heights of accumulation at known time intervals are measured by optical micrometer and the particle sizes calculated from these figures.

The introduction of a pressure transducer to determine the temporal variations of weight in the water column has allowed the use of electronic recorders to be used. Initially, this modification involved simultaneous comparison of the weights of identical columns of water with and without sediment (Woods Hole Rapid Sediment Analyser: Zeiger, Whitney & Hayes, 1960), but improvements in transducer technology have since enabled the devices to be used in single tubes. The gradual decrease of weight of material in the column through time as sediment passes the transducer levels during settling enables estimation of the particle size ranges involved.

A further variation introduced a balance pan within and near the base of the tube. The varying weights of particles retained through time are recorded in the sedimentation balance method (Sengupta & Veenstra, 1968; Theide et al., 1976). In the sedimentation tube technique the particles are released simultaneously from the water surface, a process achieved by holding a 2–5 g sample on a platten by means of a wetting agent and lowering it into the water surface. The sample is kept small to minimize bunching of the cloud of settling particles.

If the concentration exceeds 1% hindered settling occurs and this may decrease settling velocities by 5% below those of individual identical particles (Richardson & Zaki, 1954). The diameter of the tube is important here, broad tubes being required for analysis of coarse sediments (Channon, 1971). Since most sedimentation tubes are at least 2 m in height problems arise in ensuring static water, for such columns develop internal convection currents unless maintained in thermally stable conditions.

The reliability of the sedimentation tube methods, as determined by good reproducibility of results from repeated analysis of the same samples and by analysis of multiple sub-samples from individual sediments, has been recorded by many workers. However, interpretation of the measurements obtained is less clear. Although fall velocities of individual particles may permit confident calculation of particle diameters, the behaviour of clusters of par-

Table 3.3. Table of settling times, after Krumbein & Pettijohn (1961)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phi</th>
<th>mm</th>
<th>μm</th>
<th>Depth (cm)</th>
<th>h</th>
<th>min</th>
<th>s</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>0.003</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>58</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>56</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>0.0312</td>
<td>31.2</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>52</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>0.0156</td>
<td>15.6</td>
<td>silt</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>0.0078</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>31</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>0.0039</td>
<td>3.9</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.0</td>
<td>0.00105</td>
<td>1.95</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>clay</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>0.00098</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>0.00094</td>
<td>0.94</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>0.00049</td>
<td>0.49</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 3.3. Settling column, pipettes and beakers for estimation of particle size by withdrawal.
icles of a range of sizes is less easy to calculate. In most cases individual tubes require to be calibrated against well characterized particles such as single spheres (Zeigler & Gill, 1959) or clusters of spheres of single sizes and combinations of sizes (Schlee, 1966) before their performance may be known. Total calibration against the full range of particle size combinations and particle shapes is impracticable.

In practice the particle sizes in the sediment are computed from the weights settled at specific time intervals. The measured settling velocities are converted into 'equivalent sedimentation diameters', or the diameters of spheres settling at the same rate as the natural particles being tested (Gibbs, Matthews & Link, 1971).

One of the most relevant particle characteristics derived from sieve analysis is the size of the intermediate diameter. Investigation of settling of natural quartz sands enabled Baba & Komar (1981) to obtain a relationship:

\[ V_m = 0.977 V_p^{0.913} \]

in which \( V_p \) is the settling rate of the equivalent sphere of diameter, \( I \), and \( V_m \) is the measured settling velocity. Combining this relationship with that of Gibbs et al. (1971) enabled Komar & Cui (1984) to compute intermediate grain diameters rather than equivalent sedimentation diameters using the expression:

\[ I = 0.111608 V_p^2 \phi + 2V_0.03314 V_p^{3.9} + [\phi (0.51 V_p^2 + 0.0087 V_p^3)](\phi - \phi) \]

in which \( \phi \) and \( \phi \) are the densities of water and the grains, and \( I \) is the dynamic viscosity of water.

In early comparisons of sizes determined by sieving and settling techniques Sengupta & Werestra (1968) and Sanford & Swift (1971) concluded that in general the results were very similar but that settling over-estimated fine particle sizes and under-estimated coarse particles. Thus settling appeared to over-estimate fine particle sizes and under-estimate coarse sizes. Knowing that all were of uniform original size permits calculation of that size from the density distribution observed. Without the knowledge that the grains were initially uniform it would have been impossible to reconstruct the original population (Krumbein, 1934). In natural sediments the grains are rarely uniform in size and few are spherical, so that the unknown elements in the analysis render the mathematical problem of interpreting the original grain size populations from thin section insoluble (Blatt, Middleton & Murray, 1980).

Nevertheless, sedimentologists dealing in the lithified materials frequently wish to make statements about the textural characteristics of their rocks. In the only systematic study of this topic, Friedman (1958) compared thin section analysis of artificially cemented and sectioned sands with settling analyses of the same materials. The correction factors derived empirically were expressed in graphical form (Fig. 3.4).

Because there is a preferred grain orientation in most sediments, the particles lying with long and intermediate axes parallel to the depositional surface, thin sections for size analysis of such sediments should be cut parallel to bedding or cross-bedding surfaces. The size of the smaller axes encountered, i.e. intermediate axes of the grains encountered at grid intersections as in point-counting, should be determined. The use of gridded photomicrographs

3.6 COULTER COUNTER

A second technique which provides the possibility of analysing sand, silt and clay sized particles in the size range 0.0005—0.85 mm depends on the detection of variation in electrical current as fluids containing the particles are passed through apertures of various diameters. The principle on which the Coulter counter operates is that the particles are suspended in an electrolyte which is drawn through the aperture. In the absence of particles an electrical current across the aperture remains constant, but when particles of low electrical conductivity, such as quartz, pass the aperture they cause current fluctuations, depending upon their volume. The stream of particles generates a series of pulses of current, up to 5,000 s⁻¹, which may be automatically recorded as numbers and particle volumes.

The system was originally introduced for size determination of fine particles (Sheldon & Parsons, 1967) but has been extended into the sand range (McCave & Jarvis, 1973). Using suitable techniques very fine increments of size may be detected (McCave, 1979b) by what is a very rapid and highly reproducible technique. Many samples may be processed in one day. The method is simple, but depends upon a relatively expensive apparatus which is not, but should be, available in all sedimentological laboratories, particularly where fine sediments are to be analysed. The Coulter counter is widely used in industrial laboratories and in medical situations but relatively rarely by academic sedimentologists.

3.7 GRAIN SIZE ANALYSIS OF LITHIFIED SEDIMENTS

Ancient sedimentary deposits which cannot be readily disaggregated present major difficulties to the potential size-analyst. Any grain size estimation must be undertaken from the rock itself or from polished or thin sections of the rock. A thin section cut through a randomly packed set of spheres reveals circular outlines of a range of sizes. Knowing that all were of uniform original size permits calculation of that size from the density distribution observed. Without the knowledge that the grains were initially uniform it would have been impossible to reconstruct the original population (Krumbein, 1934). In natural sediments the grains are rarely uniform in size and few are spherical, so that the unknown elements in the analysis render the mathematical problem of interpreting the original grain size populations from thin section insoluble (Blatt, Middleton & Murray, 1980).

Nevertheless, sedimentologists dealing in the lithified materials frequently wish to make statements about the textural characteristics of their rocks. In the only systematic study of this topic, Friedman (1958) compared thin section analysis of artificially cemented and sectioned sands with settling analyses of the same materials. The correction factors derived empirically were expressed in graphical form (Fig. 3.4).

Because there is a preferred grain orientation in most sediments, the particles lying with long and intermediate axes parallel to the depositional surface, thin sections for size analysis of such sediments should be cut parallel to bedding or cross-bedding surfaces. The size of the smaller axes encountered, i.e. intermediate axes of the grains encountered at grid intersections as in point-counting, should be determined. The use of gridded photomicrographs

3.8 GRAIN SIZE ANALYSIS

3.8.1 Scales of size

Since sediment particles range in size from several metres to less than one micrometer, a scale using uniform divisions by sizes too much emphasis on coarse sediment and too little on fine particles. In consequence, a geometric scaling was introduced to place equal emphasis on small differences in fine particles and larger differences in coarse particles. Although there is fairly general agreement on the terms to be applied to sediment particles of various sizes the definitions used for the bounding sizes is not uniform. Most workers take values based on the Udden-Wentworth scale (Table 3.4), which is a ratio scale in which the grade boundaries differ by a factor of 2. One grade coarser is twice the size of its predecessor and one grade finer is half the size. The grade boundaries are established at 2, 1, 0.5 and 0.25 mm etc. Even with agreement on the form of the scale and grade boundaries in the coarser ranges different authors still place the silt—clay boundary variously at 2 μm (Briggs, 1977; Friedman & Sanders, 1978), which is a size commonly used by soil scientists, or at 4 μm, as in the original Udden-Wentworth system (Tanner, 1969; Pettijohn, 1973) as is more normal amongst geological sedimentologists.

In order to plot the results of grain size analysis using the ratio scale it is necessary to use logarithmic scale graph paper for size so that visual equality is given to the scale divisions. This led Krumbein (1934) to introduce the phi transformation, which recognized the logarithmic equality of scale divisions. He expressed grain size such that

\[ \phi = -\log d \]

where \( d \) is the grain diameter in micrometres. This permitted the use of arithmetic graph papers for plotting. According to the phi transformation a coarse particle 4 mm in diameter has an equivalent diameter of \( 2^4 \phi \), whereas a finer grain 0.125 mm in diameter equates with \( 1^4 \phi \) diameter. The larger the particle phi number the finer the particle. The relationship between metric and phi scales presented in tables by Page (1955) is illustrated in Fig. 3.5.

The arithmetic form of the phi scaling also potentially simplifies statistical analysis of grain size data,
but confusion concerning the properties of the phi scale dimensions led to an accepted redefinition in which

\[ \phi = -\log_{10} \left( \frac{d}{d_0} \right) \]

where \( d \) is the diameter of a 1 mm grain. This stresses that the phi system is one of dimensionless numbers and so may be correctly used for statistical analysis to derive factors such as the standard deviation, skewness and kurtosis of grain size distributions (McManus, 1963; Krumbein, 1964).

### 3.8.2 Graphic presentation

The simplest method of presenting grain size data graphically is by means of the histogram. In this the grain size is the independent variable, which is therefore plotted on the horizontal axis and the vertical axis is used for the dependent variable, i.e. the determined weight percentage. The weight percentage of sediment retained on each sieve is plotted as a column rising to that value and extending from the relevant sieve mesh to the next coarser mesh used. The output from most Coulter counters is also given in this format. The resulting graphical construction is simplified if the size scale is represented by equal increments, usually represented by phi, half-phi or quarter-phi divisions. A line graph, which is the unique frequency curve of the sediment, may be formed by linking the mid-points of the histogram columns (Fig. 3.6). Ideally the frequency curve should be formed from the most detailed possible size analysis of the sediment. When sieving is used the sieves are arranged at \( \frac{1}{2} \) phi scale intervals. The frequency curve approximates to a continuous functional relationship between grain size and weight percentage variation. The resultant curve closely resembles the Gaussian or 'normal' probability curve of statisticians.

**Table 3.4. Size scales of Udden & Wentworth**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Udden-Wentworth (1922)</th>
<th>Friedman &amp; Sanders (1978)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>phi</td>
<td>mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-11</td>
<td>2500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-10</td>
<td>1024</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-9</td>
<td>512</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-8</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-7</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-6</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-5</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-4</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-3</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-2</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.0625</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.03125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>0.015625</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>0.0078125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>0.00390625</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>0.001953125</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The weight percentage of sediment retained on the coarsest sieve is plotted at the appropriate grain diameter, the sum of weight percentages retained in the two coarsest sieves is plotted at the next finer mesh, the cumulative contents of the first three sieves at the next finer mesh and so on until the entire sediment has been accounted for at 100%. Although the ordinate scale of such curves may be arithmetic a second scaling is more commonly used which assumes the normal probability distribution. Plotting is therefore carried out on arithmetic probability graph paper. The ordinate scaling is derived by dividing the area beneath a normal distribution curve into column segments of equal area. Those near the centre of the distribution are long and relatively narrow whereas those towards the tails are low and proportionately broader (Fig. 3.7). Since the spacing patterns are the same for all normal distributions the divisions are carried forward to provide the probability ordinate scaling for the arithmetic probability graph which is used for plotting cumulative size distributions. Whereas plotting on the arithmetic ordinate scale generally yields 'S' shaped grain size distribution patterns, using the probability ordinate scale straightens the curve (Fig. 3.8). Perfect log-normal grain size distributions plot as straight lines on the probability paper. However, natural sediments rarely conform to this pattern and the deviations from log-normality have provided much scope for discussion, interpretation and speculation.

By convention the geologist plots coarse grains to the left of the abscissa and fine to the right. In computing values for cumulative distributions it is normal to consider values in terms of the percentage coarser than a given grain size. Thus the higher values on the cumulative percentage by weight plot occur in the range characterized by the finer particles. This is the exact opposite of and neither more nor less correct than the practise adopted in civil engineering analysis of soils and aggregates.
3.8.3 Curve characterization by statistical methods

Whilst data presented in graphical form have pictorial value, permitting crude general statements to be made about a sediment, they are of little value for detailed comparisons with other samples. In consequence, simple statistical techniques are used to characterize the grain size distribution data. An important difference between conventional statistics and statistics of grain size distributions is that in the former frequency is expressed as numbers whereas in the latter it is as weight percentage.

Two principal forms of analysis are normally used, graphical methods, in which values derived directly from plotted cumulative curves are entered into established formulae, and moment methods in which the characteristics of every grain in the sample are evaluated from the sedimentary deposit are used in the computation. In all cases the numbers obtained serve to define the position of the distribution plot, its slope, and the nature of any irregularities. The values of these parameters permit characterization of the curves, and enable numerical comparisons to be made between samples.

The parameters used fall into four principal groups: those measuring (a) average size, (b) spread of the sizes about the average, (c) symmetry or preferential spread to one size of the average, and (d) kurtosis or degree of concentration of the grains to the central size.

In discussion of particle sizes a standard form of notation is used. The size of particle for which 25 or 32% of the grains are coarser, $P_{25}$ or $P_{32}$ respectively in metric units, or $\phi_{25}$ and $\phi_{32}$ in the phi system may be read directly from the cumulative frequency curve. Grain sizes in $\phi$ corresponding to specified percentile values are entered into simple formulae to permit calculation of the various graphic parameters.

(a) MEASURES OF COMMON SIZE AND AVERAGE SIZE

Mode. On a size frequency histogram the size class in which the greatest percentage of grains is represented provides the modal class. On the size frequency distribution plot the highest point on the curve provides the modal value. The modal size is, therefore, the commonest grain size in a distribution.

The frequency curves of many sediments exhibit several peaks, the polymodal distributions indicating the presence of more than one population of grains. Some workers use modal values abstracted directly from the size frequency distribution by weight (Friedman & Johnson, 1982) but others advocate its derivation by recalculation from the gradient of the cumulative curve (Griffiths, 1967). Folk, (1974b).

Median (Md). Half of the grains are coarser and half finer than the median diameter, whose size is most readily determined from the 50% line of the cumulative distribution curve. Although useful for many unimodal sediments, in polymodal distributions the median may fall in the tails of two subpopulations of grains, in a size fraction which is scarce.

Mean ($M$). The best measure of average grain size, the mean is computed from sizes of particles spread through a range of percentile values. In its simplest form the Graphic Mean, $M_G$, is calculated from $\frac{1}{2} (\phi_{25} + \phi_{75})$ which assumes that three values alone are sufficient to give a useful mean. Where more confidence in the average value is required more percentile values may be used, e.g. $M_9$ is computed by $\frac{1}{5} (\phi_{10} + \phi_{20} + \phi_{50} + \phi_{80} + \phi_{90})$ provided the percentile values used are evenly spread through the distribution. In practise this approximates to the mean of moment statistics.

(b) SPREAD ABOUT THE AVERAGE — SORTING (a)

In many forms of analysis the full range of sizes present is of relevance. However, it is rarely possible to define the sizes of the largest or smallest particles precisely in a size distribution. Of more importance is an assessment of the spread of particles about the average, to define the dispersion or sorting of the sediment, as represented by the breadth of the frequency curve or the shape of the cumulative frequency distribution.

In all metric measures and their direct phi-based equivalents only the 25th, 50th and 75th percentiles are used, so that attention is only given to the central half of the grain population present. As a measure of the characteristics of the sediment they are of limited value, but as a method of characterizing the central segment of a curve the Trask Sorting coefficient ($P_{75}/P_{25}$) or its equivalent, the phi Quartile Deviation $\frac{1}{2} (\phi_{75} - \phi_{25})$ may have some value.

3.8.4 SKewness of the Curve

Ideally a measure of sorting should embrace a broader spectrum of the grains present, and the graphic standard deviation $s$, of Inman (1952), computed from $\frac{1}{4} (\phi_{90} - \phi_{10})$, provides a measure of the spread of size of 68% of the population (one standard deviation on either side of the mean). Further extension to include 90% of the curve yields the inclusive graphic standard deviation $\sigma_1$ (Folk & Ward, 1957), which uses the 5th and 95th percentiles to define a spread corresponding to 1.65 standard deviations on either side of the mean. Taking the mean of the contributions from the 65 and 90% population fractions produced the expression:

$$\sigma_1 = \frac{1}{2} \left( \phi_{95} - \phi_{5} + \phi_{90} - \phi_{10} \right)$$

The best sorted sediments approximate to a single size and have low $\sigma_1$ values (Table 3.5).

(c) PREFERENTIAL SPREAD — SKEWNESS (a)

In a normal distribution with a bell-shaped frequency curve the median and mean values coincide. Any tendency for a distribution to lean to one side, i.e. to deviate from normality, leads to differences between the median and mean values. These differences are used to characterize the asymmetry or skewness of the curve. The skewness has a positive or negative value when more fine or more coarse materials are present than in a normal distribution, seen as tails to the right or left respectively on frequency distribution plots. Again, although skewness may be computed for the central segment of the distribution, for most purposes broader spreads are used. Effectively skewness is determined from the value of the mean less the median, all divided by the range used in defining the mean. Many possible combinations of computation are available. Expressed simply:

$$\alpha = \frac{1}{a} (M - M_d)$$

Where laid out fully the inclusive graphic skewness is obtained from:

$$SK = \frac{\phi_{10} + \phi_{20} - 2\phi_{50} + \phi_{90} + \phi_{95} - 2\phi_{90}}{2(\phi_{95} - \phi_{10})}$$
Table 3.5. Statistical formulae used in calculating grain size parameters

(a) Statistical measures in the metric and phi systems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metric</th>
<th>Dispersion</th>
<th>Skewness</th>
<th>Kurtosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$Md = P_{50}$</td>
<td>$M = \frac{P_{25} + P_{75}}{2}$</td>
<td>$QD = \frac{P_{75} - P_{25}}{2}$</td>
<td>$Sk = \frac{P_9 - P_1}{Md}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$S_n = \frac{(P_{95}/P_{10})}{2}$</td>
<td>$Sk = \frac{P_{95} - P_{10}}{Md^2}$</td>
<td>$Sk = \frac{\phi_4 - 3\phi_2 + 2\phi_0}{\phi_0}$</td>
<td>$Kp = \frac{\phi_4 - 3\phi_2 + 2\phi_0}{\phi_0}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\phi_{Md} = \frac{\phi_4 + \phi_2}{2}$</td>
<td>$Sk = \frac{\phi_4 + \phi_2}{2\phi_0}$</td>
<td>$Sk = \frac{\phi_4 + \phi_2}{2\phi_0}$</td>
<td>$Sk = \frac{\phi_4 + \phi_2}{2\phi_0}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\phi_{Md} = \frac{\phi_4 + \phi_2}{2}$</td>
<td>$Sk = \frac{\phi_4 + \phi_2}{2\phi_0}$</td>
<td>$Sk = \frac{\phi_4 + \phi_2}{2\phi_0}$</td>
<td>$Sk = \frac{\phi_4 + \phi_2}{2\phi_0}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\phi_{Md} = \frac{\phi_4 + \phi_2}{2}$</td>
<td>$Sk = \frac{\phi_4 + \phi_2}{2\phi_0}$</td>
<td>$Sk = \frac{\phi_4 + \phi_2}{2\phi_0}$</td>
<td>$Sk = \frac{\phi_4 + \phi_2}{2\phi_0}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) Descriptive terms applied to parameter values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sorting ($\alpha$)</th>
<th>Skewness ($Sk$)</th>
<th>Kurtosis ($K_0$)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Very well sorted</td>
<td>$&lt;0.35$</td>
<td>$&lt;0.67$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Well sorted</td>
<td>$0.35-0.50$</td>
<td>$0.67-0.90$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderately well sorted</td>
<td>$0.50-0.70$</td>
<td>$0.90-1.11$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderately sorted</td>
<td>$0.70-1.00$</td>
<td>$1.11-1.50$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poorly sorted</td>
<td>$1.00-2.00$</td>
<td>$1.50-3.00$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very poorly sorted</td>
<td>$2.00-4.00$</td>
<td>$&gt;3.00$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extremely poorly sorted</td>
<td>$&gt;4.00$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Kurtosis is a positively or negatively signed dimensionless number; it has neither metric nor phi value and lies within the range –1 to +1 (Table 3.5).

(d) CONCENTRATION OR PEAKEDNESS OF THE DISTRIBUTION — KURTOSIS

Not widely used, although frequently calculated, the kurtosis is related both to the dispersion and the normality of the distribution. Very flat curves of poorly sorted sediments or those with bi-modal frequency curves are platykurtic, whereas strongly peaked curves, in which there is exceptionally good sorting of the main part of the distribution, are leptokurtic. The measure of kurtosis, which is a ratio of the spreads of the tails and centre of the distribution (and is therefore also dimensionless) is given by the expression:

$$K_0 = \frac{\phi_4 - 3\phi_2 + 2\phi_0}{2.44(\phi_4 - \phi_2)}.$$

A listing of commonly used formulae and verbal descriptions of the values obtained is presented in Table 3.5.

3.8.4 Moment methods

The second major approach to analysing grain size distributions, moment statistics, differs in concept but yields measures analogous to those of graphical methods. Neither technique is 'better' than the other. Graphic techniques are especially appropriate for analysis of open ended distributions whereas the moment methods should not be applied unless all grain sizes present lie within the defined grain size limits.

The principles of moment statistics are lucidly reviewed in Friedman & Johnson (1982). Effectively each grain in the population is taken into account in computing the characteristic parameters of the sediment. Whereas in mechanics the moment is calculated as the product of a force and the distance of its application from a fulcrum, in statistics the moment is computed from the product of the weight percentage in a given size class and the number of class grades from the origin of the curve. The first moment, the mean per unit frequency, is the mean, $\bar{x}$, of the distribution:

$$\bar{x} = \frac{\Sigma f}{M},$$

where $\bar{x}$ is the mean, $f$ the frequency in weight per cent and $m$ is the mid-point of each class interval. Once the position of the mean is defined the spread of the distribution about it is calculated by summing the moments of each class interval about the mean. In each of the subsequent moment calculations the difference $(m - \bar{x})$ is raised to higher powers.

The second moment has a value which is the square of the standard deviation of the distribution:

$$\sigma^2 = \frac{\Sigma (m - \bar{x})^2}{100}.$$

The third moment measures the symmetry of the distribution about the mean and yields a value which is the cube of the skewness:

$$\alpha^3 = \frac{\Sigma (m - \bar{x})^3}{100}.$$

The fourth moment yields a value for kurtosis raised to the fourth power:

$$\chi^4 = \frac{\Sigma (m - \bar{x})^4}{100}.$$

Although the parameters obtained are analogous to those of graphical statistics their derivation employs the entire grain population and so they are more representative than the graphically derived values. Once again it should be stressed that, because all grains are used, this form of analysis should not be used unless the size distribution is fully known. Distribution of the 'pan residue' fraction from sieving among a specified number of phi classes to permit application of moment methods is not good practice and may lead to misleading, if not meaningless, results being obtained. If a total of less than 1% of the population is undefined then the errors are unlikely to be great, but the reliability of the moments decreases sharply as the proportions of undefined materials increases, and the technique should not be used with a higher proportion of unknowns notwithstanding the convenience and availability of pocket calculators suitable to perform the arithmetic.

3.8.5 Alternative grain size distributions

The grain size distributions of some sediments yield linear log-normal cumulative plots, but others deviate from the linear patterns to a greater or lesser degree, especially in the tails of the distributions. In consequence some authors suggest that the conventionally applied log-normal probability law is not suitable for universal applications in grain size analysis.

Early work by Rosin & Rammel (1934) revealed that crushed coal exhibited regular grain size characteristic controlled by natural fracture patterns of the material. They established expressions from which Rosin paper was introduced for plotting grain sizes of crushed particulate matter (Kittleman, 1964). Some natural sediments such as pyroclastic debris, glacial tills and weathered crystalline rock products exhibit linear plots on Rosin paper, suggesting that they behave very much as crushed products, but the similarity vanishes swiftly with transport after which they rapidly come to resemble more commonly encountered materials transported and deposited from natural fluids.

Although Bagnold (1941) suggested that wind blown sands, which deviated from log-normality, might have some other probability function, it was not until recently that his suggested log-hyperbolic distribution has been closely examined as an alternative (Barnorff-Nielsen, 1977; Bagnold & Barnorff-Nielsen, 1980; Wyrwoll & Smyth, 1985).

The log-hyperbolic distribution offers the possibility of a range of curve fittings, one limiting case of which is the log-normal distribution. In practice the natural log of the frequency curve is plotted against grain size (Bagnold, 1968), and the four parameters of the best fitting log-hyperbolic curve are computed. Two of these relate to the curve position (grain size and peakedness) and the other two to inclination of the limbs of the curve. The distribution has been examined principally within the context of wind blown dune sands (Bagnold & Barnorff-Nielsen, 1980; Christiansen, 1984) for...
which it was claimed the hyperbolic function encompassed the extreme values of the size distribution tails better than the log-normal plot. However, comparative studies of Wyrwoll & Smyth (1985), who suggested that the 'improved' performance may be partly a function of shape-influenced deficiencies in the sieving technique, led to the conclusion that only a marginal improvement in fitting over the log-normal curve was achieved. They also pointed out that substantial computational skills were required to obtain the best-fit log-hyperbolic curves from which the parameters could be derived.

### 3.9 ENVIRONMENTAL INTERPRETATION FROM GRAIN SIZE DATA

The methods of analysis and presenting data are standard descriptive techniques, but it is always the aim of scientists to derive more than simple descriptions of their materials. The sedimentologist is no exception. The prospect of a universally applicable technique of abstracting, from sediment grain size distribution measures diagnostic of depositional environment has encouraged generations of sedimentologists. The uncomfortable fact remains, however, that many have tried only modest success has been achieved and no overall method has yet been discovered. Indeed, some consider the quest, through the medium of graphical techniques, Schlee, Uchupi & Trumbull (1965) were unable to distinguish beach and dune sands from grain size data alone.

Following early studies by Friedman (1961, 1967), the use of scattergrams of sorting and skewness to provide discrimination between river, beach and dune sands has been repeatedly explored (Moiola & Weiser, 1968). The relatively fine grained unimodal sand deposits from many of the world's larger rivers, which have yielded similar characteristics: beach sands were well sorted and negatively skewed, whereas river sands were less well sorted and usually positively skewed. Dune sands also had positive skewness but were finer than beach sands. However, the best separations reported were achieved using a combination of moment standard deviation and an unusual graphic skewness (Friedman & Sanders, 1978). Although general separation of points by environment was achieved there was always some overlap between adjacent fields. No clear cut distinction has been found in most forms of bivariate plot. Leaving the beach, dune and river sediments, which were mainly medium or fine sands, the greater spread of grain size enabled Landim & Frakes (1968) successfully to distinguish till from alluvial fan and outwash deposits using moment methods.

In few studies have the higher moments been used to advantage, the principal exception being that of Syl (1977, 1978) who used the skewness – kurtosis interrelationships to recognize differing environmental energy levels in deposits of the Great Lakes (Fig. 3.10). Deposits without pebbles, essentially of muddy materials from low energy environments, fall in fields A, B, C and D whereas those with pebbles, either lag deposits or high energy beaches, lie in fields E, F, G and H.

In some of the simplest forms of analysis ratios of the sand, silt and clay contents may have value. The proportion of particles finer than 31 μm. With deposits of limited size variations the technique has some success but better discrimination is achieved where there are large size differences.

---

**Fig. 3.9.** Bivariate plots which Stewart (1958) believed were of environmental significance.

**Fig. 3.10.** Skewness – kurtosis plots of sediments from the Lake Ontario low energy ABCD and active environments EFGH.

**Fig. 3.11.** The C–M plot of Passega (1964) with envelopes which he believed sediments should plot according to dynamics and the transport experienced.
Many sediments are composed not of one single grain size population, but rather of a combination of sub-populations. Each sub-population may be defined by dynamic considerations or by supply characteristics. In the natural environment individual sub-populations may be present in varying proportions from site to site. Thus in allied localities it may be possible to trace material from one specific source using its modal size and spread, noting the increases and decreases in its contribution to local materials (Curay, 1960; McManus, Buller & Green, 1980). Elsewhere the effect of wave activity may be particularly intensely experienced by one size fraction which is either totally removed or greatly increased in proportion. The combination of the sub-populations in different proportions determines the grain size characteristics of the overall sediment.

Following the work of Moss (1962, 1963) who demonstrated three sub-populations of pebbles form most gravel deposits, Visher (1969) suggested that cumulative frequency curves could often be subdivided into two, three or four linear segments (Fig. 3.12). Because log-normal distributions follow linear trends on the cumulative probability plot he considered each segment to represent a separate sub-population whose character was determined by the dynamics of transport: traction, saltation and suspension. Many plots required a two-fold saltation load to be considered. This apparently simplistic and attractive technique which has been readily espoused by many workers merits further attention. Replotting data from the cumulative curve to the frequency curve shows that linear segments do sometimes coincide with recognizable sub-populations but in other cases inflexions where linear segments join also coincide with population peaks. Experimentally combining two unimodal sediments produces not a two-fold linear pattern, but a three-fold one, the central segment forming in the size overlap zone. Nevertheless, this form of analysis may still merit further exploration.

In a further non-standard bivariate plot, Buller & McManus (1972) suggested using the central sub-population, which frequently spans over half of the distribution, to provide a metric quartile deviation measure \( \frac{1}{2} (P_{75} - P_{25}) \) to plot against the median diameter. Using many hundreds of analyses they defined field envelopes each embracing 68% of all relevant data points from the river, beach, a eolian and quiet water deposits. Many of the envelopes partly overlapped, particularly in the medium to fine sand range, but good separations were achieved outside those sizes. Later envelopes for turbidites (Buller & McManus, 1973a), tills (Buller & McManus, 1973b), scree and pyroclastic (Buller & McManus, 1973c) deposits were added. Plotting the graphic sorting characteristics of the same sediment gradients enables recognition of the sorting characteristics which may be expected to occur with sediments from each depositional environment (Fig. 3.13). This method of analysis met with some success (Sedimentation Seminar, 1981) but has not been widely applied.

While the geological sedimentologist has developed one set of criteria by which sedimentary deposits are assessed, an entirely different approach to sands and gravels is taken by the construction industry which uses such materials for concrete, road metal aggregates, mortars and plasters.

The sedimentologist assesses materials with respect to their conformity to an ideal of sorting in which perfection is realized in a deposit in which all particles are identical. In an extremely well sorted sediment all particles approximate to the same size. For the civil engineer dealing with concrete design, sorting in the geological sense is undesirable. The graded aggregate, in which a defined spread of particle sizes is represented, is considered ideal. In a graded aggregate small particles occupy intergranular spaces, partly filling voids between larger particles. This permits reduction in quantities of cement and water required to give desirable properties such as workability, strength and durability potential.

The poorly sorted sample of the sedimentologist may be the well graded material of the engineer. In practice the engineer achieves design optimization by blending together 'coarse' and 'fine' aggregates of suitable strictly defined grading characteristics. As many of these are readily obtained by simple screening techniques applied to natural sedimentary deposits it is of interest to record the prescribed
Fig. 3.16. Ternary diagrams interrelating sand, silt and clay components and their controls over porosity and permeability. WS, well sorted; P, S, poorly sorted; MSW, moderately well sorted.

Fig. 3.17. Relationship between grain size, sorting, porosity and permeability in unsorted sands (after Selley, 1985).

limitations of the aggregate gradings. The gradings recommended for coarse aggregates arranged according to specified nominal diameters in BS 882: 1973 are indicated in Fig. 3.14 and those for the four zones of fine aggregates of BS 812: 1975 in Fig. 3.15. Materials whose grain size distributions fall within the limits specified for zone 3 fine aggregates are well suited for certain tasks.

According to Connor (1953), only restricted gradings of sand produce good mortars. Later, Swallow (1964) demonstrated that the best mortar sands had median diameters in the range 440—570 μm and graphic standard deviations of 200—275 μm. Nevertheless, a broader range of potentially useful mortar sands is indicated in BS 1199:1976.

A second property of sediments which is of economic importance is the porosity, the spaces between the solids, which may become filled with water or other fluids such as oil and gas. The porosity of a deposit is expressed as the percentage of voids in a given volume of rock. Two forms of pores are recognized, the primary pores, which develop during deposition of the sediment, and secondary pores, which develop after deposition, principally through solution of the rock particles themselves. The former are important in unconsolidated or cemented siliciclastic rocks whereas the latter is more commonly considered in the context of carbonate sands and limestones.

The intercrystalline or interparticle voids are present in all rocks. They are more open and better interconnected in most coarse clastic deposits than in fine sediments. The efficiency with which fluids pass through the rocks depends heavily on the interconnections, the spaces available in the pore throats and the sorting of the sediment. In very well sorted coarse uncemented sediments pore spaces are large and may have free interconnections whereas in poorly sorted sediments fine particles occupy void spaces, reducing the porosity and blocking many interconnections. Early cementation serves a similar purpose and may lead to closure of the throat passages. Compaction may cause fine particles to move into direct contact with their neighbours so a high initial porosity may become drastically reduced with burial.

Measurement of porosity is achieved by determining the volume of gas displaced from the pore spaces of a known bulk volume of rock. The latter is determined by displacement using total immersion in mercury, the former using a sealed pressure vessel and measuring the increased volume of gas present when pressure is decreased by a known amount.

The associated property of permeability is important for this is the factor which determines the ability of a fluid to pass through a porous medium. Measured as the rate at which fluids pass through cores of the rock or a bed of sand, the permeability is calculated according to Darcy’s Law and the unit relevant in most natural sediments in the millidarcy.

Again the permeability is largely dependent upon sediment sorting and the presence of cements or authigenic growths in the pore throats. Particle shape may also be important. As grain size decreases so does the permeability in most cases, due to an increase in the associated capillary pressure resisting passage of the fluids.

The general interrelationships between grain size, permeability and porosity are summarized in a ternary diagram of sand, silt and clay contents in Fig. 3.16. The detailed impacts of sorting and grain size on porosity and permeability of unsorted sands is given in Fig. 3.17 (after Selley, 1985).

The analysis of sediment size distributions is thus not only of considerable academic interest but has highly practical significance to the construction industry, for extraction of water supplies and the production of hydrocarbons.
Microscopical techniques: I. Slices, slides, stains and peels

JOHN MILLER

4.1 INTRODUCTION

Since the pioneering work of Henry Clifton Sorby (1851), slices of rock ground thin enough to transmit light have been the staple material of sedimentary petrography. Sorby's work simply involved examination of thin sections in polarized light on a petrographic microscope. Today's sedimentologists are able to extract a great deal more information from thin sections by using special techniques to study fabrics, textures, mineralogy and geochemistry. In order to recover so much extra information, thin section preparations must be of consistent high quality.

To achieve the required precision in thin section making, a considerable degree of mechanization is required, and this is expensive. However, most laboratories which produce more than a modest number of thin sections are now equipped with appropriate automatic and semi-automatic systems. This does not, however, mean that high quality results can be achieved only by such methods: where a small volume of sections is involved, many of the techniques described in this chapter can easily be adapted for manual preparation of thin sections. A simple, manual slide-making process is outlined by Adams, MacKenzie & Guildford (1984, p. 97). Sections required for teaching purposes do not need to meet the stringent requirements of those used for research, but they should be of good standard; they are, after all, the primary material on which all geologists are trained.

Many workers proceed directly to examination of thin sections, but there is a great deal of information to be obtained by examining rock slices and cut faces, particularly in the case of limestones and sandstones. First, the three-dimensional arrangement of grains can be better studied in slices, whereas thin sections are essentially two-dimensional. Second, fabrics are studied more effectively at low magnification and on faces larger than those possible on thin sections, where the microscope concentrates on detail by restricting the field of view. Perhaps more importantly, examination of cut faces enables appraisal of which areas should be made into thin sections. Careful selection of critical areas for sectioning saves time and expense, and allows subsequent petrographic study to be based on knowledge of the section's context. Suggestions are given below for preparation and study of rock faces, slices and slabs, and the way in which these preparations support examination of thin sections in a broad-based approach to sedimentary petrography.

4.2 PROCESSING SAMPLES

At the outset of any petrographic analysis, it is wise to begin by planning the kinds of sample preparation which will be required, and what information is to be sought from them. Samples can be collected which not only adequately represent the facies or lithosomes under study, but are appropriate in orientation, size, shape and freshness to the selected preparation techniques. Processing is then designed to minimize wastage and maximize data collection. A general scheme for processing samples for microscopic study is shown in Fig. 4.1. This flow chart is fairly complete; not every petrographic study will need to be so thorough, but particular paths are easily selected.

4.3 SLICES

In this section, I use the following terms: faced sample — a smooth cut across a rock sample, with the rest of the specimen left rough. Slice — a section through the sample with two parallel cut faces. Slices may be up to several centimetres thick. Those less than about 6 mm thick are sometimes called plaquettes. Usually, plaquettes are approximately the same area as thin sections: they may often be prepared as a first step in section-making.
cated saw. With evaporites and coals, cutting usually produces bad fracturing, and for all three rock-types the effect of aqueous lubricants may be disastrous. Slices are produced dry as in the early stages of thin section making (Section 4.4.2), with a glass backing. They are left a few millimetres thick and lapped flat or polished, using a lapping compound with paraffin oil lubricant.

Poorly consolidated sediments, or those for which porosity information is required, must first be vacuum-imbedded in resin (see Section 4.5). The resin may be stained to show the void space.

4.3.2 Examination of cut faces

Most of the techniques used to develop detail on cut faces of slices or plaquettes are non-destructive, so that a different technique can be used on the same face after washing or re-polishing.

SANDSTONES AND SILTSTONES

A light coating of clear mineral oil, even on polished surfaces, enhances contrast and increases resolution by filling surface irregularities. If the surface is to be stained or etched (see Section 4.5), glycerol may be used, as even traces of oil will inhibit both these processes, but glycerol can be washed away with water. With the aid of a zoom binocular microscope, small-scale sedimentary structures, such as graded bedding, can be viewed. The depth of field at low power (x1.5 to x20 magnification) allows study of three-dimensional grain relationships so that packing and pore networks can be visualized, although fracture surfaces need to be examined for comparison.

Slices are also suitable for X-radiography. Slices from 3 to 10 mm thick give good results because of their small-scale nature, and even a small amount of oil can enhance detail and contrast (Fig. 4.2a). However, highly polished surfaces are easier to photograph than oiled ones, as reflections are more easily controlled. Slices with two prepared faces give a three-dimensional context which aids identification of bioclasts and study of depositional and diagenetic fabrics. The partial transparency of the rock allows focusing up and down to assess grain packing. The determination of whether a fabric is grain- or mud-supported otherwise involves experience to determine from thin sections, which are essentially two-dimensional.

Chalk fabrics are usually cryptic or apparently homogeneous when sliced normal to bedding. Bromley (1981) has shown how abundant biogenic and inorganic sedimentary textures can be revealed by lightly brushing thin mineral oil on a dry chalk surface and allowing it to ‘develop’ over about 30 minutes. Further enhancement of detail is obtained from these surfaces by photographing them with Kodak® or equivalent high-contrast orthochromatic film.

Argillaceous, dark, fine-grained carbonates may also have cryptic fabrics. A technique used for revealing flaws in metal casings is often helpful in such cases. It relies on the preferential absorption on to clay minerals of an ultra-violet sensitive dye. There are three reagents, conveniently supplied in aerosol cans. A pre-smoothed face is gently etched with 5% hydrochloric acid. Zygo® (or equivalent) penetrant is sprayed on the surface until completely wet, and allowed to soak in for at least 10 minutes. The surface is then flashed with Solvent spray, allowed to dry and then sprayed with Developer. All these operations should be carried out in a fume cupboard as the vapours are harmful, and surgical gloves should be used to protect the hands from the dye. Viewed under a low energy ultra-violet lamp, structures such as cross-lamination and bioturbation fluoresce bright blue and yellow.

Rockelle (1973), also working with cryptic argillaceous limestones, demonstrated how effectively a simpler technique combining light acid etching with photography using orthochromatic film could enhance fabric contrast and reveal burrow patterns. Micritic carbonates such as those from mud build-ups and some calcretes may also have cryptic textures which can be revealed by gentle etching with a dilute acid (e.g. 5% hydrochloric acid). Geopetal sediments in stromatoloid cavities, for example, may be difficult or impossible to see on unetched, polished surfaces (Fig. 4.2a), but are clearly seen after etching (Fig. 4.2b), although other features are better revealed on the polished surface. The techniques of polishing and etching are thus complimentary.

Smoothed or polished slices can also be observed directly under cathodoluminescence (see Chapter 6); they may be etched or stained for this purpose.

OTHER ROCKS

With translucent or transparent rocks, the depth of field of low power zoom binocular microscopes can be used advantageously for three-dimensional study of included bioclasts and replacement fabrics in cherts, and orientation of fluid and crystal inclusions in evaporites. Various combinations of diffused transmitted light and bright incident light (delivered via fibre-optic tubes) can be tried. Contrast can be optimized and specific features emphasized by experimenting with coloured filters on the light sources.

4.4 THIN SECTION PREPARATION

4.4.1 Requirements for thin sections

An acceptable rock thin section is of 30 μm nominal thickness, bonded to a glass slide. Such standard thin sections (STs) can be produced by hand or with machine aid: they will usually be used for rapid bulk sample examination or in teaching collections where robustness outweighs their limited resolution. However, much more information can be obtained from...
cated saw. With evaporites and coals, cutting usually produces bad fracturing, and for all three rock-types the effect of aqueous lubricants may be disastrous. Slices are produced dry as in the early stages of thin section making (Section 4.4.2), with a glass backing. They are left a few millimetres thick and lapped flat or polished, using a lapping compound with paraffin oil lubricant.

Poorly consolidated sediments, or those for which porosity information is required, must first be vacuum-imbedded in resin (see Section 4.5). The resin may be stained to show the void space.

4.3.2 Examination of cut faces
Most of the techniques used to develop detail on cut faces of slices or plaquettes are non-destructive, so that a different technique can be used on the same face after washing or re-polishing.

SANDSTONES AND SILTSTONES
A light coating of clear mineral oil, even on polished surfaces, enhances contrast and increases resolution by filling surface irregularities. If the surface is to be stained or etched (see Section 4.5), glycerol may be used, as even traces of oil will inhibit both these processes, but glycerol can be washed away with water. With the aid of a zoom binocular microscope, small-scale sedimentary structures, such as graded bedding, can be viewed. The depth of field at low power (×1.5 to ×20 magnification) allows study of three-dimensional grain relationships so that packing and pore networks can be visualized, although fracture surfaces need to be examined for comparison. Slices are also suitable for X-radiography. Slices from 3 to 10 mm thick give good results because of 'soft' (5–50 kV) X-rays can be used for high contrast. This technique is particularly valuable for fine-grained clastic rocks such as silts and clays, revealing otherwise unseen small-scale sedimentary structures. Very thin slices can be used to make radiographs for examination on a grain-to-grain basis. A discussion of these X-radiographic techniques is given by Hamblin (1971).

CARBONATE ROCKS
Because of the inherent translucency of their cementing mineral crystals, many carbonates display their features well with low power binocular microscopy. Light coating of mineral oil (or glycerol if the faces are to be etched or stained later) can be used to enhance detail and contrast (Fig. 4.2a). However, highly polished surfaces are easier to photograph than oilied ones, as reflections are more easily controlled. Slices with two prepared faces give a three-dimensional effect which aids identification of bioclasts and study of depositional and diagenetic fabrics. The partial transparency of the rock allows focusing up and down to assess grain packing. The determination of whether a fabric is grain- or mud-supported otherwise takes considerable experience to determine from thin sections, which are essentially two-dimensional.

Chalk fabrics are usually cryptic or apparently homogeneous when sliced normal to bedding. Bromley (1981) has shown how abundant biogenic and inorganic sedimentary textures can be revealed by lightly brushing thin mineral oil on a dry chalk surface and allowing it to 'develop' over about 30 minutes. Further enhancement of detail can be obtained from these surfaces by photographing them with Kodak® or equivalent high-contrast orthochromatic film. Argillaceous, dark, fine-grained carbonates may also have cryptic fabrics. A technique used for revealing flaws in metal casings is often helpful in such cases. It relies on the preferential absorption on to clay minerals of an ultra-violet sensitive dye. There are three reagents, conveniently supplied in aerosol cans. A pre-smoothed face is gently etched with 5% hydrochloric acid. Zyglo® Penetrant is sprayed on the surface until completely wet, and allowed to soak in for at least 10 minutes. The surface is then flushed with Solvent spray, allowed to dry and then sprayed with Developer. All these operations should be carried out in a fume cupboard as the vapours are harmful, and surgical gloves should be used to protect the hands from the dye. Viewed under a low energy ultra-violet lamp, structures such as cross-lamination and bioturbation fluoresce bright blue and yellow.

Bockelie (1973), also working with cryptic argillaceous limestones, demonstrated how effectively a simpler technique combining light acid etching with photography using orthochromatic film could enhance fabric contrast and reveal burrow patterns. Micritic carbonates such as those from mud build-ups and some calcereites may also have cryptic textures which can be revealed by gentle etching with a dilute acid (e.g. 5% hydrochloric acid). Geochemical sediments in stromatoloid cavities, for example, may be difficult or impossible to see on unetched, polished surfaces (Fig. 4.2a), but are clearly seen after etching (Fig. 4.2b), although other features are better revealed on the polished surface. The techniques of polishing and etching are thus complimentary.

Smoothed or polished slices can also be observed directly under cathodoluminescence (see Chapter 6); they may be etched or stained for this purpose.

4.4 THIN SECTION PREPARATION
4.4.1 Requirements for thin sections
An acceptable rock thin section is of 30 μm nominal thickness, bonded to a glass slide. Such standard thin sections (STSs) can be produced by hand or with machine aid: they will usually be used for rapid bulk sample examination or in teaching collections where robustness outweighs their limited resolution. However, much more information can be obtained from
sections made to a higher specification, with (1) both rock surfaces ground optically flat and polished, and (2) special care taken to produce an extremely thin and uniform bonding film between glass and slice. These double-polished thin sections (DPTs) can only be satisfactorily produced by machine; they are the best sections for research work and critical petrographic studies.

Recent advances in the technology of section-making show clearly that the common practice of using coarse abrasives results in unacceptable damage to samples. Diamond-impregnated buffing wheels, commonly used for rapid preparation of surfaces after cutting, cause just as much damage, shattering minerals and distorting grain/cement relationships. This stricture about severe abrasion applies both to ST and DPT preparation.

In the following account, details are given for preparation of high quality thin sections by automatic and semi-automatic means. The extra expense of making these sections is offset by their versatility: an uncovered DPT can be used for several different analytical purposes, and offers much more petrographic information. Machine-based systems give a considerable increase in throughput compared with hand preparation. A flow-chart for the process (Fig. 4.4) shows stages at which section-making can be simplified for less exacting requirements, or where special techniques can be followed for difficult rock types.

### 4.4.2 High quality section-making process

#### PREPARATION

Unconsolidated sediments, highly porous and friable rocks, as well as chips and cuttings, must be at least partially embedded in resin before slicing (also see Section 8.5.5). If the sediments are wet, a water-miscible acrylic or polyester resin can be used. Otherwise, the specimen can be dehydrated by passage through successively more concentrated ethanol/water mixtures, through absolute alcohol into acetone, before placing in resin. If oil is present, remove as described in Section 8.5.1. Organic matter can be removed with chloroform or hydrogen peroxide. Poorly consolidated sediments and porous sandstones may require impregnation with resin under vacuum. Impregnation under pressure has been advocated, but comparative tests have shown that it may damage pores in sandstones, particularly those lined with delicate clay minerals. Vacuum (strictly, low pressure: 10—15 mm Hg) impregnation has been found consistent and satisfactory for most sediment types. Cold setting resins such as 'Epo-tek' are convenient for impregnation as they have a low initial viscosity and thus penetrate very well. It is also possible to dilute some Araldite resins with toluene for pre-casting soak. Depending on the nature of the sample, a degree of experimentation with resins of different types may be necessary before satisfactory results are achieved. A simple method is described in Section 8.5.5, using a desiccator and mains water vacuum pump. The more elaborate chamber illustrated in Fig. 4.4, which can be constructed quite cheaply, is designed to overcome some problems in simpler chambers, where either the resin is drawn into the chamber after the sample is outgassed, or the sample is placed in the resin and both are evacuated together (as in Section 8.5.5). In the first case, the resin itself does not outgas thoroughly before coming into contact with the specimen, so gas and resin are both drawn into the pores; resin also solidifies in the inlet line. In the second case, frothing may be produced as both the sample and the resin outgas together. The apparatus shown in Fig. 4.4 is loaded with PTFE plastic pots, previously sprayed with a silicone release agent (e.g. silicone household polish) and containing the resin mixture. Samples, trimmed to suitable size, are suspended above the pots on the blades of the cross-rails. Evacuation is continued until the resin ceases to froth, when the samples will also have been outgassed. The cross-rails are then rotated so as to tip the samples into the resin pots. Samples can be left in the impregnation chamber overnight before curing under gentle heat. At the end of the impregnation period, care should be taken to release the vacuum slowly so as not to cause boiling.

Following impregnation, small samples may have to be cast into blocks which are more convenient for the sawing or for hand-holding while grinding a face on abrasive paper. Small moulds for casting blocks can be made from aluminium foil.

Estimation of porosity in rocks is aided by impregnation with stained resin. Special resin-miscible dyes are required, such as Epo-tek Blue, Araldite 2010 Blue or Waxoline Blue, mixed in a 10% dye:epoxy ratio. Blue resin areas in the final thin section depict the porosity clearly.

Generally speaking, the machine system of section-making is so gentle that only very difficult lithologies and loose sediments will need impregnation. The following account details the section-making process for standard rocks, with special procedures for friable or soluble lithologies described in Section 4.4.3.

#### CUTTING AND TRIMMING

Several sizes of thin sections can be made, depending on equipment available and the area required for...
Cutting should be done gently (slowly) to minimize shattering, especially with crystalline or well-jointed rocks. Several slices or plaquettes may be cut, which can be examined separately (see Section 4.2) or used as a back-up, should there be a failure at some subsequent stage in the section-making process. These relatively thick slices give good mechanical rigidity and wide zones of waste for first face lapping and final finishing, so that the completed section is made from that part of the slice unaffected by saw damage. The slices are trimmed to avoid rock overhanging the slide. This discourages mounting adhesive from oozing onto the lower surface of the preparation, where it would affectattachment on the lapping machine’s vacuum chucks.

Each slice is marked in waterproof felt-tip pen with the corresponding sample number and any ‘way up’ information.

**FIRST FACE LAP**

The key to success of the whole process lies in the production of a first face which is as smooth and flat as possible. This is accomplished on a precision free abrasive flat lapping machine (Fig. 4.5b). The slices are mounted on chunks with a sponge backing to accommodate different thicknesses and irregular specimens (Fig. 4.6). Completely omitting coarse abrasives, a face of the slice is ground with 600F Carborundum powder with water as a lubricant, for a minimum of 30 minutes (regardless of rock type), until the face approaches optical flatness.

At this stage, slices destined to become Standard Thin sections (STs) can be removed here for resin bonding to glass. Otherwise, they are lapped for a further period using 8 µm diamond paste if required for Double Polished Thin sections (DPTs) (Fig. 4.3). This extra lapping stage produces a polished lower surface, giving increased resolution in microscopy by reducing dispersion at the first face/resin junction. The face has enough ‘key’ to ensure bonding with resin. Higher degrees of polish produced by lapping with finer diamond pastes give no noticeable improvement in optical properties and can lead to adhesion problems, notably to lifting of the thin slice at later preparation stages. With a properly maintained precision lapping machine, it should easily be possible to maintain a flatness of at least 2 µm over the preparation, where it would affectattachment on the lapping machine’s vacuum chucks.

**GLASS SLIDE PREPARATION**

For the precision machine finishing process, the glass slides must be of a precise and standard thickness. Commercial microscope slides rarely meet this requirement and so are first ground on the flat lapping machine as described above for rock slices. For STs, polishing with 1 µm diamond paste is usual. With DPT preparations, the 600F ground glass surface is used without final polish, as a slightly rough zone is required as a ‘key’ to ensure adhesion at the glass/resin interface.

**BONDING SLICE TO GLASS SLIDE**

Glass and rock surfaces must be cleaned of all abrasives, freed of grease by rinsing in acetone or petroleum ether, and dried. The prime requirement then is to produce an extremely thin but uniform glass/rock bond (‘zero bond’) with an adhesive whose refractive index is close to that of glass. It is vital to produce consistent and minimum cement thickness, otherwise there will be unpredictable variations in the thickness of the finished section.

Canada Balsam and Lakeside 70C have long been used as slide mountants, but they cannot produce a reliable bond for machine finishing, particularly with polished first faces. Moreover, they have poor stability, becoming brittle or discoloured with age. Being thermolabile, these resins are also unsuitable for sections to be studied in cathodoluminescence or electron microprobe equipment. Resins with all the required characteristics can be found in the Epoxy family. Allman & Lawrence (1972) give a useful discussion of the properties of Epoxy resins for geological use. Araldite MY750 mixed with Versamid polyamide hardener (1:1) is an excellent all-round bonding resin with good high temperature stability and the correct refractive index. If sections have been pre-impregnated in a cold-setting resin such as...
Epo-tek, then they should be bonded with the same material.

Glass sides are first marked with the specimen number of the sample and any ‘way up’ indications which have been preserved, using a diamond scribe near one edge of the obverse glass face.

A small amount of mixed low-viscosity resin/hardener is applied to the first face, which is mounted on the lapped surface of the slide. The assembly is then placed in a spring-loaded jig (Fig. 4.5d) under a pressure of about 1 kg cm⁻². At first, the section ‘floats’, but as the adhesive rapidly squeezes out, the rock locks on to the glass and no longer slips. Bonds made in this way are extremely transparent, bubble-free and introduce no dimensional changes, which have been preserved, using a diamond scribe near one edge of the obverse glass face.

Thickness is automatically determined by pre-setting the spring-loaded clothes pegs can be used to provide even pressure, and these are also very useful for large sections, where four or more pegs can produce a more even bond than the standard jig.

Mounts must be left to cure under pressure. With the resin combination used above, the jig is placed on a hotplate and curing carried out at 80°C for about 15 minutes. For hand-prepared specimens, spring-loaded clothes pegs can be used to provide even pressure, and these are also very useful for large sections, where four or more pegs can produce a more even bond than the standard jig.

PRE-SECTION CUTTING
Bonded sections are next cut with a diamond blade to form a parallel second face, leaving a slice 300–400 μm thick on the slide. This initial thickness allows the final 30 μm section to be entirely in the undamaged layer. Cutting can be done automatically on a diamond-impregnated saw with a vacuum chuck, holding up to six slides simultaneously. Precision is not important here, as there is a machine finishing stage to follow.

FINISHING
At this stage, ST preparations are returned to the precision lapping machine for lapping to a final 30 μm thickness with 600F or 800F Carborundum. Thickness is automatically determined by pre-setting the vacuum slide-holding chuck (Fig. 4.5c); slides have reached the set thickness when they begin to ‘float’ on the lap, a process aided by the diamond-impregnated surround on the lower face of the chuck. Slides can be checked with a micrometer or, less reliably, on a microscope, looking for the required interference colours, e.g. quartz greys. This optical method is of little use for limestones.

DPT polishing can be done on the same machine, using graduated diamond pastes, but in the Edinburgh workshop we have found that better results are obtained on a separate polishing machine. This also has the advantage of freeing the precision lapping machine for preparing successive batches of slides, as the polishing stage can be protracted. The polishing machine consists of a simple rotary polishing lap running at up to 30 rpm, on which is placed a precision lapping chuck (Fig. 4.7a) with several slides held by vacuum suction (Fig. 4.7b). Polishing is carried out on adhesive-backed paper discs (Engis papers) attached to the lap. It begins with a charge of 8 μm diamond slurry such as Hyprez compound. This does not need replenishing unless the surface is very hard (quartzite or chert).

Any faults in previous preparation stages will show up here: if the section is not flat, because of a poor first face or incorrect bonding, polishing will follow the irregularity and a wedged slice with eroded edges will result.

Lapping is continued until the section reaches 30–35 μm (about 10 minutes for soft rocks, up to 30 minutes for harder ones). As this is the stage at which material is actively removed, the sections should be watched carefully during this process. After washing and change of lap paper, polishing is continued with 1 μm diamond. Little or no material is removed during the final stages; the surface is being improved and so time is not critical. For critical work, final lapping is done with 0.25 μm diamond paste. This is needed for electron microscope preparation, as it is very easy to polish the section away completely if the rock is soft. Optical methods of checking thickness by examining the interference colours will not work for these very thin slices, which produce very bright, high order colours.

COVERING
For research purposes it is best to leave thin sections uncovered, as they may then be subjected to a variety of treatments including staining, etching, cathodoluminescence and microprobe work. Coverslips are, of course, required for thin sections destined for teaching collections. DPT preparations need no oil for microscopic examination, but uncovered ST sections, being finished only to 600F or 800F Carborundum, require oil or glycerine before microscopic study.

ST sections should be cleaned of abrasive residue before examination. This may be done by wiping DPTs with a soft, damp tissue, or by brief immersion in an ultrasonic bath. ST preparations may be left uncovered but sprayed with a polyurethane resin to give a protected surface for general microscopy (Moussa, 1976, 1978). The best medium for attaching standard glass cover slips is Canada Balsam. This has the required refractive index and the advantage that the slip can be removed if needed, after gentle heating on a hotplate. Covered slides should be cured in a warm place for at least 24 hours before use.

LABELLING
Standard thin sections required for teaching collections or archive purposes can now be given self-adhesive labels on which can be written all the details of the sample. However, paper labels should not be used for those sections destined for use in cathodoluminescence and scanning electron microscopy or microprobe, as they tend to tear in the beam and may interfere with conductive coatings.

4.4.3 Variations in process for ‘difficult’ rock types
Certain rocks, such as shales, evaporites, coals, soft chalks and poorly-consolidated sediments require special treatment at various stages of the section-making procedure. Initial impregnation and embedding, if required, will have been completed as
4.5 ETCHING AND STAINING

4.5.1 Etching

Etching involves selective partial dissolution of a cut face. It attacks glass, metal and some plastic surfaces. Severe burns result after skin contact even with dilute solutions; the burns may not appear until hours after exposure. Splashes on skin should be neutralized immediately with a sodium bicarbonate solution, washed with copious amounts of water and treated with special HF Burn jelly, which should be available in all laboratories where HF is used. All operations involving HF should be carried out in a fume cupboard, and the operator protected with gloves and goggles. Surplus and discarded acid should be neutralized with alkali before disposal.

Etching vessels should be shallow, tightly-closing and made of polythene or similar soft plastic. Small plastic food containers are suitable, with an improvised plastic sleeve-like support for plaquettes or thin sections suspended from the lid (Fig. 4.8). Exposed surfaces of glass slides, especially the undersides, should be painted with paraffin wax before placing in the container. This prevents HF from frosting the slide and reducing its transmissivity. The HF needs to be a strong solution (52—55%), with the vessel filled to a depth of about 5—6 mm. Etching times in HF vapour depend on the nature of the rock: feldspars, for example, require about 30 minutes etch before they are to be stained. Stubborn cases can be etched directly in the HF solution. Samples should be inserted and removed from the apparatus using plastic or rubber gloves, and care taken not to breath the vapour. Copious washing under clean tap water is required before the samples can be treated further, and wax scraped from slides. The latter process is made easier by placing the slide in a refrigerator for a few minutes.

ETCHING LIMESTONES

Several reagents are available for etching carbonate minerals. Hydrochloric acid (1—5% by volume) gives a vigorous reaction with a tendency to give a rather unsatisfactory etch. It affects minerals other than calcite and aragonite, especially if the solution is warm. Acetic acid (about 20% by volume) gives a more selective etch, bringing out details of grain textures and fabrics more subtly than HCL. Di-sodium ethyl diaminotetraacetic acid (diNaEDTA) is an even more subtle etching agent: it has a chelating (complexing) action with comparatively little effervescence, thus reducing gas bubble damage of delicate structures. Miller & Clarkson (1988) used saturated EDTA solutions to reveal ultra-structure in calcitic trilobite cuticles.

Etching is simply carried out by placing the slice or thin section face up in the chosen etching solution. If the specimen is immersed face-down, bubbles cannot be released and remain attracted by surface tension to the surface, locally impeding further reaction and giving a very uneven etch.

The rate of etching varies according to the nature and strength of the solution, its temperature, and the grain size, crystallinity and mineral composition of the substrate. Etching times may vary from less than a minute to over half an hour. The optimum time must be determined by trial and error. Gentle agitation of the acid, and slight tilting of the face prevents the formation of bubble trains which trench the surface. For critical applications, the progress of etching can be observed with a binocular microscope (with a clear plastic bag tied over the optics to prevent corrosion from acid spray). This works best with the slower and more easily-controlled action of diNaEDTA, and is ideal for studying the location of delicate organic matter, such as shell membranes or algal and fungal filaments. Etching a thin section in a 10% solution of NH4Cl for 2 minutes is also good for revealing filamentous elements which are then best seen in a combination of reflected and transmitted light.

Thin sections for etching should be left a little thicker than usual, after being taken down to at least the 600F Carborundum stage. In some instances, the complete removal of carbonate from a thin section can provide additional information (Lees, 1958). This leaves the insoluble components available for observation in a dry state by reflected light or transmitted light with crossed nicols. For this technique, the lower sample face is etched with 30% acetic acid for 5 min before rinsing, drying and bonding to the glass slide. This preliminary etch ensures that a replica is formed in resin of the carbonate phases, and that the non-carbonate components adhere to the preparation. The 30 sec immersion is then immersed in 30% acetic until all the carbonate is dissolved. The replica shows details to at least 5 μm resolution.

4.5.2 Staining

While the mineralogical composition of rocks can be determined by optical study of thin sections, this can be a tedious, time consuming and error prone process. For example, distinction between calcite and dolomite is difficult because they have similar optical properties. For similar reasons, small untwinned feldspar grains and quartz grains cannot easily be distinguished. Chemical staining involves a reaction which produces a coloured precipitate on a specific mineral surface and therefore makes that mineral more easily recognized. Usually the surface requires some preparation, often etching, to receive and retain the precipitate.

The success of staining slices and thin sections depends, as does etching, on various factors: strength and age of reagents, temperature, pre-treatment, grain size, orientation, fabric, grain interactions, cleavage and surface finish. To achieve consistently good results with any staining procedure requires a considerable degree of skill. Much patient experimentation may be required. Staining times in particular are highly variable, and those given herein should only be used as a starting point.

Detailed guides for staining are given by Allman & Lawrence (1972) and Friedman (1971). In this section only the most successful techniques for common sedimentary minerals are given, with an emphasis on those which have been recently refined.

FELDSPARS

Houghton (1980) gave a method for staining plagioclase and alkali feldspars which is much more reliable than previous recipes.

Reagents: (A) Potassium rhodizionate (0.01 g K-rhodizionate in 30 ml distilled water, filtered before use). Maximum useful life one hour.
Procedure: (a) Etch over HF vapour (55% HF solution, see Section 4.5.1) for 25—35 s: increase time if HF is loosing potency.
(b) Remove from etching box with polyethylene forceps and drop into beaker with Na-cobaltinitrate solution. Leave for 45 s.
(c) Rinse slide twice in distilled or de-ionized water. Gently shake off excess water and blot end of slide by touching to a paper towel.
(d) Dip slide quickly into beaker with BaCl₂ solution for no more than 2 s.
(e) Dip slide immediately in distilled water and agitate for about 10 s.
(f) Place several drops of the rhodizonate solution in dark bottle.
(g) Dry with compressed air and examine with a petrographic microscope. If plagioclase is light grey or pale pink, dip in distilled water and repeat rhodizonate stage. The intensity of the pink plagioclase stain is proportional to the amount of calcium in the molecule: albite/oligoclase will stain lighter than a more calcic plagioclase. Pure Na-albite will not take up any of the rhodizonate stain. Alkali feldspars are stained yellow. The accuracy of the method decreases according to grain size: with finer grained specimens, the yellow precipitate tends to pervade the surface and obscure the quartz grains.

Cathodoluminescence is a much better way of detecting feldspars in fine sands and siltstones (see Chapter 6).

Gypsum and Anhydrite

Hounslow (1979) gave a method for staining these minerals, useful in the field as well as on drill cores, soil samples, slabs and sections. Reagents: (a) 1:1 nitric acid solution (10 ml concentrated nitric acid slowly added to 10 ml water in a 50 ml beaker).

(b) 10 g mercuric nitrate in 100 ml de-ionized water. Stir until dissolved. A fine, milky precipitate will form. Caution! Mercuric nitrate is extremely poisonous and may be absorbed through the skin.

(c) Slowly add the 1:1 nitric acid to the mercuric nitrate with constant stirring until the milky precipitate just dissolves or is just about to — approximately 8 drops of acid is usually sufficient. If not, the reagent is too acid and a further gram of mercuric nitrate added to produce a slight cloudiness should produce the yellow precipitate.

(d) Test the reagent by adding a few drops to small crystals of Na₂SO₄ or K₂SO₄ in a watch glass. A yellow precipitate should form immediately. If not, the reagent is too acid and a further gram of mercuric nitrate added to produce a slight cloudiness should produce the yellow precipitate.

(e) Filter the solution when the test is successful and store in a dark bottle.

Procedure: (a) Immerse the section, slab or plaquette in the reagent contained in a suitable dish or tray for a few seconds or until the yellow precipitate forms.

(b) Gently rinse the stained face in de-ionized or distilled water and allow to dry before microscopic examination.

Both minerals are stained yellow; other minerals are unstained.

ARAGONITE

The most sensitive stain for aragonite was developed by Fiegl (1937). Despite its sensitivity, it is not always reliable.

Reagents: (a) 1 g commercial grade Ag₂SO₄ is added to a boiling solution of 11.8 g MnSO₄ . 7H₂O in 100 ml distilled water.

(b) Cool and filter the suspension; add 2 drops 10% sodium hydroxide solution.

(c) Stand for 2 hours and then filter into a dark storage bottle.

Procedure: (a) Immerse the thin section or plaquette in boiling yellow reagent for at least 5 minutes. Add a few drops of methanol to compensate for evaporation.

(b) Carefully dissolve 30 g sodium hydroxide pellets in 70 ml water.

(c) Alkaline Alizarin red S — reagent: (a) Dissolve 0.2 g Alizarin red S in 25 ml methanol in a small beaker over a hot water bath.

(d) Carefully dissolve 30 g sodium hydroxide pellets in 70 ml water.

(e) Alkaline Alizarin red — procedure: (a) Add 15 ml of the 30% NaOH solution to the Alizarin red solution and bring to the boil.

(f) Immers the thin section or plaquette in boiling yellow reagent for at least 5 minutes. Add a few drops of methanol to compensate for evaporation.

(g) Rinse the section in distilled water.

(h) Stain is required for cover slips.

(i) Dry stained surface in stream of warm air.

(j) Dry stained surface in stream of warm air; do not touch surface in any way.

(k) Dry immersed surface in fixer solution for at least 30 s.

(l) Air dry again and cover. As the residual caustic would attack Lakeide or Canada Balsam, epoxy cement is required for cover slips.

Choquette & Trussell (1978) found that the intensity of the stain was proportional to the Mg content of calcite. Calcite with 5—8% MgCO₃ takes on a pink to pale red colour, and ‘high-Mg’ calcite takes on a deep red colour. C-axis normal sections of crystals stain more vividly than parallel sections, as do very fine-grained substrates. This stain is very valuable for its minute selectivity on a scale discernible with a petrographic microscope.

Calcite

Friedman (1959) gave a number of stains for calcite. One of the simplest and most reliable is Alizarin red S. Many carbonate workers routinely acid etch one-half of a thin section and stain it in acidified Alizarin red S solution before covering. While this helps to distinguish between red-stained calcite and unstained dolomite and quartz, it gives very little other information about diagenesis and mineralogy. It also makes microphotography of that slide difficult.

A far more valuable scheme was given by Dickson (1965, 1966) which in one operation differentiates between ferroan phases in calcites and dolomites, and is capable of revealing subtle growth zones in cement crystals.

Dickson’s method — reagents: (a) Etching solution — 15 ml of 36% HCl dissolved in 500 ml distilled water, then topped up to 1000 ml with distilled water.

(b) Staining solution part 1: 0.2 g Alizarin red S dissolved in 100 ml 1.5% HCl solution.

(c) Staining solution part 2: 2.2 g potassium ferricyanide crystals dissolved in 100 ml 1.5% HCl solution. This solution must be freshly made for each staining session.

(d) Mix staining solutions parts 1 and 2 in the ratio 3:1 of dye to 2 ferricyanide. The combined solution lasts for only one staining session.
Dickson’s method — procedure (Caution! use rubber gloves): (a) Immers e thin section (grease free surface) or faced sample in etching solution, face uppermost, for 10—15 s at 20°C (times are only approximate, and may vary widely with grain size, etc.). Cold solutions give very poor results. Experimentation is necessary to achieve the optimum etch. Weak etching gives a thin, patchy stain. Over-etching, particularly with Alizarin red S, produces a very dense stain which tends to spread a precipitate even over dolomite and quartz if they are present. (b) Immerse specimen in the combined solution for 30—45 s (again experimentation is required). For thin sections, best results are obtained if the stain is warmed. As HCN fumes can be evolved from the mixed stain, the safest way of doing this is to immerse the slide in a dish of hot water before placing in the bath of stain which is at room temperature. Avoid skin contact with the stain: ferricyanide is stained very pale pink, whereas sections parallel to be discerned, as sections normal to the c-axis are ties depending on their crystallite size and structure. (c) Wash the specimens gently in two changes of distilled water (not tap water, which contains Fe and Ca) for only a few seconds at a time — the stains are relatively soluble. (d) Dry the specimens quickly in a stream of warm air (from a hair drier or equivalent). Handle carefully; the stain is a thin surface film and is easily damaged. This method produces the following colour differentiation in carbonate minerals: Calcite Varying through very pale pink to red. Ferroan calcite Varying through mauve, purple to royal blue with increasing Fe content. Dolomite No colour. Ferroan dolomite Pale to deep turquoise with increasing Fe content. Dickson (1966) pointed out some useful features of this stain coupling. Alizarin red S can differentiate cryptic, and sometimes difficult to distinguish from unstained crystals. The Yzglo ultra-violet sensitive dye described in Section 4.3.2 is useful here. A simpler, but not always predictable, technique is to soak grease-free surfaces in aqueous solutions of 0.5 g malachite green, congo red or methylene blue in 250 ml water. The solution is lifted out of the solution occasionally and gently washed until the stain is found to be satisfactorily developed. The dye colour chosen should be complementary to the rock colour so as to provide the greatest degree of contrast. An alcoholic solution of dye (equal parts ethanol or methanol and water) on the rock colour works well on limestones, including chalks, with the alcoholic acting as a wetting agent and aiding penetration. POLYSACCHARIDE STAIN FOR BIOTURBATION Burrowing in sandstones and siltstones may often be cryptic, and sometimes difficult to distinguish from water escape structures. Risk & Szczuczko (1977) developed a reliable method for enhancing the morphology of burrowing in siliciclastics. It is based on the tendency of many burrowing organisms to secrete polysaccharides as a protective lining. The presence of this carbohydrate can be detected by a periodic acid — Schiff (PAS) reaction. The method is not suitable for use with carbonates because of the HCl in the Schiff reagent.

Procedure: (a) Cut a face or slice using water only as a lubricant; avoid all grease and oil; do not touch the cut face with uncovered hands. Massive, unjointed material is best in order to avoid carbohydrate contamination. (b) Polish with 600F or 800F Carborundum, again using water only. (c) Wash the slab thoroughly with tap water. (d) Place the face downwards in 1% periodic acid (by weight) in distilled water. Support the slab in a dish with glass rods at the edges. Gently swirl the liquid. Leave for 30 min. For very large blocks, the solution can be painted on. (e) Rinse thoroughly for 30 s in running water. (f) Place face down in Schiff’s reagent (commercially available) for 30 min, in the dark. (g) Wash for several minutes in running water. (h) Examine with binocular microscope. Store specimens in the dark, where they will remain unfaded for at least several years. The PAS reaction is not porosity-controlled. Specimens which are bioturbated will have a light purple background with dark stains marking the burrows. Anarthropod burrows do not stain as they do not normally have mucoid linings. 4.6 PEELS Making a replica of an etched surface on transparent plastic film is a very rapid and cheap way of preparing a sample for microscopic examination. A solvent is flooded on to the prepared face. The lower side of the film is softened and, as the solvent evaporates, the film settles down into the irregularities of the etched face and produces the replica. There is very little sample wastage. Serial peels can easily be produced by re-grinding surfaces after each peel, to a fixed distance if required. This is much quicker than making serial thin sections for three-dimensional visualization of fabrics like void spaces or for reconstructing fossils in full relief.

Films are mostly used for limestones and calcite-cemented clastic rocks, although cherts and siliciclastic clastics can be successfully treated. Best results are obtained with non-porous samples; surface cavities cause the film to bulge into the void, causing blisters and a risk of tearing the completed peel. Porosity can be reduced by vacuum impregnation with resin before facing the samples (the resin used must not be soluble in acetone when cured). Larger holes should be filled with decorator’s filler paste (such as Polyfilla), which is allowed to harden before the face is rubbed down.
4.6.3 Procedure

PREPARING THE CUT FACE

Sawn faces should be lapped to at least 600F Carborundum stage. For greater detail, further smoothing by polishing with 1 µm Aloxite or diamond abrasives is recommended. Etching such a polished surface gives a relief which is more subtly fabric-selective than etches controlled by an imperfect surface. For greater detail, further smoothing stage (see below). Different stains can be used for etching with HF. The rock slice is placed face down in hard water areas, use distilled or de-ionized water only, to avoid streaks after drying. If HF was used, the specimen must be totally immersed. Avoid touching the etched face, or agitating violently, as the delicate relief may be damaged. Drain the sample and dry in a stream of warm air. Drying may be accelerated by flooding the surface with acetone several times; this carries off some water when it evaporates. Dried and etched surfaces should be peeled immediately, as they collect dust rapidly.

ORIENTATION OF THE SPECIMEN

The specimen should be supported so that the etched face is almost horizontal, tilting by only a few degrees. Some workers use a sand tray to hold specimens, but this should be avoided because of the likelihood of contaminating the surface. Plasticene is a good medium for supporting all sizes of specimen as it is easily moulded and re-used.

PREPARATION OF FILM

Limestones can be etched with hydrochloric acid, acetic acid or diNaEDTA depending on the degree of detail required (see Section 4.5.1). Large slabs are conveniently etched (and stained, if required) in plastic photographic developing trays; the cut face preferably being uppermost in the solution unless the sample is too large, in which case the face is held downwards and gently swirled to remove bubble trains. Price (1975) showed that good peels could be made from cherts and other siliceous rocks after etching with HF. The rock slice is placed face down in a polythene tray into 30% HF solution for 3 or 4 min. The vapour alone does not give a deep enough etch for replicas, but is sufficient for stain preparation. All the usual safety precautions for using HF must be observed (Section 4.5.1).

APPLYING THE ACETATE FILM

The specimen should be cold and in a cool room, otherwise the acetate will evaporate too quickly from its surface. Gently flood the etched face with acetone from a washbottle. Too much acetone will cause wrinkling, too little will cause air bolls. Place the acetate film gently across the lower margin of the specimen edge. If the sheet is heavily charged with static, this can be removed by discharging with a piezo-electric antistatic pistol available from audio equipment shops. The discharged sheet is much easier to manage and does not attract dust and lint.

TAKING THE PEEL

Gently lift back the film from one edge of the specimen and steadily pull it off the surface in one continuous motion. If a tear develops, peel from the opposite corner and work towards the damage. Films which have been left to dry too long (e.g. a day or more) may be very difficult to remove without tearing. It is a matter of experience to judge the best time to remove a peel, but flicking the edge upwards produces a diagnostic 'dry' sound. Mounted peels should be stored in a dust-free box or drawer, and stained peels are best kept in the dark. Peels and thin sections should be regarded as complementary. Some peels show no signs of the 'phantom textures', e.g. in recrystallized limestones, which are otherwise visible in thin sections. On the other hand, the etched surfaces of peels frequently reveal details not seen in thin sections. Stained peels, when made with great care, have very high resolution and can be as good as a DPT for point counting and studies of diageneis.

TRIMMING AND MOUNTING OF PEELS

With a sharp pair of scissors, trim the excess film from the peel (but leave a small area as a fingerhold), and immediately either mount it between two sheets of glass, or mark it with specimen number and store it between the leaves of a thick book. The slightly damp, hygroscopic pages of a book provide excellent storage for peels which are either awaiting permanent mounting or are only needed for temporary examination. With some materials, coal balls for example, part of the rock surface is actually incorporated in the peel. Dipping the peel briefly in 2% HCl 'clears' the film before mounting.

WASHING THE PREPARED SAMPLE

Hold samples in a bath with slowly running water for several minutes. In hard water areas, use distilled or de-ionized water only, to avoid streaks after drying. If HF was used, the specimen must be totally immersed. Avoid touching the etched face, or agitating violently, as the delicate relief may be damaged. Drain the sample and dry in a stream of warm air. Drying may be accelerated by flooding the surface with acetone several times; this carries off some water when it evaporates. Dried and etched surfaces should be peeled immediately, as they collect dust rapidly.

SLICES, SLIDES, STAINS AND PEELS

Do not leave peels lying about in the laboratory before mounting or filing them: they attract dust and lint and are easily scratched.

While it may be difficult to keep them flat, examining peels unmounted has the advantage of being able to use oblique incident and transmitted light combinations to increase contrast, and for viewing the relief more effectively to gain a three-dimensional effect. Unmounted peels can also be examined with high power objectives which have smaller working distances than glass mounting plates. However, small peels, or cut-out sections of large ones, can be mounted between two standard microscope slides for examination with a low power binocular or stereomicroscope. Larger glass mounting plates can be obtained from photographic dealers. Very large peels may have to be mounted between specially cut pieces of thin window glass. In all cases, the glass should be thoroughly clean and grease free before sandwiching the peel and binding the edges with adhesive plastic tape. The best tape to use is matt 'invisible' mending tape, as standard Sellotape rapidly becomes brittle and splits. Handle the peels only by their edges to avoid grease marks, and lay them on clean, lint-free paper or cloth while they wait for mounting, to avoid dust and scratch collection. Mounted peels should be stored in a dust-free box or drawer, and stained peels are best kept in the dark.

Peels and thin sections should be regarded as complementary. Some peels show no signs of the 'phantom textures', e.g. in recrystallized limestones, which are otherwise visible in thin sections. On the other hand, the etched surfaces of peels frequently reveal details not seen in thin sections. Stained peels, when made with great care, have very high resolution and can be as good as a DPT for point counting and studies of diageneis.

4.7 EXAMINATION OF MICROSCOPIC PREPARATIONS

Having gone to some trouble to obtain high quality sample preparations, it is important to realize their potential by using appropriate techniques when studying them. Many workers begin immediately with detailed study under medium to high power on a petrographic microscope which has a very small field of view. There is much to be gained from...
preliminary survey of the whole preparation at low power, to provide a context for later detailed work.

4.7.1 Photographic map

A suggested first step in the use of any preparation, be it peel or thin section, is to make one or more photographs of the entire preparation (Fig. 4.10). This 'map' has many advantages: it preserves a record of the sample in its initial state before treatment; it gives an overall view of the section or peel; it gives an overall view of the section or peel; it can be used as a guide for subsequent detailed work, and it offers a convenient and rapid way of comparing samples.

The simplest and cheapest way of photographing a slide or peel is to use it as a photographic negative. Place the slide or peel mount into the negative carrier of a photographic enlarger and project the image onto an international A4 size sheet of printing paper of appropriate grade, determine the exposure and print two copies. One of these can form part of a reference archive, the other is a working copy, upon which notes and details can be written, or over which can be placed transparent overlays to mark grains, microprobe analysis sites etc.

Small thin sections will fit into the carrier of a 35 mm enlarger; larger preparations and peels require a plate enlarger. The negative print obtained has the advantage of increased contrast, enhancing many details in the preparation. If a positive image is required, a whole plate negative film sheet can be substituted for photographic paper at the first stage: this intermediate negative is developed and then contact printed. Alternatively, the thin section or peel can be placed on the stage of a 35 mm transparency copying machine, and a black and white or colour photograph taken by flash for later printing or projection.

With very large slices or bulky faced samples, a very simple method of producing a 'map' image is to place the face carefully on to the glass of a xerographic machine (Ireland, 1973). The image can be produced on a transparent sheet or on paper as required. Contrast can be adjusted by varying the toner applied.

4.7.2 Low power examination and drawing

Lees (1962) drew attention to a noticeable gap which existed in the instrumentation for examination of transparent thin sections or surface replicas such as peels, particularly with sizes larger than a standard thin section. He advocated the use of an industrial measuring projector for this purpose. The Watson Manasty 'Shadomaster' Model VMP (no longer in production) was chosen as being the best (Fig. 4.11). Viewers for microfilm are a good substitute, but lack the dimensional stability for accurate measurement which is a feature of the 'Shadomaster' projectors.

In the 'Shadomaster', samples are placed on a viewing stage and illuminated from above with a quartz-iodide lamp at the top projects a beam through the specimen and sub-stage lens system, which is reflected by a mirror in the base of the instrument on to a large ground-glass screen. A grid overlay is shown, used for point-counting.
An alternative for viewing and drawing small peels or segments of larger peels is to mount them in 35 mm transparency mounts (preferably with glass both sides) and to project them on to white paper or card, on which tracings can be made. Larger peels can be sandwiched between two glass plates and placed in an epscope for projection.

4.7.4 Photomicrography

Most research petrological microscopes have photomicrographic attachments, while simpler microscopes can be used with 35 mm SLR cameras fitted with appropriate adaptor rings. Curry et al. (1982) give useful hints about using these systems. In general, the most appropriate films are fine grained, high contrast types. This usually means they have slow speed and concomitantly long exposure times, so it is necessary to ensure that the microscope is free from vibration, best done by working on a stone or concrete optical bench. The photomicroscope should be rigidly supported.

Since the optics of the microscope are arranged for white light, where each wavelength is brought to a slightly different focus, optimum resolution in monochrome photographs is obtained by employing a medium density green filter (selecting a wavelength in the middle of the range). This also has the effect of producing some differential contrast within the specimen. Stained peels or thin sections may be enhanced by using a complementary filter on the illuminator.

Correct colour photographs are difficult to achieve. One of the main problems is to match the colour temperature of the film with that of the incident light, assuming correct exposure. The problem is particularly acute with pictures taken with crossed polars, where often the identification of the minerals depends on the subtle rendition of characteristic interference colours. Daylight colour film (around 5500 K colour temperature) can only be used directly with daylight and a stage mirror. If a substage illuminator is fitted, then a colour compensation filter is required (Kodak Wratten no. 80A). With tungsten light film (3200 K), no filter is needed if the substage illuminator has a tungsten lamp. That does not, however, guarantee that exact colour rendition will be obtained, as the colour temperature of tungsten lamps depends on the voltage at which they are run and on the age of the lamp. For critical applications, a colour temperature meter should be used, or the manufacturer's graphs consulted.

4.8 MANUFACTURERS AND SUPPLIERS

Acetate film for peels: Charles Tennant & Company Limited, 214 Bath Street, Glasgow G2 4HR, Scotland.
Automated and semi-automated thin-sectioning equipment: Logitech Limited, Erskine Ferry Road, Old Kilpatrick, Dunbartonshire, Scotland.
Blue keystone resin stain: Epoxy Technology Inc., PO Box 567, 14 Fortune Drive, Billerica, Mass 01821, USA.


SLICES, SLIDES, STAINS AND PEELS 107
5 Microscopic techniques: II. Principles of sedimentary petrography

GILL HARWOOD

5.1 INTRODUCTION

Sedimentary petrography is the analysis of both depositional and diagenetic fabrics from thin sections, and includes mineralogic composition, grain and sediment provenance, fabric studies and determination of the sequence of diagenetic events. Petrographical studies of thin sections form the basis of much modern research on sedimentary rocks, whether siliciclastic, volcanic, carbonate or evaporitic, and the information gained can greatly supplement data from field- or core-based studies.

Perhaps the first question to be answered is why do so many sedimentologists concentrate on sedimentary petrography? A brief literature review of the popular sedimentological journals indicates an increasing emphasis on petrography within Europe, whereas within the United States and Canada sedimentary petrology has for long been a necessary component of integrated sedimentological research projects. Many such studies are related to hydrocarbon evaluation — both for source rocks and for reservoir potential. A summary of the interrelationships together with some of the applications of aspects of sedimentary petrography is given in Fig. 5.1. It should be emphasized that much information gained from petrofabric research can be used to back up field studies and forms an aid to provenance studies, including facies analysis and construction of depositional models; these applications are commonly lost amongst an ever-growing number of papers solely on aspects of diagenesis.

5.1.1 Techniques and tools

Although some techniques used in sedimentary petrography are quantitative, many are solely qualitative and are principally descriptive. Many research projects concentrate on either siliciclastic or carbonate sediments; few investigate combined carbonate-siliciclastic systems and fewer yet reference volcanogenic sediments, mudrocks or evaporites. This chapter attempts to portray fabrics which may develop within any sediment, independent of mineralogy. Although some specific fabrics are included, the aim is to produce a general 'guide' for all sedimentary petrographers, with references leading to more detailed texts. Examples used in photomicrographs are predominantly from 'grain-supported' rocks (sandstones, grainstones/packstones) as many petrofabrics are more readily apparent within these sediments. This is not to say that these features are not present within more clay-rich or carbonate-mud-rich sediments. They are, however, commonly more difficult to discern, and to photograph, in clay-rich and mud-rich sediments. Their examination profits from the use of ultra-thin sections (Chapter 4), employed initially in studies of carbonate diagenesis (Lindholm & Dean, 1973), so that initial research into mudrock diagenesis can now be carried out with a good petrological microscope.

A good petrological microscope is the essential tool for sedimentary petrography, with refinement by the addition of subsidiary components where necessary. One tool commonly ignored by many sedimentary petrographers is a Shadowmaster®, or similar equipment, where a thin section is projected on to a ground glass screen to produce an image (a shadowgraph). This can be extremely useful for overviews of a thin section, grain shape and size determinations and for fabric analysis.

At this point a word of warning should be included: it is little use spending days/weeks describing and analysing one thin section if you are not sure within the sediment (Fig. 5.2a, b) between which the finer matrix (silt and clay sized particles) may have accumulated (Fig. 5.2a). In well-winnowed sediments there is generally little or no matrix, leaving resultant pore spaces which may be partially or totally occluded (or filled) by cement during diagenesis (Fig. 5.2b). Where there are higher proportions of matrix the grains do not form a framework, but float within the finer grained matrix, forming a matrix-supported sediment (Fig. 5.2c). Whereas these may appear to be easy to recognize in theory, in practice it can be difficult to determine whether a sediment is grain supported or matrix supported in a hand specimen, but particularly when seen in two dimensions within a thin section (e.g. Fig. 5.2d).

Authigenic minerals grow after sediment deposition, during diagenesis; they include both cements and replacive minerals. Cements are the crystals which grow into existing pore spaces. They may, or may not, totally occlude the available pore space (e.g. Fig. 5.2b). The form of many cement crystals can be indicative of the environment in which they grew (see Section 5.3.3). Replacive minerals grow, as their name suggests, in the place of pre-existing minerals and not into pore spaces. They are commonly alteration products of the primary detrital grains, but may also form from the introduction of additional ions by circulating pore fluids, as in many instances of dolomitization of a precursor carbonate.

Pore spaces are the voids not filled by grains or matrix within a sediment. Impregnation of the sample with a coloured epoxy resin (commonly blue) makes the pore spaces more easily visible in thin section (Chapter 4) and allows distinction between a true pore space and a void where a grain or crystal has been plucked out during the process of making a thin section.
A minor, but important constituent of many sandstones are the heavy minerals, with a specific gravity in excess of 2.9. These are usually studied by separating them from a crushed rock with heavy liquids, notably tetrabromoethane, which is extremely toxic.

The procedure is well described in Krumbein & Pettijohn (1961), Hubert (1971) and Friedman & Johnson (1982). It is also possible to use a magnetic separator. Identification of the heavy minerals is by microscopic examination of the mounted grains (see references cited above for properties of the minerals). The value of the heavy minerals is in the information they give on a sediment’s provenance, although their dissolution during diagenesis may result in modification to the original assemblage (Morton, 1985b).

5.2.2 Modal composition

The modal composition of a sediment is a measure of the proportions of the different major depositional components. These have three end members: (i) detrital, dominantly siliciclastic (or terrigenous) components derived from outside the depositional area, (ii) allochemical components produced within, or adjacent to, the depositional area, and (iii) authigenic components resulting from chemical precipitation within the area. Five major classes of sedimentary rock are defined using a triangular plot of these components (Fig. 5.3; Table 5.2) (Folk, 1974b). This classification is based solely on composition immediately after deposition; cements and authigenic minerals are not included. Difficulties are encountered when considerable dissolution has taken place during diagenesis of the sediment (Section 5.3.5).

To obtain the modal composition of any sediment one needs to know (i) the nature of the contained grains and (ii) the proportions of these grains present within the sediment. The nature of the contained grains can be obtained from grain mineralogy (Section 5.2.1) plus the origin of lithic clasts (Table 5.3). The proportion of the different grains present is more difficult to ascertain and is done using two main techniques, point counting and visual estimates. Several systems of computer enhancement and image analysis which can be used with a petrographic microscope are beginning to come on the market and promise relative ease of modal composition evaluation.

POINT COUNTING TECHNIQUES

Point counting is the most accurate method of establishing the modal composition of a sediment, albeit a time-consuming method (Chayes, 1956; Galehouse, 1971a). Point counting of many thin sections is tedious; however, its uses generally outweigh the time spent in data accumulation. There are various methods of point counting, the most obvious being the spot identification of each grain as it appears under the crosswires of the microscope (e.g. Van der Plas & Tobi, 1965; Solomon & Green, 1966). However, in a sediment with a large proportion of lithic clasts this may involve changing many times to a different magnification (generally larger, to identify the whole clast). One method (Ingersoll et al., 1984) obviates this by identifying minerals within the clast, rather than the complete clast, although this produces a modal composition based on total mineralogy rather than detrital grain mineralogy.

During point counting, the thin section is placed on a mechanical stage screwed to the rotating stage of the microscope, which is then clamped. The mechanical stage is connected to a counting unit, which, when a master key is pressed, moves the section a given distance along a traverse. This distance can be varied, dependent on the grain size of the sediment. Six (or more) additional keys can be marked for different components within the section. One of these keys is pressed each time that component is visible under the cross hairs of the microscope. The master key both advances the stage and records the total number of points counted. Grains present, but not encountered under the cross hairs, are noted as additional minerals (Table 5.4). Several traverses are made for each thin section, and a total of some 250–300 points per section need to be counted to obtain sufficiently accurate percentages of the components present. All data are rigorously tabulated (Table 5.4). The position of the traverses should be noted as this enables the counting of additional points, should this be necessary, it also enables checking of the original data. Although point counting is time consuming, any petrographer should practice this method on several thin sections before proceeding to much more rapid methods, such as the use of visual estimates.
Table 5.1. Summary of common minerals in sedimentary rocks and their optical properties. Compiled from Kerr (1959) and Tucker (1981)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group/mineral</th>
<th>Crystal system</th>
<th>Colour</th>
<th>Cleavage</th>
<th>Relief</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Quartz</td>
<td>Trigonal</td>
<td>Colourless</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Low +ve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cherts</td>
<td>Monoclinic</td>
<td>Colourless</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>Low +ve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feldspars</td>
<td>Trigonal</td>
<td>Colourless</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>Low +ve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orthoclase</td>
<td>Triclinic</td>
<td>Colourless</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>Low +ve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plagioclase</td>
<td>Triclinic</td>
<td>Colourless</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>Low +ve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Micas</td>
<td>Monoclinic</td>
<td>Colourless</td>
<td>Prominent</td>
<td>Moderate +ve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biotite</td>
<td>Monoclinic</td>
<td>Brown-green</td>
<td>Prominent</td>
<td>Moderate +ve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clay minerals</td>
<td>Orthoclase</td>
<td>Green/blue green</td>
<td>Planar</td>
<td>Moderate +ve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smectite</td>
<td>Monoclinic</td>
<td>Colourless</td>
<td>Planar</td>
<td>Low +ve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glauconite</td>
<td>Monoclinic</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Planar</td>
<td>Moderate +ve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zeolites</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Most colourless</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Low, most —ve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbonates</td>
<td>Orthorhombic</td>
<td>Colourless</td>
<td>Rectilinear</td>
<td>Moderate—high</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcite</td>
<td>Orthorhombic</td>
<td>Colourless</td>
<td>Rhombic</td>
<td>Low—high</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dolomite</td>
<td>Orthorhombic</td>
<td>Colourless</td>
<td>Rhombic</td>
<td>Low—high</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siderite</td>
<td>Orthorhombic</td>
<td>Colourless/ pale brown</td>
<td>Rectilinear</td>
<td>Low—high</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Askerite</td>
<td>Orthorhombic</td>
<td>Colourless</td>
<td>Rectilinear</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evaporites</td>
<td>Orthorhombic</td>
<td>Colourless</td>
<td>Planar</td>
<td>Low—moderate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gypsum</td>
<td>Orthorhombic</td>
<td>Colourless</td>
<td>Rectilinear</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anhydrite</td>
<td>Orthorhombic</td>
<td>Colourless</td>
<td>Planar</td>
<td>Low—moderate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Celestite</td>
<td>Orthorhombic</td>
<td>Colourless</td>
<td>Planar</td>
<td>Low—moderate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Halite</td>
<td>Orthorhombic</td>
<td>Colourless</td>
<td>Rectilinear</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baryte</td>
<td>Orthorhombic</td>
<td>Colourless</td>
<td>Planar</td>
<td>Low—moderate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron minerals</td>
<td>Cubic</td>
<td>Opaque</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyrite</td>
<td>Cubic</td>
<td>Opaque</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnetite</td>
<td>Cubic</td>
<td>Opaque</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haematite</td>
<td>Cubic</td>
<td>Opaque, brown tinge</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chamosite</td>
<td>Monoclinic</td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bitumens</td>
<td>Non-crystalline</td>
<td>Brown</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bitumen</td>
<td>Non-crystalline</td>
<td>Opaque</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 5.1. (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Birefringence</th>
<th>Other features</th>
<th>Cement</th>
<th>Form and occurrence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>Overgrowth cement</td>
<td>common</td>
<td>As detrital grains, cements and as diageneric (replacive) quartz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>Chaledony and megagranite</td>
<td>and opal</td>
<td>Acicular chert (chaledony), megagranite and microgranite; all forms diageneric unless as detrital grain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>Crosshatch twins</td>
<td>May form</td>
<td>Present as detrital minerals but commonly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>Simple twins</td>
<td>overgrowth</td>
<td>have cloudy appearance as alter to clay minerals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>Multiple twins</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bright colours</td>
<td>Parallel</td>
<td>extinction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bright colours, masked by colour</td>
<td>Parallel</td>
<td>extinction, pleochroic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>Fine grained</td>
<td>Common as burial cements</td>
<td>Present as detrital minerals, as alteration products of silicates and as cements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>Commonly replaces</td>
<td>pellets</td>
<td>Characteristic of low sedimentation rates, may infill foraminifera tests, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>Commonly grey</td>
<td>Common as cements</td>
<td>Associated with volcanogenic sediments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High colours</td>
<td>Commonly acicular.</td>
<td>Many cement</td>
<td>Present as detrital grains, cements and replacement fabrics in carbonates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very high colours</td>
<td>Distinguished by staining</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very high colours</td>
<td>Commonly</td>
<td>acicular.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very high colours</td>
<td>Distinguished by</td>
<td>staining</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commonly</td>
<td>acicular.</td>
<td>Many cement</td>
<td>Present as detrital grains, cements and replacement fabrics in carbonates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commonly</td>
<td>acicular.</td>
<td>Many cement</td>
<td>Present as detrital grains, cements and replacement fabrics in carbonates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commonly</td>
<td>acicular.</td>
<td>Many cement</td>
<td>Present as detrital grains, cements and replacement fabrics in carbonates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commonly</td>
<td>acicular.</td>
<td>Many cement</td>
<td>Present as detrital grains, cements and replacement fabrics in carbonates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Commonly</td>
<td>crystalline due to replacement of evaporite sequences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Commonly</td>
<td>partially replacive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Only present if section</td>
<td>Common partial replacive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Prepared in oil</td>
<td>Common partial replacive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>May be associated with sulphide mineralization, difficult to distinguish from celestite under microscope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Commonly</td>
<td>crystalline due to replacement of evaporite sequences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Commonly</td>
<td>partially replacive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Only present if section</td>
<td>Common partial replacive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Prepared in oil</td>
<td>Common partial replacive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>May be associated with sulphide mineralization, difficult to distinguish from celestite under microscope</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Commonly</td>
<td>crystalline due to replacement of evaporite sequences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Commonly</td>
<td>partially replacive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey, masked by colour</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>May be associated with sulphide mineralization, difficult to distinguish from celestite under microscope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey, masked by colour</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>May be associated with sulphide mineralization, difficult to distinguish from celestite under microscope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey, masked by colour</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>May be associated with sulphide mineralization, difficult to distinguish from celestite under microscope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Yellow</td>
<td>Common authigenic minerals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Grey-black</td>
<td>Occurs in ooids in ironstones and as partial pore fills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Red-grey</td>
<td>Occurs in ooids in ironstones and as partial pore fills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey, masked by colour</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>May be associated with sulphide mineralization, difficult to distinguish from celestite under microscope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey, masked by colour</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>May be associated with sulphide mineralization, difficult to distinguish from celestite under microscope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey, masked by colour</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>May be associated with sulphide mineralization, difficult to distinguish from celestite under microscope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Yellow</td>
<td>Common authigenic minerals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Grey-black</td>
<td>Occurs in ooids in ironstones and as partial pore fills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Red-grey</td>
<td>Occurs in ooids in ironstones and as partial pore fills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey, masked by colour</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>May be associated with sulphide mineralization, difficult to distinguish from celestite under microscope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey, masked by colour</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>May be associated with sulphide mineralization, difficult to distinguish from celestite under microscope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey, masked by colour</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>May be associated with sulphide mineralization, difficult to distinguish from celestite under microscope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Yellow</td>
<td>Common authigenic minerals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Grey-black</td>
<td>Occurs in ooids in ironstones and as partial pore fills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Red-grey</td>
<td>Occurs in ooids in ironstones and as partial pore fills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey, masked by colour</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>May be associated with sulphide mineralization, difficult to distinguish from celestite under microscope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey, masked by colour</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>May be associated with sulphide mineralization, difficult to distinguish from celestite under microscope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey, masked by colour</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>May be associated with sulphide mineralization, difficult to distinguish from celestite under microscope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Yellow</td>
<td>Common authigenic minerals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Grey-black</td>
<td>Occurs in ooids in ironstones and as partial pore fills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Red-grey</td>
<td>Occurs in ooids in ironstones and as partial pore fills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey, masked by colour</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>May be associated with sulphide mineralization, difficult to distinguish from celestite under microscope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey, masked by colour</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>May be associated with sulphide mineralization, difficult to distinguish from celestite under microscope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey, masked by colour</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>May be associated with sulphide mineralization, difficult to distinguish from celestite under microscope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Yellow</td>
<td>Common authigenic minerals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Grey-black</td>
<td>Occurs in ooids in ironstones and as partial pore fills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Red-grey</td>
<td>Occurs in ooids in ironstones and as partial pore fills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey, masked by colour</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>May be associated with sulphide mineralization, difficult to distinguish from celestite under microscope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey, masked by colour</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>May be associated with sulphide mineralization, difficult to distinguish from celestite under microscope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey, masked by colour</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>May be associated with sulphide mineralization, difficult to distinguish from celestite under microscope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Yellow</td>
<td>Common authigenic minerals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Grey-black</td>
<td>Occurs in ooids in ironstones and as partial pore fills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Red-grey</td>
<td>Occurs in ooids in ironstones and as partial pore fills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey, masked by colour</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>May be associated with sulphide mineralization, difficult to distinguish from celestite under microscope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey, masked by colour</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>May be associated with sulphide mineralization, difficult to distinguish from celestite under microscope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey, masked by colour</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>May be associated with sulphide mineralization, difficult to distinguish from celestite under microscope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Yellow</td>
<td>Common authigenic minerals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Grey-black</td>
<td>Occurs in ooids in ironstones and as partial pore fills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Red-grey</td>
<td>Occurs in ooids in ironstones and as partial pore fills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey, masked by colour</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>May be associated with sulphide mineralization, difficult to distinguish from celestite under microscope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey, masked by colour</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>May be associated with sulphide mineralization, difficult to distinguish from celestite under microscope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey, masked by colour</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>May be associated with sulphide mineralization, difficult to distinguish from celestite under microscope</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

http://jurassic.ru/
### PRINCIPLES OF SEDIMENTARY PETROGRAPHY

#### Table 5.3. Summary of the components of sedimentary rocks and their symbols, for use with triangular compositional diagrams similar to those of Fig. 5.5 (modified from Folk, 1974b)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol from Table 5.3</th>
<th>Examples and comments</th>
<th>Approx. % of strat. record</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>Terrigenous rocks</td>
<td>Most mudrocks, sandstones and conglomerates; Most terrigenous rocks fall into the shaded area of Fig. 5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>Impure allochemical rocks</td>
<td>Very skeletal shales, sandy skeletal or ooid-rich carbonates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO</td>
<td>Impure orthochemical rocks</td>
<td>Chichey carbonate mudstones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Allochemical rocks</td>
<td>Skeletal, ooid-rich, pellet or intraclastic carbonates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>Orthochemical rocks</td>
<td>Carbonate mudstones, anhydrite, chert; Collectively IA and IO are classed as impure chemical rocks and A and O as pure chemical rocks</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Table 5.2. Explanation of symbols used in the classification of sedimentary rocks of Fig. 5.3 (from Folk, 1974b)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Components</th>
<th>Origin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>Igneous quartz</td>
<td>Quartz (Q)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qm</td>
<td>Metamorphic quartz</td>
<td>Metamorphic components</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Plagioclase</td>
<td>Feldspar (F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>Orthoclase/microcline</td>
<td>Terrigenous components</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>Sedimentary rock fragment</td>
<td>Rock fragments (or lithic clasts) (L or RF)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>Volcanic rock fragment</td>
<td>Detrital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rm</td>
<td>Metamorphic rock fragment</td>
<td>Carbonates (Allochemical)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rpl</td>
<td>Plutonic rock fragment</td>
<td>Chemical/diagenetic Orthochemical in situ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>Skeletal fragments</td>
<td>Plagioclase/peloids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rla</td>
<td>Pellets/peloids</td>
<td>Plagioclase/peloids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>Ooids</td>
<td>Ooids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qm</td>
<td>Unidentifiable grains</td>
<td>Plagioclase/peloids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mcla</td>
<td>Some carbonate muds</td>
<td>Some carbonate muds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mlg</td>
<td>Some carbonate muds</td>
<td>Some carbonate muds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Evaporites</td>
<td>Cherts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Cherts</td>
<td>Cherts</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Sections

**ABUSES AND USES**

With both visual estimation and point counting techniques it must be remembered that values are being computed from the two dimensions of the thin section into the three dimensions of a sediment for modal composition. For inhomogeneous sediments, particularly those with a distinct fabric, total measurement of modal composition should be a combination of the measurements from three perpendicular thin sections. It is also important that the thin sections counted are representative of the sequence studied, thus necessitating preliminary overviews of the thin sections.

Each of the major components of a sedimentary rock (Fig. 5.3) can be further subdivided during detailed modal analysis (Table 5.3). Expression of modal composition is commonly shown on a triangular diagram, using three appropriate major components (Fig. 5.5a, b). Care should be taken that the same classification method is used for all samples plotted, particularly if data are obtained from other workers, as different classifications can result in variation of the position of plotted points (and hence composition) (Zuffa, 1985). Modal compositions have commonly been used by sandstone or carbonate petrographers but Zuffa (1986) has demonstrated the importance of consideration of silticlastic in situ detailed carbonate components. It is also important to note the presence of later dissolution (McBride, 1985) as this can greatly affect the resultant modal composition (Section 5.3.4). The use of multivariate analysis (common in igneous geochemistry) has been little applied to modal compositions of sediments, although it offers considerable potential. This lapse may be due to the lack of point counting in recent years, concomitant with lack of communication between various branches of the geological sciences. In addition to modal composition, point counting can be used to assess the relative proportions of grains and matrix, grains and cement and cement or grains and porosity.

**5.2.3 Grain morphology, size, sorting measurements and orientation**

Several authors have considered the difficulties of evaluating these parameters from thin sections of lithified sediments as opposed to those of unconsolidated or disaggregated sediments (Rosenfeld, Jacobsen & Ferm, 1953; Friedman, 1962; Klovan, 1966; Folk, 1966, 1974b). Although these parameters are commonly measured for unconsolidated or disaggregated sediments, the geological significance of the difference in grain size within sediments is not fully understood (Folk, 1974b). In addition, disaggregation of sediments may lead to inaccurate results if overgrowth cements are present (Section 5.3.3). The size of detrital grains within a sediment is proportional to the available materials and to the amount of energy imparted to the sediment. The degree of sorting of a sediment is dependent on the size range of the supplied grains, the mode of deposition (for example, whether wave reworking or current deposition), the current characteristics (predominantly strength) and the time...
Table 5.4. Data sheet for use when point counting thin sections (or grain mounts). Modified from Galehouse (1971a)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mineral</th>
<th>Percentage</th>
<th>Counter reading</th>
<th>Number of Points</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Start</td>
<td>Finish</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 Opaque</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Accessory minerals: (present but not at point count sites)

involved in deposition. Field or core studies can give information on some of these features and thin section petrography can aid further evaluation, but care must be taken to avoid diagenetic fabrics in any such analysis. Shadowgraphs are particularly useful in grain morphology and orientation studies, as they enable overviews of a large area of the thin section.

**GRAIN MORPHOLOGY**

Recognition of detrital grain morphology (form, sphericity, roundness and, in some cases, surface textures) in thin section is only possible where grain surfaces have not been modified during diagenesis. Parameters such as roundness and sphericity are readily measurable from thin section. Form (or shape), however, is dependent on the orientation of the thin section; determination of grain form therefore involves measurement of shape of many grains in different orientations within one thin section, and, preferably, the use of three perpendicular thin sections.
Fig. 5.5. Component diagrams for demonstrating modal composition of (a) siliciclastic/terrigenous sediments and (b) carbonate sediments. Components can be modified to suit the individual study.

**GRAIN SIZE AND SORTING MEASUREMENTS**

A thin section is a random two-dimensional slice through a three-dimensional solid. Any slice through a solid comprising spherical grains of equal size will show spheres of many, apparently, different sizes (Fig. 5.6). Both grain size and sorting cannot, therefore, be measured directly from a thin section and can only be estimated. This can be done by direct measurements of the maximum dimension of a hundred grains through a calibrated eye piece graticule, or on a screen, followed by calculation of the standard deviation of these dimensions and application of a correction equation which adjusts this value for the effects of random sectioning (e.g. Harrell & Eriksson, 1979). Alternatively, visual estimation using a comparator can be used, a procedure which is considerably less time consuming and much easier, although such estimates may lack ac-
curacy. Harrell (1984) compared actual and apparent sorting images for sets of spheres with log normal distribution, and demonstrated that the apparent sorting is less accurate for well sorted sediments, but, that using his visual comparators (Fig. 5.7), the apparent sorting is very nearly the same as for actual sorting within the sand and gravel size ranges. It

should be emphasized that use of sorting and grain size comparators is only valid for sediments which have not undergone compaction (see Section 5.3.2). Abnormal sorting or textural inversion (e.g. Fig. 5.8) are common in sediments and indicate unusual environmental conditions, possibly mixing of sediment from two different environments, storm mixing of material in a high energy environment or multiple sources of sediment supply. These conditions are not always apparent from field/core studies and

Fig. 5.6. A random section through a solid comprising a framework of spherical grains of equal size (from Harrell, 1984).

Fig. 5.7. Visual comparators for random sections through log normally distributed sets of spherical grains. Actual sorting in (a) is 0.35 φ, in (b), 0.50 φ, in (c), 1.00 φ and in (d) is 2.00 φ. Apparent sorting is 0.69, 0.77, 1.16 and 2.08 φ respectively (from Harrell, 1984).
Fig. 5.8. Bimodal distribution in modern ooid sands. Radial ooids from Great Salt Lake are mostly 600 μm in diameter, but larger grains average over 1,000 μm. Recent, Utah, USA.

illustrate the uses of the additional information obtainable from thin section petrography. In interpretation, it should be remembered that there is very little size reduction of quartz sand grains during transport, but that selective sorting may mean that the small grains are carried farther, or are winnowed and deposited by weaker currents (Folk, 1974b).

GRAIN ORIENTATION

Measurement of grain orientation (e.g. Fig. 5.9) necessitates the use of oriented field samples plus measurements from three perpendicular thin sections. The orientation of the long axis of the grains can be measured directly from the microscope or shadowgraph, or it can be measured by a photometric method which integrates the extinction behaviour of all the grains in the field of view (Sippel, 1971). Orientations determined can be plotted on rose diagrams, balloon diagrams or, better, stereonets as for field palaeocurrent analysis (Chapter 2). Compaction after sedimentation may have considerably reduced any angle of cross lamination measured from grain orientation; the significance of this can be estimated from compaction features visible in the same thin sections (Section 5.3.2). More detailed accounts of grain orientation methods from thin sections are given in Bonham & Spotts (1971) and Gibbons (1972).

5.2.4 Provenance studies

Provenance studies of sandstone sequences are possible using the modal composition plus maturity indicators (Fig. 5.10; Table 5.5) (Valloni & Maynard, 1981; Dickinson, 1985; Valloni, 1985). Sandstone sequences are the result of both provenance and tectonic environment, modified by climate, depositional environment and later diagenetic events. Such broad groupings are only possible when many separate thin section analyses are grouped together; they are not applicable where the study is of one sandstone sequence from one particular area of a sedimentary basin.

In addition to studies using the modal composition of a sediment, other provenance determinations can be made from individual quartz grains. This technique was initiated by Krynine (1940, 1946) and can detail sources not recognized in more regional composition-based provenance studies.

QUARTZ PROVENANCE STUDIES

Quartz grains may be single crystals (monocrystalline) and show straight extinction or undulose extinction (best measured on a universal stage). They may also be composite (or polycrystalline) with straight or undulose extinction within individual subcrystals and may, or may not, show elongation within the subcrystals. Quartz grains may also contain trails of inclusions, commonly fluid or gas filled. Subparallel trails of very small inclusions, or Boehm lamellae, are the products of intense strain, and indicate strain to have occurred within the quartz lattice, either in situ or before incorporation in the present sediment. The two may be distinguished by measuring the strain directions in several quartz grains; a random strain direction indicates strain prior to deposition, whereas a constant strain direction indicates stress was applied to the sediment. Quartz grains may also contain solid inclusions, the mineralogy of which may give evidence of provenance (e.g. sillimanite inclusions are excellent evidence for a metamorphic source area). A summary of quartz grain features is given in Fig. 5.11 and photomicrographs in Fig. 5.12. A more detailed discussion of quartz grains as indicators of provenance is given by Folk (1974b) who includes further references.

5.2.5 Depositional fabrics — a conclusion

In conclusion to this section on depositional fabrics it can be seen that a considerable amount of information can be gained from petrographic studies which can be used to supplement field studies and gain insight into the origins of the sediment. In particular provenance studies, both from modal compositions and from quartz grain variations, are not possible without petrographic analysis; these form an important aid in the interpretation of ancient sediments and their depositional environments. Grain size, form, roundness and sphericity
data are supplemented from grain orientations measured and mineralogical composition established.

5.3 DIAGENETIC FABRICS

Sedimentary rocks exhibit a vast range of diagenetic fabrics from compaction to cementation, dissolution to complete replacement. These diagenetic fabrics can be important indicators both of the depositional environment of the sediment and of the chemistry of a variety of fluids which have been flushed through the sediment during burial. Mineralogical changes can also be used to indicate temperature and depth of burial; this is of particular importance when correlated with organic temperature/depth indicators in studies of petroleum generation and migration. The sequence of diagenetic events within a sediment governs its potential as a hydrocarbon reservoir, as a host for mineralization, as a conduit for mineralizing fluids/hydrocarbons, or as a source for hydrocarbons. Research on diagenetic fabrics supplements information from field/core based work and from studies of depositional fabrics.

Diagenetic fabrics can be subdivided into two major types—those due to compaction and those due to chemical alteration, whether cementation, dissolution or replacement (Fig. 5.13). A sediment may exhibit one or more phases of any, or all, of these processes; the task of the sedimentary petrographer is to unravel the different events, place these in a paragenetic sequence and then build on these in interpreting the burial history of the sediment. Sound petrographic interpretations are essential before geochemical or isotopic analysis of the different diagenetic components is attempted.

Increased research into diagenesis has resulted in the introduction of many new terms; to aid the reader a brief review of general nomenclature relating to diagenetic environment and to porosity types may be significant within clays and clay coatings and some dolostones. Secondary porosities can be due to the dissolution of detrital grains (Fig. 5.16c, d); of cements and authigenic minerals which are thus utilized during fluid migration through the sediment. Submicroscopic porosity (in places mistakenly termed 'chalky' porosity) is present in chalks, mudrocks and some altered detrital grains. Efficient impregnation with coloured resin within these sediments will demonstrate the presence of submicroscopic porosity under a good petrographic microscope; further

POROSITY NOMENCLATURE

Porosity nomenclature is based on two classic papers: Choquette & Pray (1970) and Schmidt, McDonald & Platt (1977). Porosity within a sediment may be primary, a result of depositional voids between or within grains, or secondary, the result of dissolution, shrinkage or fracturing within the subsurface (Choquette & Pray, 1970). Primary porosity is commonly intergranular (or interparticle) (Fig. 5.16a), although rare intragranular porosity may be present within rock fragments, skeletal material and other detrital grains (Fig. 5.16b); intracrystalline porosity can be significant within clays and clay coatings and some dolostones. Secondary porosities can be due to the dissolution of detrital grains (Fig. 5.16c, d), of cements and authigenic minerals (Fig. 5.16e), plus shrinkage of certain sediments (particularly glauconitic sediments), and fracturing after cementation. Both primary and secondary porosity types may be mutually interconnected (Fig. 5.16a), therefore resulting in high permeabilities, or isolated (Fig. 5.16b), with consequent low permeabilities. The effective porosity of a sediment is dependent on the degree of interconnection of the pore spaces, which are thus utilized during fluid migration through the sediment.

Submicroscopic porosity (in places mistakenly termed 'chalky' porosity) is present in chalks, mudrocks and some altered detrital grains. Efficient impregnation with coloured resin within these sediments will demonstrate the presence of submicroscopic porosity under a good petrographic microscope; further

Table 5.5. Explanation of original quartz, feldspar and rock fragment end members used for the triangular plots of Fig. 5.10. Compiled from Folk (1974b)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Mineral</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Association</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>Quartz</td>
<td>All detrital quartz grains plus metaquartzite clasts (but not chert)</td>
<td>Mature sediments with little tectonic or igneous activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Feldspar</td>
<td>All detrital feldspars (whether orthoclase, microcline or plagioclase) plus granite and gneiss clasts</td>
<td>Post-tectonic granite intrusions plus uplift of basement metamorphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RF</td>
<td>Rock fragments (chert, slate, schist, carbonates, sandstone, mudrock, etc.)</td>
<td>Rapid uplift and erosion rate; more detailed associations possible on prevalence of rock fragment types</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 5.10. Average modal compositions of groups of sandstones from different tectonic environments. This technique is only valid where many different sandstone modal compositions are available and cannot be used for single sandstone samples (modified from Folk, 1974b). Component details are documented in Table 5.5.
research on its fabrics and genesis requires electron microscopy.

5.3.2 Compaction fabrics

In thin section grainy sediments commonly show evidence of compaction, the result of progressive increase in overburden during burial. Before cementation, compaction takes place dominantly by mechanical processes, with slippage between individual grains, grain reorientation and subsequent fracture of some grains. With increase in overburden pressure, more stress is placed on the grain to grain contacts and compaction starts to proceed by chemical processes.

COMPACTION BY MECHANICAL PROCESSES

Compaction by mechanical processes involves movement by slippage between grains and the breakage, or fracture, of individual grains; as such it is sometimes termed brittle compaction. Any increase in overburden pressure in an unconsolidated sediment tends to result in a denser configuration of that sediment by movement between the individual grains.
Fig. 5.14. Major diagenetic regimes (see also Table 5.6).

Fig. 5.15. Theoretical cross-section showing near-surface diagenetic environments.
Fig. 5.16. Porosity types: (a) Intergranular porosity in aeolian sandstone; sandstone has been impregnated with coloured epoxy to demonstrate porosity. Cretaceous, Loch Aline Sandstone, Argyll, UK. (b) Intragranular porosity within foraminifer test in poorly cemented carbonate sands; sample has been impregnated with coloured epoxy to demonstrate porosity. Holocene, Shark Bay, western Australia. (c) Secondary porosity (arrowed) resulting from feldspar dissolution; clays indicate original shape of grain. If the clays were removed by flushing, an oversized pore would result. Sandstone was cemented prior to feldspar dissolution or pore space would not have been preserved. Cretaceous, Woodbine Formation, subsurface Arkansas, USA. Photomicrograph courtesy of Dr W. Ward, UNO. (d) Secondary, intragranular porosity (arrowed), resulting from partial dissolution of aragonitic ooid coatings. Surrounding cement, which maintains sediment fabric, is low Mg calcite. Pleistocene, Shark Bay, western Australia. (e) ‘Expansion’ porosity, later occluded by calcite, in fitted-texture grainstone. Fractures surrounded individual grains after fitted-texture had been developed. Jurassic, Smackover Formation, east Texas, USA.

Fig. 5.17. Shelter porosity and brittle fracture: (a) Shelter porosity created by large platy benthic foraminifer bridging pore space. Grains (oooids, superficial ooids and peloids) are packed on top of foraminifer, whereas shelter porosity (here later occluded by calcite cement) is maintained below. Eocene carbonates, east India. (b) Brittle fracture of foraminifer, a result of increase in overburden pressure before cementation. Brittle fracture has destroyed shelter porosity. Fractures have since been healed by calcite cement. Eocene carbonates, east India.
Fig. 5.18. Brittle fracture: (a) Brittle fracture of large foraminifer and thin-walled brachiopod (arrowed) in carbonate wackestone. Permian, Cadeby Formation, Yorkshire, UK. (b) Brittle fracture and deformation of detrital mica flake in sandstone; acicular carbonate cement has later grown around mica. Lower Carboniferous, Lower Crag Point Sandstone, Northumberland, UK. (c) Brittle fracture in plant material; section through conifer wood from peat showing collapse of earlier, central cells. Reflected light, oil immersion. Palaeocene, North Dakota, USA (from Ting, 1977). (d) Brittle fracture after formation of secondary porosity. Flushing by fluids during diagenesis has caused ooids to dissolve, leaving framework of dolominitized circumgranular cements which have since fractured (arrowed). Jurassic, subsurface Smackover Formation, east Texas, USA. (e) Brittle fracture of clay coatings. Clay coatings originally formed around altering feldspar grain, which has since completely dissolved (cf. Fig. 5.16c) leading to collapse of clay coatings. Surrounding pore space maintained by earlier cementation of quartz sand grains. Cretaceous, Tuscaloosa Formation, subsurface Arkansas, USA. Photomicrograph courtesy of Dr W. Ward, UNO.

Fig. 5.19. Solution compaction between individual grains (porosity is stippled throughout): (a) Point grain to grain contacts (arrowed). (b) Stressed grain to grain contacts (large arrows), leading to formation of dislocations in crystal lattice and subseqent dissolution, with lateral fluid transport of solutes (small arrows). (c) Planar grain to grain contacts. (d) Interpenetrating grain to grain contacts. (e) Sutural grain to grain contacts.

Solution compaction between grains reduces the effective intergranular porosity within a grainy sediment (Scholle, 1979, p. 162). Solution compaction between grains reduces the effective intergranular porosity within a grainy sediment (Fig. 5.19b) and is therefore important in ductile deformation so that, in places, they simulate a dispersed clay matrix (Scholle, 1979, p. 162).
reservoir evaluation; in some cases solution compaction may account for most of the overall porosity reduction. Considerable solution compaction between grains indicates that cementation did not take place until relatively late in the diagenetic history of the sediment. This may be a factor of environment of deposition, or a consequence of rapid sedimentation rates, particularly in carbonate environments. The relative timing of solution compaction and cementation is important in reservoir evaluation (Fig. 5.21).

During solution compaction, the area immediately adjacent to the stressed grain to grain contact is taken into solution and may be flushed away from the immediate area by pore fluid migration. These solutes are thought to be the origin of cements within the subsurface, either as quartz overgrowth cements (e.g. Sibley & Blatt, 1976) or as calcite cements. They may be precipitated locally (Thompson, 1959) or carried for some distance in solution (Bathurst, 1975; Wanless, 1979). For example, Moore (1985) attributed the formation of zoned burial cements to be the result of former grain to grain solution compaction within the surrounding Jurassic grainstones, whereas James, Wilmar & Davidson (1986) concluded that the Nugget Sandstone is an overall exporter of silica, despite the development of some quartz overgrowth cements.

As cementation proceeds in clean sandstones or grainstones, or the matrix in clayey-sandstones and packstones becomes lithified, pressure is transmitted through the whole rock and there is no excess of stress at the grain to grain contacts. Solution compaction between individual grains therefore ceases, but continues over a much wider area along stylolites, seams and sutures within the sediment. Stylolites are commonly formed within carbonate sediments where cementation takes place early in the sediment's diagenetic history.

**Table 5.7. Common diagenetic processes which affect detrital grain types, after McBride (1985).**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grain Type</th>
<th>Processes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>K-feldspar</td>
<td>calcitized zeolitized dissolved kaolinitized albitized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbonate rock fragments</td>
<td>dissolved dolomitized recrystallized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Micaceous metamorphic rock fragments</td>
<td>mashed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Claystone/shale/siltstone rock fragments</td>
<td>dissolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biotite</td>
<td>dissolved argillized</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPACTION BY CHEMICAL PROCESSES II: SOLUTION COMPACTION IN CEMENTED SEDIMENTS**

Styolites and solution seams are present within many sediment types (Heald, 1955,1959; Thompson, 1959; Weller, 1959; Trumit, 1966; Brown, 1969; Bathurst, 1975; Logan & Semeniak, 1976; Minram, 1977; Wanless, 1979; Gillett, 1983 and others). Both styolites and solution seams transect the cemented sediment and develop perpendicular to the axis of maximum stress, which may be either overburden pressure or tectonic stress. Because styolites and solution seams are zones of preferential solution within a sediment, small fragments of less soluble minerals tend to accumulate along the solution seam.

Thus, in immature sandstones and carbonates, clay minerals may become concentrated along a seam. Both Weyl (1959) and Oldershaw & Scoffin (1967)
documented how stylolites and solution seams preferentially develop in clay-rich layers in carbonate sediments, with the solution residue accumulating in stylolites (Logan & Semeniuk, 1976) (Fig. 5.22a).

Wanless (1979) proposed that there were three basic styles of solution compaction, dependent on the maturity of the sediments and the responsiveness of the various units (Fig. 5.23). He demonstrated that pervasive (or non-seam) solution compaction may result in considerable reductions in thickness (commonly up to 50% and more, rarely as much as 80%) of finely crystalline carbonate units. The more visible solution seams (whether high-amplitude stylolites, microstylolite swarms, or fine clay seams) may also represent considerable amounts of dissolution in the subsurface. With high-amplitude stylolites, the minimum dissolution is equivalent to the maximum amplitude of the stylolite (Fig. 5.22b, c).

Until the last ten years most authors thought that solution seam and stylolite formation took place during deep burial diagenesis. Recently, however, Shinn & Robbin (1983) have demonstrated the formation of stringers, superficially very similar to solution seams, forming in Recent Bahamian muds under relatively low pressures (6.784 psi, equivalent to burial depths of approximately 2,000 m) over short periods of time. These stringers were composed of organic matter, principally sea grasses. In Mississippian carbonates of the United States,
Fig. 5.22. Solution compaction in cemented sediments:
(a) Thin, low-amplitude, stylocumulate in silty carbonate mudstone. Quartz silt and clay minerals are concentrated along the stylocumulate. Jurassic, subsurface Gilmer Formation, east Texas, USA.
(b) High-amplitude stylolite in carbonate mudstone. Fine residue (probably clay minerals) emphasizes the line of the stylolite. Permian, Yates Formation, New Mexico, USA.
(c) Tracing of stylolite from (b). Minimum dissolution that has taken place is distance $D$, (here 2,400 $\mu$m [2.4 mm]), the greatest amplitude between adjacent peaks of the stylolite.
(d) Low magnification photomicrograph of the ooid grainstone of Fig. 5.21(c), showing high-amplitude stylolite (arrowed), cutting echinoderm overgrowth cements and post-compaction, intergranular cements. Jurassic, subsurface Gilmer Formation, east Texas, USA.
(e) Medium- to low-amplitude microstylolites in silty carbonate mudstone. Jurassic, subsurface Gilmer Formation, east Texas, USA.

Meyers (1980) and Meyers & Hill (1983) have demonstrated mechanical and chemical compaction at less than 2,000 m burial depth with initiation of chemical compaction at depths of 'tens to hundreds of metres'. Earlier, Beall & Fischer (1969) had observed that the transition from mechanical compaction to solution compaction occurs at around 250 m sediment depth in some North Atlantic DSDP sites. Harris (Meyers, 1984 personal communication) has found that high amplitude stylolites formed at burial depths of less than 1,000 m in the Burlington Formation (Mississippian). This combined evidence indicates that some stylolite and solution seam formation can take place during shallow burial; these solution features should not, therefore, be used as evidence for deep burial.

The timing and mode of formation of stylolites remains an area of contention in sedimentary petrography, although many stylolites show evidence of at least some component of their formation relative-
G. HARWOOD

138

SUTURED SEAM SOLUTION
Stylolites, grain contact solution sutures
Clean limestone with structurally resistant elements

NON-SUTURED SEAM SOLUTION
Microstylolites, swarms, seams
Clayey limestones

NON-SEAM SOLUTION
Pervasive solution-dolomitization
Clean limestone without resistant elements

Fig. 5.23. Basic styles of solution compaction in carbonates (from Wanless, 1979). These styles can also be used to describe solution compaction in siliciclastic sediments.

ly late, if not necessarily deep, in the diagenetic history of their containing sediment (Fig. 5.22d).

However and whenever they form, stylolites and solution seams are important in reservoir evaluation. Koepnick (1985) has demonstrated how stylolites act as migration barriers; dense stylolomuculates in particular are barriers to fluid migration. Stylolites with little insoluble residue and high amplitudes may, however, be pathways of preferential fluid migration, and may remain open, or be later filled by cements. Solution compaction along seams may involve dissolution of considerable volumes of minerals, commonly quartz and calcite; these solutes may locally source cementation, lessening the permeability of the zone surrounding the solution seams (Wong & Oldershaw, 1981). However, some authors (notably Scholle, 1971 and Wachs & Heiin, 1974) are of the opinion that pressure solution is too late to account for the origin of most burial cements. More recently, Scholle & Halley (1985) concluded that, although solution compaction features are widespread in many rocks, as is evidence of late cemen-

tation, connecting the two processes in most instances requires a 'leap of faith'.

ESTIMATION OF AMOUNTS OF COMPACTATION

Although there are many qualitative studies demonstrating the wide distribution of mechanical and chemical compaction fabrics, published quantitative results are considerably rarer. Measurement of stylolite amplitudes (Fig. 5.22b, c) or of solution seam thickness provides only a minimum estimate of the amount of sediment removed (Stockdale, 1926; Mossop, 1972) and becomes more difficult with low amplitude stylolites and solution seams (Fig. 5.22f).

Volume reductions in carbonates of approximately 40% were detailed by Dunnington (1967) and Park & Schot (1968, p. 73); similar calculations are lacking for other sediments. Perhaps a future valid contribution to this field could be made by a combination of experimental simulation of mechanical and chemical compaction in conjunction with the use of computer imagery in volume reconstruction; at present we only know compaction is extremely effective at reducing both absolute volume and porosity in many sediments.

5.3.5 Cementation

Many different minerals form cements. Quartz and calcite are perhaps the most common but chlorite, clay minerals, hematite, dolomite, siderite, aragonite, phosphates and evaporite minerals (particularly halite) also occur as cements, as do zeolites, particularly in volcanogenic sediments (Table 5.1). More rarely, hydrocarbons may also form a cement. Although the mineralogy may differ, the relationships between the various generations of cements and their adjacent grains enable the timing of cementation relative to other diagenetic events to be evaluated (Fig. 5.21). Many cements can be clearly recognized using a combined transmitted-reflected light petrological microscope. However, cathodoluminescence (Chapter 6) can give additional information on crystal growth directions and can aid elucidation of many cement relationships; it is an important adjunct for the study of many carbonate, quartz and feldspar cements. Staining (Chapter 4) and blue light emission spectroscopy (Dravis & Yurewicz, 1985) may also aid evaluation of some diagenetic sequences, particularly in carbonates. In addition, scanning electron microscopy, both of solid specimens and of etched thin sections (e.g. Sandberg, 1985), can be used to confirm further deductions based on thin section petrography (see Chapter 8).

Conformable cements may form as an overgrowth on existing grains within a sediment, in many places growing in optical continuity with a substrate of the same mineralogy (e.g. Fig. 5.21c). Alternatively, cements may nucleate on grains as separate, or disconformable, crystals (Fig. 5.22a), or they may grow from a few nucleation points so that they enclose the grains as polikolitic cements (Fig. 5.22b); they may be the same mineralogy as the grains they enclose. The morphology of these separate, disconformable crystal cements is, in many cases, dependent on the diagenetic environment and contained fluids in which they form (e.g. Folk, 1974a; Longman, 1980), although growth kinetics (Given & Wilkinson, 1985) are also an important factor. A summary of the many descriptive terms used in petrologic identification of cement morphology is given in Fig. 5.25.

CEMENT TYPES I: GRAIN OVERGROWTH CEMENTS

Grain overgrowth cements (or conformable cements) commonly develop on quartz and feldspar detrital grains and on some skeletal carbonate fragments (Fig. 5.26). Quartz overgrowth cements can be clearly recognized using a petrological microscope if clay- or hematite-rich coatings (commonly inaccurately termed 'dust' rims) are trapped between overgrowth cement and grain (Fig. 5.26a, b). More rarely, two coatings may become trapped, indicating two stages of development of the overgrowth cement. Where no such coatings are present, quartz overgrowth cements are much more difficult to recognize. Such cements are, however, typically inclusion-free (or, at least, inclusion-poor) and thus, with care, may be distinguished from the parent grain. Further, if sufficient intergranular pore space is present within the sediment, the overgrowth cements will develop planar euhedral crystallographic faces (Fig. 5.26c, d), although it should be remembered that continued enlargement of the overgrowth cements will lead to compromise boundaries between the cements. Such compromise boundaries may be difficult to distinguish from compacted fabrics: cathodoluminescence can, in some cases,
Fig. 5.24. Disconformable crystal cements: (a) Multiple nucleation sites, resulting in circumgranular, acicular, aragonitic cements growing on skeletal fragments in modern, shallow-water, carbonate sands. Crossed polars. Recent, US Virgin Islands.
(b) Few nucleation sites, resulting in poikilotopic calcite cement enclosing quartz grains; two calcite cement crystals only are present, their boundary is arrowed. Crossed polars. Permian, Yellow Sands, Co. Durham, UK.

Cement terminology | Less correct terminology | Description
--- | --- | ---
needle (or fine acicular) | whisker | thin (10 μm) cements of single or en echelon crystals; form in or near soil zone
pendant or microstalactitic | pendant or microstalactitic | cement forms on 'droplets' beneath grains within vadose zone
meniscus | acicular | thin straight long form (≈ 10 μm × 300 μm +), typical of marine phreatic zone
peloidal | fibrous | dark, microcrystalline irregular coating to grains and pores; marine phreatic organ
'micritic' or microcrystalline | 'micritic' or microcrystalline | microcrystalline cement coats grains and may form 'bridges' between grains; marine phreatic environment
columnar | columnar | equal thickness acicular cements surround grains; characterize marine phreatic environments
circumgranular isopachous acicular | circumgranular isopachous acicular | equidimensional cements surround grains; typical of meteoric phreatic regime
equant | blocky | cement is in optical continuity with grain substrate; form during burial diagenesis
overgrowth | sparry | coarse cement crystals (≈ 300 μm), commonly equidimensional; typify burial environments
sparry | poikilotopic | coarse cement crystals with undulose extinction; characterize deep burial environments
baroque (or saddle) | baroque (or saddle) | coarse cement crystals enclose grains; form in phreatic, commonly burial, regime

Fig. 5.25. Summary diagram of descriptive terms used for cement morphologies. For scale, grains shown have an average diameter of 500 μm.
Fig. 5.26. Grain overgrowth cements I: (a) Thin quartz overgrowth cements (arrowed) adjacent to open pore (P). Overgrowth cements grew on rounded and subrounded grains, Permian, Penrith Sandstone, Cumbria, UK. (b) Crossed polars photomicrograph of (a), showing composite nature of detrital quartz grain plus optical continuity of overgrowth cements with their substrate. Haematite-rich coatings (arrowed) define detrital grain surfaces. (c) Planar, euhedral faces of quartz overgrowth cements, which have grown into pore spaces (P). Cement thickness varies around pore space and is partially a function of crystal orientation and subsequent growth direction. Haematite-rich coatings on detrital grain surfaces are clearly visible. Permian, Penrith Sandstone, Cumbria, UK. (d) Crossed polars photomicrograph of (c). Note optical continuity of overgrowth cement on strained, detrital quartz grain (Q). Altered feldspar grain (F) has no overgrowth cement.

Fig. 5.27. Grain overgrowth cements II: (a) Echinoderm overgrowth cements in crinoidal grainstone. Original grains (G) appear greyer than overgrowth cements as they include traces of the original internal pores plus some microdolomite crystals. Overgrowth cements occlude intergranular porosity and form compromise boundaries. Mississippian, Burlington Formation, Illinois, USA. Sample courtesy of W.B. Meyers, SUNY. (b) Crossed polars photomicrograph of (a), demonstrating optical continuity of overgrowth cements and occlusion of intergranular porosity. (c) Echinoid overgrowth cement on echinoderm spine from winnowed carbonate tubidite. Overgrowth cement grew in deep water (>1000 m) sediment. Miocene, Site 626, ODP Leg 101, Straits of Florida. Sample courtesy of ODP. (d) Radiating overgrowth cements (arrowed) on planktonic foraminifer. Cements grow in optical continuity with radial calcite of foraminifer test in deep water (>1000 m) sediment. Miocene, Site 626, ODP Leg 101, Straits of Florida. Sample courtesy of ODP.
be used for this purpose (Sippel, 1968). Scholle (1979, pp. 112–3) used photomicrographs and SEM photographs to demonstrate the progressive development of quartz overgrowth cements with concomitant reduction of porosity. Quartz grains with overgrowth cements may be reworked into younger sediments (see Fig. 5.11) where their importance is commonly underestimated (Sanderson, 1984). Reworked grains with overgrowth cements are recognized by the lack of interlocking overgrowths, the presence of quartz overgrowth cements on isolated grains and, less commonly, the presence of rounded or broken terminations (Scholle, 1979). Caution also has to be expressed where thin sections contain possible volcanic quartz grains; these can exhibit zonation and rounding which closely mimic quartz overgrowth cements. However, the presence of microlites and vacuoles in the outer rim distinguishes these volcanic fabrics from those of overgrowth cements.

Overgrowth cements on feldspars and carbonate echinoderm fragments are similar to quartz overgrowth cements in that they contain few or no inclusions or are commonly in optical continuity with the parent grain (Fig. 5.27a, b). Chemically, feldspar overgrowth cements are commonly the pure sodium or potassium feldspar end members and are rarely calcite; clear overgrowth cements may surround partially altered feldspar grains (e.g. Heald, 1956). Echinoderm grains contain a regular pattern of internal pores which contrast with the surrounding, inclusion-free overgrowth cements (e.g. Figs 5.21 and 5.27a, b). The echinoderm grains may also contain small solid inclusions of dolomite, euhedral or subhedral, the microdolomites of Meyers & Lohmann (1978), which result from the alteration of the original high Mg calcite skeleton to low Mg calcite and dolomite.

Overgrowth cements on echinoderm fragments are commonly a relatively early phase in the diagenetic history of a sediment, both in shallow water carbonates (Fig. 5.27a, b) (Meyers, 1980) and in deep water carbonate turbidites (Fig. 5.27c) (Schlager & James, 1978; Reid & Mazzullo, 1985, personal communication). In both shallow and deep water examples the origin of the overgrowth cement calcite is generally thought to be from aragonitic dissolution during early diagenesis, although modifications of sea water chemistry with ocean depth and with shallow burial may be in part responsible.

Overgrowth cements also form on some more complex carbonate grains, including planktonic foraminifers (Fig. 5.27d). It is noticeable that overgrowth cements only develop on biogenic carbonate grains, and do not form where the skeletal wall has been heavily bored by fungi or algae (thus forming a 'micrite' envelope).

The timing of the development of quartz overgrowth cements is more variable. Many sandstones with overgrowth cements exhibit little solution compaction at grain-to-grain contacts (Fig. 5.26c, d); the source of silica in such sediments can only partially be derived from the solution compaction and may largely result from the dissolution of opaline silica.
Fig. 5.30. Carbonate cements I: (a) Low Mg calcite meniscus cements (arrowed) forming in ooid grainstone subaerial dune. Holocene, Joulters Cay, Bahamas. Sample courtesy of C.H. Moore, LSU. (b) Low Mg calcite needle cements in aeolian dune. Pleistocene, Yucatan, Mexico. Sample courtesy of W.B. Ward. (c) *Microcodium* (M), a low Mg calcite growth form associated with root zones. Pleistocene, Yucatan, Mexico. (d) Acicular, isopachous, circumgranular cements in shallow marine grainstone, acicular cements may have been aragonite, since converted to low Mg calcite with a high degree of textural preservation, or originally low or high Mg calcite. Mississippian, Moyvoughly Beds, Co. Meath, Ireland. Modern acicular, circumgranular, aragonite cements are shown in Fig. 5.24(a). (e) High Mg calcite, peloidal, circumgranular cements (opaque) coating grains, with later acicular aragonite cements growing into intergranular porosity. Holocene, San Salvador, Bahamas. (f) Microcrystalline, aragonite, circumgranular cements on aragonite grains. Cements are not isopachous and form distinct bridges between grains; textures are very different from 'micrite envelopes'. Crossed polars. Recent, US Virgin Islands.
Fig. 5.31. Carbonate cements II: (a) Columnar, isopachous, circumgranular cements on ooids and ooid-coated echinoderm fragments. Remaining porosity is occluded by equant low Mg calcite cements. Lower Carboniferous, Brofiscin Oolite Formation, Glamorgan, UK. Photomicrograph courtesy of K. Hird and M.E. Tucker, University of Durham, UK.
(b) Acicular, aragonite, ‘ray’ cements which grew within a reef cavity, later filled by internal sediment (IS). ‘Ray’ fans exhibit sweeping extinction. Crossed polars. Recent, Jamaica. Photomicrograph taken courtesy of C.H. Moore, LSU.
(c) Radial acicular calcite cements, showing characteristic curved cleavages of crystals; crystals are now low Mg calcite but analysis (M.C. Akhurst, personal communication) indicates they were originally high Mg calcite. Growth direction was from right to left. Mississippian, Carbonate mound core, Co. Galway, Ireland.
(d) Compromise boundaries (arrowed) formed by columnar cements competing for growth in intergranular pore spaces in ooid grainstone (see also Harwood & Moore, 1984). Jurassic, subsurface Smackover Formation, east Texas, USA.
(e) Equant low Mg calcite cements in exposed ooid grainstone. Holocene, Joulters Cay, Bahamas.
(f) Baroque (or saddle) dolomite cement (D) in ooid grainstone. Dolomite is inclusion-rich and shows undulose extinction. Calcite spar cement (C) occludes remaining pore space. Crossed polars. Jurassic, subsurface Gilmer Formation, east Texas, USA.
In other sandstones, quartz overgrowth cements do not form until after considerable solution compaction; here the solution compaction can be the major source of silica, although reactions between clay minerals in immature sandstones may also contribute silica (Fig. 5.28) (Bjørlykke, 1983).

CEMENT TYPES II: DISCONFORMABLE CRYSTAL CEMENTS

Disconformable crystal cements nucleate as separate crystals on sediment grains and, as such, are distinct from overgrowth cements. The size and number of these crystals are largely dependent on...
the composition of the enclosing pore fluids and on the availability of the substrate to provide nucleation sites. Thus circumgranular (or rim) cements (Fig. 5.24a) form where there are many nucleation sites on a sediment grain, whereas psilolithotopic cements (Fig. 5.24b) are the result of few nucleation sites and, in general, slower crystal growth. Characterization of the diverse morphologies of cements formed in modern diagenetic environments of rapid cementation has aided recognition of ancient analogues, particularly for near-surface carbonate diagenetic environments (for summaries see Longman, 1980; James & Choquette, 1983, 1984; Harris, Kendall & Lerche, 1985). These, plus the carbonate cements formed during burial diagenesis are summarized in Fig. 5.29 with examples in Figs 5.30, 5.31 and 5.32; relevant additional comments on these diagenetic environments are included below.

**VADOSE AND SHALLOW MARINE CARBONATE CEMENTS**

Although the cement morphologies summarized in Fig. 5.29 occur principally in carbonate sediments, quartz meniscus cements have been described from sandstones (e.g. Scholle, 1979, p. 114) and may comprise partial overgrowth cements. Near-surface carbonate cements also occur in quartzose sandstones but do not, however, form so readily on quartz grains (Fig. 5.30b, c). This may be partly a factor of reduced possible nucleation sites and partly a result of the decreased supply of calcium carbonate. Siliciclastic sediments in general remain almost un cemented until buried to depths of 1000 m or more, whereas carbonate sediments are commonly cemented at or near the sediment–water interface, or in subaerial environments. Indirect evidence of vadose diagenesis in carbonates comes from 'fitted-textures' (Fig. 5.16e), where expansion and or dissolution of pre-existing cement phases are of a single mineralogy (e.g. Fig. 5.24a, 5.30d, 5.31b, c). However, although the mineralogies may differ, the cement morphologies are commonly similar, thus enabling interpretation of ancient early diagenetic environments.

**BURIAL CEMENTS**

Carbonate burial cements are commonly coarsely crystalline, and include baroque dolomite and calcite spar (Fig. 5.31f), in places zoned. Burial cements in other sediments are composed of a complex range of mineralogies, not all of which are readily distinguishable with a petrological microscope (Table 5.1). Some are finely crystalline (clay minerals, hematite, limonite), others are coarsely crystalline (similar to carbonate burial cements) and commonly psilolithotopic, whereas yet others are both coarsely crystalline and, to some extent, appear to replace the host sediment (anhydrite, halite, phosphates, glauconite) (Fig. 5.33a). Quartz overgrowth cements are a further common burial cement, although their presence alone is not an indication of deep burial. In siliciclastic sediments careful attention to petrographic detail, particularly the compaction history, is necessary to determine whether a cement formed during deep burial (>2,000 m) or at an earlier stage in the diagenetic history.

At whatever stage in the diagenetic history of the sediment they form, cements are a record of the fluctuating pore water history of a sediment. Numerous, clearly identifiable stages of cementation in a sediment are evidence of changes in pore water chemistry and saturation states, even if all the precipitated phases are of a single mineralogy (e.g. Fig. 5.33b). More important, perhaps, is the evidence given by the termination of precipitation of a cement phase, indicating a decrease in saturation, or super-saturation, of that phase within the pore fluid and, in places, dissolution of pre-existing cement phases when undersaturated pore fluids are introduced into a sediment. Analysis of the chemistry and isotopic compositions of the various cement phases can give
Fig. 5.35. Corrosion and dissolution of grains: (a) Corrosion of detrital quartz grain margins (arrowed) by migrating pore fluids prior to precipitation of poikilotopic calcite cement (C). Adjacent grain margins (G) show no corrosion but planar margins from euhedral overgrowth cements. Permian, Penrith Sandstone, Cumbria, UK.

(b) Corrosion of precursor dolomite. Dolomitization of former carbonate grains with micrite envelopes has resulted in coarsely crystalline dolostone with remnants of micrite envelopes preserved. Subsequent corrosion of dolomite crystals has led to truncation of micrite relics (arrowed) with later porosity occlusion by calcite. This apparent replacement of dolomite by calcite is termed calcitization or, less correctly, dedolomitization. Section stained with Alizarin red S. Permian, Cadby Formation, Yorkshire, UK.

(c) Corrosion along cleavages in dolomite, probably an effect of recent weathering. Dolomite within 5 mm of pore space has been corroded along cleavage planes with subsequent precipitation of iron oxides, defining amount of dissolution. Further away from pore space (bottom right corner of photomicrograph) dolomite remains uncorroded. Permian, Cadby Formation, Yorkshire, UK.

(d) Corrosion and secondary porosity formation along cleavage planes in feldspar. Impregnation has shown intragranular porosity (arrowed) within feldspar grains. Carboniferous, Upper Crag Point Sandstone, Northumberland, UK.
5.3.4 Dissolution fabrics

Dissolution in the subsurface generates secondary porosity (Choquette & Pray, 1970) (Section 5.3.1). This may not necessarily be large-scale dissolution (e.g. Fig. 5.16d), but may result only in slight corrosion of the detrital grains or pre-existing cements in the sediment. Dissolution may be very subtle, with dissolution of calcic plagioclase whereas albite and potassium feldspar are not affected (Boles, 1984). In carbonates preferential solution of some grain types (e.g. Harris & Kendall, 1986) occurs in what would otherwise appear to be a chemically homogeneous sediment. The delicate textural changes commonly encountered in studies of dissolution fabrics emphasize the importance of effective impregnation of the sediment prior to thin section making; this is not only essential to identify plucked grains, or grains partially plucked from their matrix as opposed to secondary porosity, but is also necessary for reflected light petrography of grain and cement margins when investigating corrosion fabrics. Common dissolution fabrics (based on the work of several authors, e.g. Schmidt et al., 1977; Hayes, 1979; McBride, 1980; Shanmugan, 1985) are shown diagrammatically in Fig. 5.34.

CORROSION FABRICS

Initial dissolution leads to the corrosion of grain margins and cement terminations. This is common in many sediments and takes place adjacent to pore spaces as the result of flushing by undersaturated pore fluids and not, as is sometimes mistakenly stated, as the result of 'corrosive' growth of a later mineral phase (Section 5.3.5). Such corrosion may be selective, only effecting certain mineralogies, or non-selective, so that all existing minerals adjacent to pore spaces are corroded. Corrosion fabrics show grain margins and cement terminations to have a pitted or corrugated character (Fig. 5.35a) which in ore mineralogy is termed a 'caries' texture. If there is no later cementation, corrosion produces a more effective connection between pore spaces and thus

Fig. 5.36. Dissolution of grains and cements: (a) Dissolution of zones (arrowed) within carbonate cement crystals in former dolomite. Permian, Cadeby Formation, Yorkshire, UK. (b) Dissolution along cleavages in detrital feldspar grain (F) has resulted in isolated grain remnants which have collapsed within pore spaces. Surrounding quartz grains were cemented, largely by overgrowth cements, before feldspar dissolution. Complete dissolution of other detrital grains has led to formation of pore spaces (P), slightly oversized. Carboniferous, Upper Crag Point Sandstone, Northumberland, UK. (c) Isolated pore spaces (arrowed) formed from dissolution of replacive anhydrite in peloid grainstone. Lack of interconnection between pore spaces means they are ineffective as migration conduits for pore fluids. Porosity has subsequently been occluded by calcite. Permian, Cadeby Formation, Yorkshire, UK. (d) Interconnected secondary porosity formed by collapse after selective dissolution of some ooids. Fracture between oomolds produced linked 'chains' which were later used for hydrocarbon migration; black bitumen relics remain in pore spaces. Jurassic, subsurface Smackover Formation, east Texas, USA.
enhances existing porosity, whether this be primary or secondary. More commonly, however, the adjacent pore space is later occluded by cement (Fig. 5.35b) which may render the corrosion, if minor, more difficult to distinguish. Corrosion may also take place during the precipitation of what, superficially, appears to be a single cement phase; in carbonates this can be detailed using cathodoluminescence petrography (Chapter 6). Corrosion fabrics are very common in evaporite sediments, or sediments where there is a phase of evaporite mineral cementation, as these minerals are very soluble and hence susceptible to slight changes in fluid salinity (e.g. Schreiber, 1978).

**PENETRATIVE DISSOLUTION FABRICS**

More progressive selective dissolution of cements and grains within a sediment leads to attack of the whole mineral, commonly commencing by corrosion along cleavage planes (Fig. 5.35c, d). As dissolution proceeds, a honeycomb texture may result, particularly where a mineral has near rectilinear cleavages. Slight changes in mineral chemistry are also prone to selective dissolution (Fig. 5.36a), as are zones of less stable mineralogies (e.g. Ward & Halley, 1985). Continued dissolution will result in collapse of remaining grain fragments (Fig. 5.36b) and, in time, may remove the entire detrital grain (Fig. 5.16a), forming oversized pores. In addition, subsequent collapse of grain coatings, whether original or produced by earlier diagenetic alteration, may occur (Fig. 5.18d). Selective dissolution is restricted to less stable mineralogies and, in places, to strain boundaries within grains (McBride, 1983); it results in intragranular, or partial intragranular, secondary porosity (Schmidt et al., 1977). This enhanced porosity will only be effective if there is either a considerable proportion of the mineral, or minerals, susceptible to dissolution, so forming a connection between isolated intragranular pore spaces, or if there is an existing intergranular porosity. For example, the common dissolution of isolated evaporite minerals forms isolated, secondary pore spaces (Fig. 5.36c) which rarely enhance the effective porosity of a sediment. This contrasts with Fig. 5.36(d), where selective dissolution of some ooids, together with subsequent brittle collapse of the supporting framework, has formed an interconnecting fracture porosity.

It is very important to detail the amount of mineral dissolution that has taken place in the subsurface, especially where measurements of modal composition (Section 5.2.2) or provenance estimates (Section 5.2.4) are being made. McBride (1985, 1986) detailed dissolution and grain modification from the zone of weathering to the deep subsurface of heavy mineral grains, rock fragments and feldspars, resulting in an apparent composition very different from the original (Fig. 5.37). Dissolution of diagnostic minerals, together with alteration of others, can significantly modify original grain composition, particularly as the original grain can rarely be confidently identified (e.g. Fig. 5.36b). Modal composition and provenance studies can therefore only be partially accurate in many siliciclastic formations. Furthermore, the amount of dissolution/alteration must be assessed separately for each formation studied.

### 5.3.5 Alteration and replacement fabrics

Dissolution in the subsurface is commonly associated with mineral alteration and replacement. Within the subsurface, many minerals are altered to form either new minerals, or a new suite of minerals (commonly clay minerals) which grow on, or adjacent to, the site of the precursor grain or cement (e.g. Fig. 5.28). In contrast, replacive fabrics result both from the growth, during diagenesis, of individual, isolated crystals, or clusters of these minerals, and from large-scale or complete replacement of a pre-existing fabric. Replacement fabrics also result from the recrystallization of the alteration products of metastable minerals. These fabrics result from temperature and pressure increases and from interaction with migrating pore fluids, although alteration does not necessarily require the introduction of additional ions within these fluids.

**ALTERATION FABRICS**

During the temperature and pressure increases through burial and during migration of pore waters, many previously-stable minerals, or minerals which were deposited and buried too rapidly to become in equilibrium with surface temperatures and pressures, are brought into a regime where they are unstable in the prevailing conditions. These minerals break down to form more stable products, generally in the site of the original mineral (e.g. Fig. 5.16c); common examples are heavy minerals where, in US Gulf Coast sandstones, the degree of alteration has been related to burial depths (Fig. 5.38) (data of Milliken in McBride, 1985). Alteration of feldspars to clay minerals (Fig. 5.16c) and of argonite to low Mg calcite (Fig. 5.39a) also occurs. Unless later modified (e.g. Fig. 5.18d), alteration fabrics are recognizable as they mimic the form of the precursor mineral, even although the original texture is commonly destroyed to some extent.

**INDIVIDUAL MINERAL REPLACEMENT FABRICS**

Replacive minerals grow in the place of earlier mineral phases. They commonly cut across pre-existing grain and cement boundaries (Fig. 5.39b) and thus can be seen to post-date all phases they traverse. Most individual replacive minerals have euhedral, planar crystallographic faces although they may contain inclusions, remnants of their precursor phases (e.g. Figs 5.12d and 5.39c, d). Many have crystal forms much larger than their precursors; they therefore destroy the original fabric (Fig. 5.39b) (e.g. Assereto & Folk, 1980). However, some fabric retention may be achieved through abundant inclusions, although this is not always immediately apparent (Fig. 5.40a, b). True fabric retention is rare with individual replacement minerals, although it...
does occur where the replacive phase mimics the precursor mineral.

LARGE-SCALE REPLACEMENT FABRICS

Large-scale replacement can be either fabric-retentive (Fig. 5.40c) or fabric-destructive (Fig. 5.40d). Large-scale replacement occurs where sediments are reactive; it is common in evaporites (where fabrics are similar to many metamorphic textures), carbonates, volcanioclastics and, to a lesser degree, greywackes. Volcanioclastic sediments are extremely susceptible to alteration and dissolution. Mathisen (1984) documented secondary porosity enhancement of 40% in Plio–Pleistocene volcanioclastic sandstones from Indonesia in addition to alteration of many of the original grains and cements (e.g. feldspars, volcanic fragments, zeolites); this has occurred in burial depths of only 400–900 m. In greywackes there is commonly little secondary porosity generation, but considerable mineral alteration and recrystallization takes place within both rock fragments and matrix (Brenchley, 1969).

Where there is a monominerallic, or near-monominerallic, precursor fabric, as in carbonates and evaporites, replacement is commonly by a single mineral. Replacement within evaporite sequences is common, especially where potassium-rich minerals are present. Evaporites also replace large amounts of adjacent carbonate sediment (Fig. 5.40c), although the volume of carbonate replaced is difficult to ascertain. Harwood (1986) estimated that some 2–3 m of the uppermost Permian Cadby Formation has been replaced by (former) anhydrite within the subsurface of Yorkshire, but in other carbonate formations within the Zechstein Basin more considerable amounts of replacement have probably taken place. One common form of large-scale replacement in carbonate sediments is dolomitization (Fig. 5.40c, d).

TIMING OF DISSOLUTION, ALTERATION AND REPLACEMENT

The timing of dissolution, alteration and replacement can be established relative to other diagenetic events. For example, Loucks, Dodge & Galloway
Fig. 5.40. Mineral replacement and large-scale replacement fabrics:
(a) Large lath of anhydrite (A) replacing ooid grainstone. Ooids had little or no early circumgranular cements and grain to grain compaction occurred with formation of interpenetrating grain to grain contacts before precipitation of intergranular calcite cements. Anhydrite replacement took place after compaction and cementation. Anhydrite lath has minor rectilinear outlines (arrowed). Jurassic, subsurface Smackover Formation, Arkansas, USA.
(b) Crossed polars view of (a), with anhydrite lath in extinction position. Trails of small calcite inclusions, not apparent in normal transmitted light, define original fabric of ooid grainstone. The timing of anhydrite replacement, after compaction, is confirmed as ooid outlines are continuous from grainstone into anhydrite lath.
(c) Partial fabric retention during dolomitization; dolomitized ooid grainstone retains fabric of original isopachous circumgranular cements and form of ooids, although textures within the ooids are obliterated with formation of partial oomoldic porosity. Intragnanular porosity has been partially occluded by bitumen. Jurassic, subsurface Smackover Formation, east Texas, USA.
(d) Fabric destruction during dolomitization; dolomitization has produced coarse sub- to euhedral dolomite crystals with no vestige of original fabric and considerable variation in dolomite crystal size. Crystal size also varies according to position within sediment (Harwood, 1986). Permian, Cadeby Formation, Nottinghamshire, UK.
Fig. 5.41. Timing of replacement: (a) Dolomite rhombs in crinoid grainstone; dolomite has grown replacively after formation of crinoid overgrowth cements in crinoid grainstone of low porosity and permeability. Voids (arrowed) are the result of plucking during section-making and thus show false porosity. Section stained with alizarin red S. Mississippian, Burlington Formation, Illinois, USA. Sample courtesy of W.B. Meyers, SUNY.
(b) Dolomite rhombs in ooid grainstone; dolomite has formed after cementation of ooid grainstone and after partial dissolution and compaction of ooid (arrowed) (from Harwood & Moore, 1984). Jurassic, subsurface Smackover Formation, east Texas, USA.
(c) Dolomite and euhedral authigenic quartz growth after compaction and cementation. Ooid grainstone with interpenetrating grain to grain contacts and later intergranular calcite cements (see also Fig. 5.40a, b) with later replacive dolomite rhombs (D) and authigenic quartz crystals (Q). The relative timing of dolomite and quartz growth is not determinable as the two are not found intergrown. Jurassic, subsurface Smackover Formation, Arkansas, USA.
(c) Replacement of certain parts of detrital sedimentary grains; calcite of intergranular cement has replaced components of the derived sediment grains, leaving quartzose portions unreplaced. Permian, Yellow Sands, Co. Durham, UK.
(e) Crossed polars view of Fig. 5.40(d), showing that calcite within detrital grains is in optical continuity with poikilotopic intergranular calcite. Former mineralogy of replaced components cannot be determined.
Many sediments are more susceptible than others to change during diagenesis. The diagenetic changes which take place within a supermatue quartz sandstone are limited; quartz overgrowth cements may form, but, unless pore fluids are extremely aggressive, neither dissolution, alteration nor replacement of detrital quartz grains is likely to occur. The presence of feldspar grains within a sandstone renders it more susceptible to change during diagenesis as alteration, replacement or dissolution of these grains may take place. Feldspar grains therefore have a higher diagenetic potential than quartz grains, particularly to chemical change; mechanically, they are almost as rigid as quartz grains when fresh. Other minerals (e.g. pyroxenes, amphiboles, micas and many rock fragments) have a considerably higher potential for alteration and dissolution and are also less rigid. On a quartz—feldspar—rock fragments triangular diagram these more susceptible minerals plot together in one corner. Sandstones with compositions which plot in this area are therefore much more susceptible to diagenetic change than those with compositions nearer a quartz sandstone (Fig. 5.42); they thus have a much higher diagenetic potential.

Carbonate and evaporite sediments also have a high diagenetic potential. Many modern carbonate sediments are a mixture of aragonite and high Mg calcite, minerals which are theoretically unstable at surface temperatures and pressures. During early diagenesis these minerals rapidly change to low Mg calcite, either by dissolution/precipitation or by alteration. However, many ancient carbonates, particularly those in the Palaeozoic, have a somewhat lower diagenetic potential, being initially dominated—high and/or low Mg calcite. Evaporite sediments have a yet higher diagenetic potential than modern carbonate sediments, producing a near-metamorphic fabric. The diagenetic fabric of a sedimentary rock is therefore largely dependent on the original sediment composition, although fluctuating pore fluid compositions may govern the rate, the extent and the relative timing of diagenetic reactions.

5.4 CONCLUSIONS

Petrographic examination of thin sections can therefore reveal much information about the depositional and diagenetic history of the sediment. Recording of these data in a systematic manner is vital to its interpretation. This is best done by systematically working through a given series of points on a data
Components on triangular diagrams

1. Origin of components
2. Fabric of components
3. Three appropriate components

Fig. 5.43. Data sheets for systematically recording petrographic observations; sheet A is for terrigenous sediments and sheet B for carbonates. Sheets can be combined if all observational criteria are not itemized.


**Carbonate/evaporite sediments**

**Hand specimen**
- Colour: Fresh
- Weathered

**Induration:** Structures:
- Max.
- Min.
- Rock type (Durham class.)
- Skeletal clasts

**Sorting:**

**Thin section**

**Detrital grains**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skeletal types</th>
<th>Size (µm)</th>
<th>Roundness</th>
<th>Fragmentation</th>
<th>%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intraclasts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ooids</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pellets</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peloids</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quartz grains</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feldspar grains</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other detrital minerals</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Matrix**
- Evaporites
- Gypsum
- Anhydrite
- Halite
- Others

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Matrix</th>
<th>Evaporites</th>
<th>Gypsum</th>
<th>Anhydrite</th>
<th>Halite</th>
<th>Others</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>%</td>
<td>Size</td>
<td>Comments</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Diagenetic components**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cement type</th>
<th>%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Porosity**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Compaction (type and degree)**

**Components on triangular diagrams**

1. Origin of components
2. Fabric of components
3. Three appropriate components

**Diagenetic events**

**Sketch of key fabric(s)**

**Comments and interpretation**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location/well</th>
<th>Elevation/depth</th>
<th>Grain supported</th>
<th>Matrix supported</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Carbonate minerals**
- Calcite
- Fe-calcite
- Dolomite
- Fe-dolomite

**Terrigenous minerals**
- Quartz
- K feldspar
- Plagioclase
- Mica
- Others (biotite, amphib. etc.)

**Other minerals**
- Anhydrite
- Gypsum
- Halite
- Chert
- Others

**Cement**
- Anhydrite
- Gypsum
- Halite
- Chert
- Others

**Sedimentary structures**
- Rock name
- Matrix

**Skeletal components**
- Petrofabric evaluation should form an integral part of any study of basin evolution. As modern weathering masks many of these textures, petrographic studies are best carried out on subsurface samples whenever possible, particularly if samples are to be chemically analysed later. The study of petrographic fabrics forms the basis for later analytical research, both chemically and isotopically. Diagenetic fabrics are also linked to subsurface porosity evolution and hydrocarbon migration and closer future links with organic geochemists will evaluate potential interrelationships between these events. Perhaps the one point that should be emphasized is that extreme care should be taken in documentation and interpretation of petrofabrics, as one can be easily misled by what appears to be a straightforward thin section (Fig. 5.45)!

**Fig. 5.44.** Abridged data sheet of a type used by many petroleum company research laboratories.

**Fig. 5.45.** Things are not always as they seem! Dolomite rhombs replacing ooid grainstone have hollow centres with irregular outlines. These centres were originally interpreted as being the result of calcitization of the dolomite, thus accounting for the corrosive nature of the secondary calcite/dolomite margins. Closer investigation, however, demonstrates that the textures of the ooids and intergranular cements are continuous through the centres of the dolomite crystals and, when viewed in colour, the differences in stain colour persist from outside of to within the dolomite rhombs (arrowed). The dolomite therefore has only partially replaced the original carbonate and the hollow centres are a primary feature of the dolomite rhombs, representing unreplaced grains and cements. Interpenetrating and sutural grain to grain contacts between the ooids demonstrate that the diagenetic history of this sediment can be itemized as: (i) mechanical followed by dissolution compaction, (ii) precipitation of late intergranular ferroan calcite spar cements, and (iii) partial dolomitization. Jurassic, Smackover Formation, subsurface Arkansas, USA.
Cathodoluminescence microscopy

JOHN MILLER

6.1 INTRODUCTION

Luminescence is the emission of light from a solid which is 'excited' by some form of energy. The term broadly includes the commonly-used categories of fluorescence and phosphorescence. Fluorescence is said to occur where emission ceases almost immediately after withdrawal of the exciting source and there is no thermal cause, whereas in phosphorescence the emission decays for some time after removal of excitation. The distinction between these so-called types of luminescence is somewhat arbitrary and confusing; for example, many minerals have very long post-excitation decay times. Confusion is avoided by using the term luminescence, and specifying the activating energy as a descriptive prefix. Thus roentgenoluminescence is produced by X-rays, photoluminescence by light (e.g. ultraviolet) and cathodoluminescence (CL) results from excitation by electrons. Thermoluminescence results from heating.

Luminescence has been known in geological materials since 1604, when the alchemist Casierolo described light emission from barite. Nowadays the phenomenon is very familiar: CL provides our television pictures from excitation of chemical phosphors by the cathode-ray tube's electron beam. CL of minerals was first investigated systematically by Crookes (1880), who sealed diamonds, rubies and other gems into a discharge tube and observed their brilliant emission colours. This work was not followed up thoroughly by geologists until the advent of scanning electron microscopes and microprobes, some of these machines (see below), many ions are produced in addition to the electrons. These also enter the action volume and can induce damage in the uppermost layers of a thin section by remobilizing elements and homogenizing luminescence activators (see Section 6.2.2). Therefore, a thin section remaining in the beam for a long time may show a decrease in luminescence intensity as ion bombardment and thermal diffusion take place. According to Remond, Le Grosus & Okuzumi (1979), this change in CL is irreversible and the affected section must be repolished, removing the damaged layer. Certain minerals are very susceptible to irradiation damage, and may become permanently coloured after removal from the electron beam. For example, halite is 'electron-stained' blue in a few minutes, and Dickson (1980) reported a stable purple colouration in electron-ombarded fluorospar.

6.2 PHYSICAL EXPLANATION OF LUMINESCENCE

6.2.1 Excitation factors

An explanation of luminescence was not forthcoming until the development of quantum theory. Quantum approaches to luminescence are outlined by Nickel (1978), Martyn in (1979) and Walker (1985). The energy of a beta-ray (electron) is sufficient to excite an atom or molecule and cause a quantum jump, with the input energy being totally absorbed. After a short delay time (10⁻⁹ s) the excited atom or molecule returns to its former energy state and may emit radiation in the form of light, alpha-, beta- or gamma-rays. The wavelength of the emitted radiation is always longer than that of the exciting radiation. From a geological point of view, we are usually only interested in emission in the visible spectrum, although it should be noted that a proportion of emission in some minerals may be in the infra-red or ultraviolet (e.g. in feldspars).

The intensity of CL is a function of current density at the specimen and the voltage (accelerating potential) of the applied electron beam. The relationship of luminescence intensity to electron beam intensity is not a simple linear one, however, and moreover varies within the mineral families (Coy-yll, 1970).

Coy-yll (1970) also showed that, for a given crystalline solid, there is a point at which increasing the electron beam current ceased to produce greater luminescence intensity; he termed this the saturation level. Increasing beam energy beyond this level actually produces a decrease in luminescence intensity: this is the inhibition phase. For a given crystal, saturation occurs with beams of about 8 kV potential in feldspars but at more than 16 kV with quartz. In practical terms this means that attempting to elicit more luminescence from a mineral by simply increasing beam power can have the reverse effect if the saturation level is exceeded. Overly powerful beams are also likely to have a local heating effect, causing thermoluminescence. Thermoluminescence and CL spectra may then combine, giving a false impression of the luminescence colour. Intense, narrowly-focused beams may also cause local heating to the point of incandescence, particularly with more luminescent minerals. Further damage to preparations caused by local heating includes blistering of thin section bonding resins and even cracking of the glass slide.

Within that part of a sample bombarded by electrons (the 'reaction volume'), there are many effects other than cathodoluminescence. Secondary, back-scattered and auger electrons are produced, as well as X-rays. With suitable detectors, in scanning electron microscopes or microprobes, some of these effects can be used for analytical or imaging purposes. However, in cold cathode luminescence machines (see below), many ions are produced in addition to the electrons. These also enter the action volume and can induce damage in the uppermost layers of a thin section by remobilizing elements and homogenizing luminescence activators (see Section 6.2.2). Therefore, a thin section remaining in the beam for a long time may show a decrease in luminescence intensity as ion bombardment and thermal diffusion take place. According to Remond, Le Grosus & Okuzumi (1979), this change in CL is irreversible and the affected section must be repolished, removing the damaged layer. Certain minerals are very susceptible to irradiation damage, and may become permanently coloured after removal from the electron beam. For example, halite is 'electron-stained' blue in a few minutes, and Dickson (1980) reported a stable purple colouration in electron-ombarded fluorospar.

6.2.2 Luminescence centres

An excellent summary of the present knowledge of CL generation in minerals is given by Walker (1985), and only a simplified outline follows here. At any temperature, a real crystalline solid is in a state of dynamic unrest, with the various electrons and atoms in its lattice vibrating about their equilibrium positions. This state of energy is called 'ground state'. Few crystals are perfect. During normal growth, they may acquire defects from distorted internal structure between mosaic crystals, suffer omission defects where grounds of atoms or molecules are missing from lattice sites, have charge displacements (for example where there are abnormally ionized atoms), or undergo mechanical damage such as formation of distorted surfaces and cracks.

Upon excitation by an electron beam, such local sites of crystal imperfection are more liable to absorb energy from the beam than are neighbouring lattice sites. The domains of imperfection become centres of luminescence; they preferentially trap energy from the cathode beam which induces 'jumps' in their lattice electron orbitals. On subsequent decay to the resting state, photons are emitted and luminescence occurs.

The excitation—emission process is often temperature dependent. Cooling samples with liquid nitrogen, for example, increases CL efficiency in some minerals such as quartz, producing much greater luminescence intensity for a given beam energy. Other minerals, such as calcite, tend to emit less on cooling. Also, cooling can produce spectral...
shifts in emission wavelength, so although it may have potential uses for geological applications where CL emission at room temperature is meagre, the full effects of cooling are at present poorly known and the technique cannot be recommended as a regular practice for petrographic purposes.

Luminescence centres may occur in two general forms: intrinsic and extrinsic. Intrinsic centres are due to lattice imperfections such as growth distortions and other electronic lattice defects, acquired independently of the composition of the precipitating medium. Extrinsic centres are those acquired from the parent medium during crystallization, such as impurities in surface, regular lattice and interstitial sites, or compositional inhomogeneities between different parts of a crystal. In practice, it may be very difficult to determine the principal cause of CL in a mineral, as there are complex interactions between extrinsic and intrinsic centres.

Extrinsic luminescence centres may behave differently depending on their response to electron beam excitation, and the following types can be distinguished:

1. Activator centres: those where radiative transitions (luminescence) are highly probable as the energized centre returns to its ground state.

2. Trap centres: those where additional energy is required to raise the energy state sufficiently to produce luminescence on transition to the ground state.

3. Quencher centres: where even the excited state of the centre is close to a radiationless transition level, so little or no luminescence is emitted.

Extrinsic luminescence centres are the best known, and perhaps the easiest to detect by geochemical analysis, whereas the causes of intrinsic CL require detailed crystallographic and solid state physical investigation. Transition metal ions are the commonest activator impurities causing extrinsic CL, substituting in crystal lattices for normal ions with appropriate ionic radii. Rare earth elements, such as Eu²⁺, Sm³⁺ and Dy³⁺, are also implicated as inducing activator centres (Mariano & Ring, 1975).

In geological materials, luminescence is commonly controlled by the balance of activator and quencher centres. For example, Fe³⁺ is an activator in some feldspars, despite the quenching activity of Fe in calcite.

The colour (wavelength) and intensity of CL may also vary according to the sites in the crystal lattice where activator ion substitutions occur. Because of interactions between activators and quenchers, and between intrinsic and extrinsic luminescence centres, it is often difficult to be certain of the cause of luminescence in a given mineral. Nickel (1978) and Amieux (1982) summarized known emission colours and activators for many minerals but, in our present state of knowledge, these data should only be used as a guide.

Depending on the activator, a single excited mineral may radiate at several different wavelengths; for example,apatite CL may be green, yellow, pink, violet or white, with a variety of rare earths acting as activators. Activator and quencher ions may produce their effects at extremely low concentrations, below the detection limits of the electron microscope. Analytical techniques such as atomic absorption spectrophotometry and neutron activation analysis may be required for quantitative determination at such low levels. The surest method of identification of CL-activating ions is by analysing luminescence excitation spectra (Walker, 1983, 1985) and combining this with studies of emission spectra (Mariano & Ring, 1975).

6.3 EQUIPMENT

There are several ways of generating electron beams under vacuum: by stripping electrons from a hot filament, utilizing field effect or corona discharge from metal points; or by generating a plasma across a low pressure gas using a cold metal cathode disc. Zinkernagel (1978) and Ramseyer (1983) described a hot filament luminescence apparatus especially suitable for observation of very dull emission from quartz. While this equipment gives good results with such difficult cases, it is bulky and expensive, difficult to construct and maintain, and requires a high vacuum from diffusion pumps. Cold cathode machines are much less complex, easily mounted on a standard petrographic microscope and perfectly suited to most sedimentological requirements. They offer the advantages of cheapness, ease of operation and simple maintenance, and are ideal for routine petrographic purposes. Commercial CL machines (Figs 6.1 and 6.2) use the cold cathode method at present.

With the cold cathode system (Fig. 6.1), there are always sufficient positive ions in the vicinity of the specimen to prevent it acquiring a space charge, eliminating the need for pre-treatment of samples by evaporating a conductive coating on to them. Since a steady leak of gas must be maintained for plasma generation, a small rotary vacuum pump is adequate. In contrast to hot filament cathode systems, a sudden loss of vacuum causes no damage to the equipment. Beams can also be established at low accelerating voltages, thus reducing the risk of specimen damage.

There are, however, a number of disadvantages to cold cathode systems. Delicate arrangements are required to maintain the controlled gas leak and these are prone to wear and maintenance problems. The discharge plasma produces a blue glow which may interfere with luminescence observation, particularly with meagre emitters such as quartz: this problem may be overcome by using helium rather than air as the leak gas. Because of the presence of gas (usually air) in the system, a stream of positive and negative ions is also generated and this may induce sample damage. All of these effects mean that cold cathode equipment, while eminently convenient for qualitative work, is unsuitable for making reliable and precise observations on CL intensity and emission wavelengths (see Section 6.5). For this purpose a new generation of hot cathode machines must be developed.

6.3.1 Operation

Figure 6.1 shows a schematic cross-section of a typical CL apparatus. The electron beam is generated by applying a potential up to 30 kV between a small tungsten steel cathode disc and an applanar anode which lie within an evacuated glass tube. At low pressures, a plasma is established with a discharge of positive ions travelling towards the cathode. An electron beam (together with some negative ions) is emitted in the opposite direction, attracted towards the collimating anode and passing through its central hole. In the Nuclide Luminoscope® (Fig. CATHODOLUMINESCENCE MICROSCOPY 177
1) the beam then passes through a focussing coil, which carries a variable DC voltage to give control over the beam size impinging on the specimen. Narrow beams with high current density can be used for observation with high magnification lenses or on samples with poor CL; the beam can be also expanded to cover an area of several square centimetres. Therefore, monocular microscopes with CL samples are designed for use with transmitted light which can be provided at any required intensity, manufacturers mostly pay little attention to this parameter. Luminescence is rarely more than 1% efficient and thus of comparatively low intensity. Marshall (1980) investigated the behaviour of several microscopes with CL samples. He found that the controlling factors were the magnifications and numerical apertures of eye pieces and objectives, transmission of individual optical elements, and other details of the optical path, including prisms, splitters and polarizers. The optimum system for CL should have as few optical elements and lens/air surfaces as possible, with good coatings on lens surfaces. Therefore, monocular microscopes with 'straight through' ray paths have the greatest transmissivity. It is recommended that several microscopes meeting the criteria outlined above should be tried, using a fairly dull CL subject such as a sandstone sample, before deciding on one which will be dedicated to the CL equipment.

For those setting up a CL unit for the first time, and considering purchasing a new microscope, the inexpensive Olympus PS Student Microscope has one of the best transmissivities. However, it is a simple instrument with limited and an objective slight from pin-cushion distortion, but makes a good general-purpose CL microscope where low cost is important. If long-term viewing comfort and high quality flat-field optics are required, a stripped-down version of the Nikon binocular petrological microscope is recommended (Fig. 6.2), where there is a 'straight-through' path for photomicrography.

The objective lenses required for cathodoluminescence must have long working distances, so choice is often limited and prices high. Measuring or Universal Stage objectives are usually suitable. However, these are complex multi-element systems, and their transmissivity decreases rapidly with increased magnification. Some of these lenses appear to have selective absorption at certain wavelengths, and there can be distinct changes in perceived CL colour when such lenses are interchanged during viewing of a single sample. It is important to carry out some experimentation with various objectives and objective-eyepiece combinations so as to be familiar with the optical properties of the microscope system in use.

To maintain optimum transmissivity, it is also vital to keep viewing windows clean. Lower window surfaces rapidly become coated with a brown layer of pyrolyzed hydrocarbons, derived partly from heated resin on thin sections and from vacuum pump oil mist. The window coating problem is considerably reduced by using a foreline trap on the vacuum system, but the trap filter material must be regularly replaced, otherwise pump-down times are increased.

Window coatings not only impair transmissivity but, as they build up, selectively absorb certain wavelengths. Acting as a coloured filter, such coats give a misleading impression of CL colours. Viewing windows are best cleaned with a pinch of non-abrasive laboratory glass detergent and a damp wad of soft tissue or cloth, taking care to avoid the sealing gasket around the window. Stubborn deposits may require application of organic solvents such as acetone or petroleum ether, but as these have harmful effects on skin and may also dissolve or harden the window sealing gaskets, they should only be used as a last resort.

6.3.3 Radiation precautions

At the voltages used for CL, electron beams are capable of generating appreciable amounts of X-rays. Luminescence chambers are designed to cope with this and are tested up to specified voltages on metal targets as samples. However, it is important to check radiation levels regularly with a geiger counter at worst-case operating levels, paying particular attention to joints and gaskets, particularly around the viewing window and anode. In European countries the mains supply voltage may fluctuate considerably, often being above any rated working voltage of the CL power pack, so that actual beam voltages may be appreciably higher than those set on the instrument panel. A potential X-ray hazard could then exist. If there is any suspicion of fluctuating voltages, instruments should be fitted with stabilized power supplies.

With the NaClide Luminoscope, a standard glass coverslip may be used in the recessed viewing window when the thicker lead glass window does not allow the shorter working distance objectives to focus. This unprotected window provides an X-ray hazard. It may be covered with a lead foil annulus around the lens barrel, but a much better arrangement is to manufacture brass collars for the high magnification lenses. These should fit into the wall of the recessed window and have a flange which overlaps the edge of the well. Focussing movements of the objective can then be accommodated without risking radiation scatter.

6.4 SAMPLE PREPARATION

CL observations are usually made on uncovered thin sections. They must be bonded with thermo-stable epoxy resin (see Chapter 4). Bonding agents such as Lakeside 70 and Canada Balsam are unsuitable mountants for CL work as they are volatile, causing blistering and rapid charring under the electron beam. Some epoxy resins also show luminescence (usually yellow) which can interfere with observations. Polished surfaces give the best optical resolution, and the double polished thin sections described in Chapter 4 are ideal. If great detail is not required, surfaces can be quite crudely prepared. Etching of...
luminettes with dilute acid gives an apparent increase in luminescence intensity, but this is due to points of high relief catching the oblique beam, with shadowing giving an increase in contrast but at the expense of resolution. Nevertheless, both etched and stained surfaces (see Chapter 4) can be used. Stained surfaces, however, rapidly fade and acquire a brown discoloration in the beam, so transmitted-light examination of etched surfaces can give useful information. Pump-down times are correspondingly increased for these larger and more porous samples, which should be well dried before evacuation.

Mechanically strained or damaged crystals tend to become strong CL emitters, and their luminescence patterns can be mistaken for geologically significant features. Such artefacts can easily be generated by rapid or crude preparation of thin sections, using coarse abrasives and forcing rocks through diamond-impregnated saw blades. The gentle and conservative method of abrasion and photography of stained samples should be carried out before irradiation.

Luminescence can be used with high voltage hot cathode cathodolumination. Ultra-thin sections are not recommended for this technique, because they usually have a bright luminescence themselves and can be mistaken for heavy mineral grains in the sample. Even the smallest particles of diamond are revealed by their brilliant green emission.

Mechanically strained or damaged crystals tend to become strong CL emitters, and their luminescence patterns can be mistaken for geologically significant features. Such artefacts can easily be generated by rapid or crude preparation of thin sections, using coarse abrasives and forcing rocks through diamond-impregnated saw blades. The gentle and conservative method of abrasion and photography of stained samples should be carried out before irradiation.

Luminescence can be used with high voltage hot cathode cathodolumination. Ultra-thin sections are not recommended for this technique, because they usually have a bright luminescence themselves and can be mistaken for heavy mineral grains in the sample. Even the smallest particles of diamond are revealed by their brilliant green emission.

6.5 INTERPRETATION AND DESCRIPTION OF CL RESULTS

CL colour and brightness are dependent on several factors, including beam voltage, current, surface current density (a function of beam focus), nature of sample surface, time for which sample has previously been irradiated, degree of heating (thermal quenching or emission of thermoluminescence) and the geochemical composition of the sample itself. Marshall (1978) has suggested a standard for reporting CL results so that comparisons between the results of different workers may be more valid. With the cold cathode equipment, so many variable factors are involved that there is some doubt whether a true standard can ever be achieved (Fairchild, 1983). However, it certainly facilitates communication and comparison if the observation conditions are reported as suggested by Marshall. Experience has also shown that the same samples can have different appearances under CL in machines from different manufacturers. Details such as fine zoning in calcite cements may be visible in one case but not in another. The reasons for this are not fully understood; the metal used for the cathode disc may be a factor, and the angle at which the beam impinges on the specimen surface may be another. Cold cathode systems may generate some CL as a result of ion bombardment, and the nature of the ion content of the plasma is likely to be machine-dependent. Therefore, the type of equipment should be specified as well as the observation conditions.

Problems in communication of results arise from the difficulty of describing CL colours and intensities. Authors refer to "bright" or "dull" luminescence, but there is no way to define the sample suites and there are also highly subjective. The descriptions depend on the sensitivity of the observer's eye to different wavelengths, instrumental variation (such as chamber pressure, beam focus and beam current), and the wavelength-dependent transmission properties of the optical system, including the gradual build-up of brown pyrrhospin deposits on the viewing window. Furthermore, human eyes are uneven in their perception of the visible spectrum, with peaks and troughs in sensitivity across the frequency range. A significant proportion of the population (mainly males) is also affected with "colour-blindness" of one kind or another, often to a subtle degree which may not be apparent in normal life. Reporting of colour perception is also subject to variations in linguistic understanding of words for describing colours. These are learned at an early age and reflect the bias and background of our parents. Upon asking a number of people to describe the CL colour of a given sample, I have received responses including "bright red", "dull orange", "purple-brown" and "crimson": a red-green colour-blind person perceived "grey". To help overcome this potentially serious problem, observations should be made under internally consistent operating conditions and descriptions of CL characteristics should be as unambiguous as possible. Careful photographic recording is more important to support subjective descriptions, but this has problems in itself (see below).

What steps can be taken to minimize subjectivity in the reporting of CL results? Several petrographic uses of CL involve comparisons of CL intensities and colours between samples or within different areas of a single sample. Pierson (1981) suggested that a sample with the brightest observed luminescence be kept in the chamber and used as a reference against which the intensity of other samples could be less arbitrarily judged. He also advocated the use of a colour chart (fig. 21) in Pauling, 1970) for determining CL colour. This chart is quite inadequate for registering the suble range of CL colours, and standard rock colour charts do not contain an appropriate range or scale for comparison either. Until special colour charts or reference sample scales become available, CL operators can do little more than ensure internal consistency, or attempt to construct a system for quantification of CL intensity and wavelength.

6.5.1 Quantification of CL results

There are many difficulties in determining ways of obtaining meaningful and consistent measurements of CL intensity from extant cold cathode CL equipment. The current density at the specimen must remain fixed during the observation period, and there is no direct way of measuring this in present CL devices. Variables such as, glass and microscope transmissivity must be calibrated. Since one usually needs to measure emission from only a small area of the viewing field rather than the whole field, a fibre-optic probe inserted in the light path would probably be the best method, with the light-pipe output directed to a highly sensitive photoelectric cell or photomultiplier, whose output would also have to be calibrated against some standard phosphor. No commercial equipment for this application exists at present.

Production of a CL emission spectrum is the only way to record and compare CL 'colours' objectively. Mariano & Ring (1975) took spectra from feldspars on a Nuclide Luminoscope®. They used a fibre optic probe of 1250, 700 or 450 μm diameter measurement area, transmitting the CL through an external light pipe to the entrance of a grating monochromator. The output of the monochromator was detected by a photomultiplier, amplified and then plotted on a wavelength-synchronized x-y recorder. Spectra were produced by scanning spectroradiometer which was calibrated against the US Bureau of Standards incandescent standard. Plots of luminescence intensity against wavelength range up to 2500 Å but such terms are relative to sample suites and not contain an appropriate range or scale for comparison either. Until special colour charts or reference sample scales become available, CL operators can do little more than ensure internal consistency, or attempt to construct a system for quantification of CL intensity and wavelength.
in crystals as 'fingerprints' in establishing carbonate cement stratigraphies (see below) on a more certain and detailed basis. Clearly, at the present state of the art, both communication and interpretation of CL results in petrography are dominantly subjective. There is an urgent need to develop quantitative and thus more objective methods for assessing CL intensity and wavelength. This poses a formidable problem for instrumentation, because of the very low light levels for most CL emission, and the difficulty of keeping beam parameters constant while making the optical measurements. Hot cathode devices appear to provide much better capabilities for quantification of CL results, and the next generation of instruments may well be built on this principle. Electron microprobes and scanning electron microscopes are now appearing with custom-designed CL attachments, allowing spectra to be taken and computer-assisted image enhancement processes to be used. Element analysis and CL can thus be more closely and conveniently linked.

Because of the subjectivity referred to above, interpretations of CL results should therefore be framed critically and cautiously. Many assumptions are involved: apart from variables inherent in instrumentation, our understanding of activating factors in many minerals is incomplete. It would be most unusual at present to rely solely on luminescence interpretations of geological phenomena. The technique should only be used in conjunction with other standard petrographic approaches. Its greatest strength lies in revealing fabrics and 'mapping' compositional variation, rather than in providing direct geochemical information, wherein the greatest uncertainties exist.

6.6 APPLICATIONS

Cathodoluminescence has several general applications in sedimentology:

(1) Rapid visualization of mineral distribution, where minerals have closely similar optical properties or are very fine-grained. For example, yellow-orange CL of calcite generally distinguishes it from the darker red-crimson of dolomite, and feldspars are very bright blue, red or green compared with subdued violets and browns for quartz grains. Complex intergrowths of minerals such as halite and sylvite (blue-grey and silver-grey CL respectively) can be easily visualized. It is essential to be very cautious and check mineral identifications with other techniques, as CL has complex origins and emission colours are rarely diagnostic.

(2) Fabric and textural characteristics are often more easily visible, especially in recrystallized carbonate rocks (Fig. 6.3). Fossils in neomorphosed limestones or carbonate-cemented sandstones re-appear and can give otherwise unavailable stratigraphic and environmental information (Figs 6.4c, d, 6.5a, b). Point counts carried out on such rocks under CL may differ significantly from those performed under transmitted light, particularly in the greater proportion of bioclasts detected. CL makes it much easier to determine if sparry fabrics are of neomorphic or cement origin by displaying growth zones in crystal aggregates (Dickson, 1983). Sparry crystal aggregates might display the outline of primary void systems under CL (Fig. 6.3a, b), providing more information on porosity evolution than available with transmitted light alone.

(3) Small-scale features, which are difficult or impossible to see in transmitted light microscopy, may be well-displayed with CL. Fine veins, grain fractures (caused by extension or compaction), and authigenic mineral overgrowths readily become apparent (Fig. 6.5c, d).

(4) Provenance studies are more exact, since many grain suites carry characteristic luminescence 'fingerprints' which can be related to their source rocks (Fig. 6.5f). The origin of quartz grains can be determined to some degree, and mixing of quartz grains, feldspars and heavy minerals from different sources more easily detected, e.g. Stow & Miller (1984), Richter & Zinkernagel (1975). This aspect of CL petrography has received little attention, but it could be extremely valuable in petroleum exploration, giving an extra feature for use in correlation of borehole core sequences and interpretation of their depositional environments.

(5) Diagenetic and geochemical studies are enhanced by the very fine CL resolution of growth histories in crystals (Fig. 6.4). Taken together with other evidence, these geochemical variations may indicate variations in groundwater chemistry and burial depths, greatly increasing the resolution of diagenetic histories (e.g. Grover & Read, 1983). Mechanically induced post-depositional changes in sediments such as compaction, stylization and structural deformation can more easily be detected and evaluated with the aid of CL.

6.7 EXAMPLES OF CL USE IN SEDIMENTOLOGY

Exhaustive discussions of the CL properties of minerals are beyond the scope of this chapter, and the reader is referred to the reviews of Nickel (1978), Amieux (1982) and Walker (1985). Some of the most important petrographic uses of CL are outlined below for the more common sedimentary rock types.

6.7.1 Carbonate rocks

PRINCIPLES

Carbonate minerals give bright and stable luminescence at low accelerating voltages, so limestones and dolomites have attracted much attention from sedimentologists working with CL (Amieux, 1982).

Chemically pure calcite may show a blue CL which is probably due to an intrinsic lattice defect. Mn$^{2+}$ is the primary activator and produces yellow to red emission, dominating any low intensity blue peak. Fe$^{2+}$ is the commonest quencher ion, but Ni$^{2+}$ has a similar effect. Complete quenching by Fe produces a black luminescence distinct from non-luminescence (Amieux, 1982; Pierson, 1981) found to occur in dolomites at 1.5 wt. %. Fe. Mostly, however, Mn and Fe tend to co-precipitate in the lattice of carbonate minerals and varying degrees of quenching occur, reducing the intensity of Mn$^{2+}$ emission and inducing a brownish colouration according to the quenching. Amieux (1982, fig. 5) has
Fig. 6.4. Paired photomicrographs of limestone thin sections, with transmitted light view to the left and cathodoluminescence view to the right. All from the Dinantian (Lower Carboniferous) of South Wales. (a), (b) Pwll-y-Cwm Oolite. Calcite cement fill of bivalve mould, showing details of crystal growth by fine luminescent and non-luminescent growth bands. (c), (d) Blaen Onneu Oolite. Syntaxial calcite overgrowth on an echinoid spine, showing preferential nucleation on the crystallographically suitable substrate. CL reveals detail of the internal structure of the recrystallized spine. Changes in CL intensity in the overgrowth cement are due to varying concentrations of Fe$^{2+}$ quencher. (e), (f) Gilwern Oolite. Details of the internal structure of ooids is better revealed by CL. Thin, non-luminescent calcite cement fringes occur on the ooids, followed by brightly-luminescent microspar associated with calcite formed during subaerial exposure. Photographs by courtesy of Dr M. Raven.

Fig. 6.5. Paired photomicrographs of sandstones from North Sea cores, transmitted light view to the left and CL view to the right. (a), (b) Medium-grained sandstone with a carbonate cement is seen under CL to have a fairly high fossil content, mainly echinoderms: crinoid fragments and an echinoid spine (top left) provide substrates for large, zoned overgrowths which have occluded the primary porosity. (c), (d) Coarse sandstone with non-luminescent authigenic quartz overgrowths on violet-luminescing quartz grains. A subsequent zoned calcite cement is being dissolved by kaolinite (white on picture, royal blue CL). (e), (f) Violet luminescing (V) and brown (B) quartz grains showing a mixture of metamorphic and igneous sources. A sparry calcite cement (S) is suffering dissolution by brightly-luminescing kaolinite (K).
related Mn/Fe ratios and their emission colours to geochemical environments, particularly to redox potential changes during crystallization.

One of the commonest applications of CL in carbonate rocks is in revealing successive stages or zones of void-filling cements with far greater precision than those possible with optical microscopy. Cement stratigraphy (Fig. 6.4) involves the application of stratigraphic principles at an inter-granular and void level, correlating stages of cementation within a given basin of sedimentation. Meyers (1974, 1978) pioneered cement stratigraphy, demonstrating that ‘zones’ of carbonate cements, as revealed by their CL and other petrographic characteristics, could be correlated both vertically and regionally in the Mississippian of the Middle East and Miocene of the Bahamas were also analysed. These were found to luminesce when Mn was higher than 30–35 ppm and Fe less than 300 ppm. Higher levels of activator was thus required in dolomite compared to calcite, due to the more efficient luminescence of Mn²⁺ when present in the Ca²⁺ lattice sites than when substituting Mg²⁺ sites. In dolomites, Mn²⁺ largely occupies the Mg²⁺ range from yellow to dark reds and pinks.

The CL colours produced in calcite and dolomite by Mn²⁺ range from yellow to dark reds and pinks. Sommer (1972a) determined that with increasing substitution of Mn²⁺ into Mg²⁺ rather than Ca²⁺ sites, the colour tends towards red (see also Amieux, 1982). Broadly, therefore, low Mg calcites give yellow CL and high Mg calcites are orange to red. Dolomite is characteristically a ‘brick-red’ colour. High substitution of Fe was considered by Amieux to produce a dull brown-maroon CL quite distinct from black non-luminescence.

Ten Have & Heynen (1985) investigated the incorporation of Mn²⁺ into calcite crystals in over 50 crystal synthesis experiments from gels and solutions. Normal temperatures and pressures were used. They reported that 15–30 ppm Mn were sufficient to induce luminescence in the synthetic calcite (Fe less than 200 ppm). Dolomites from the Jurassic of Virginia, and related the sequence to diagenetic and practise of cement stratigraphy, especially the cement stratigraphic sequence revealed by CL. This provides a powerful tool for analysis of post-depositional changes in sedimentary rocks. Uncertainties exist in our present interpretation of CL and its relation to the geochemistry of carbonate precipitation from pore fluids. Carbonate minerals are also inherently unstable and liable to both obvious and subtle alteration during diagenesis. Therefore, additional criteria, such as evidence of dissolution or fracturing, changes in crystal habit, inclusions, carbon/oxygen isotope ratios and accurate geochemical analyses of individual luminescent zones using microprobe, AAS and neutron activation techniques must be integrated with CL results.

This involves very precise, tedious work, often using very small samples of cements for analysis. At the very least, the precaution of staining thin sections with Alizarin Red S and potassium ferricyanide (Chapter 4) is required as a rapid and sensitive method of determining whether variation in CL intensity is likely to be due to fluctuations in Mn activator or to the presence of Fe as a quencher. Generally, CL work is done in conjunction with microprobe analysis performed on the same thin sections. CL cannot be used alone for other than general interpretations of cement histories. Studies of cement sequences must pay particular attention to veining phases. Many post-burial cement generations can be linked to specific sets of veins, some of which are extremely fine and are only visible with CL. Commonly, late stages of cements precipitated during veining episodes may induce neomorphism of earlier cements, replacing them partially or completely, or may merely precipitate films of new material along crystal interfaces between existing cements. In all cases this leads to a pronounced change in the CL of the affected cements which is an important element in the diagenetic event stratigraphy. Large thin sections (see Chapter 4) are important for this work, as veins and their conjunction with voids are often missed in small samples. It is also necessary specifically to select veined material for study, hitherto not a regular practice in traditional carbonate petrography.

Studies of stable isotopes in carbonate minerals and skeletal materials can provide valuable environmental and diagenetic information. Prior examination of material to be sampled for stable isotope analysis with CL enables selection of areas uncontaminated by neomorphism or inter-crystal infill as described above.
the electron beam, much care and some skill is needed to distinguish quartz CL colours successfully. Given this, CL affords a rapid means of detecting different quartz grain populations in sandstones and in ascertaining their provenance. The different shades of violet and brown in a grain population probably represent various grain sources, since there is no evidence that crystal orientation exerts significant control over CL wavelength and intensity in quartz. Of course, it is wise to check the other properties of the grains, such as inclusions and type of extinction, to gain confirmation of CL determinations.

Sippel (1968) and Sibley & Blatt (1976) have applied CL in investigations of silica authigenesis in sandstones. Burley, Kantorowicz & Waugh (1985) suggested how CL may profitably be combined with other techniques in elucidating diagenesis of clastic rocks.

**FELDSPARS**

The causes of CL in this mineral group are relatively well-known from investigations on lunar rocks (Geake et al., 1977) and carbonatites (Mariano, Ito & Ring, 1973). Feldspars have low CL thresholds and are thus obvious even at low accelerating voltages. Typical CL colours are brilliant blue (possibly $\text{Tl}^{2+}$ activation), red to infra-red ($\text{Fe}^{2+}$ substitution for $\text{Al}^{3+}$) and green ($\text{Mn}^{2+}$ substitution probably for $\text{Ce}^{3+}$). Feldspar CL is polarized and some intensity variation is seen upon rotation of a polaroid sheet interposed between the viewing window and the microscope eyepiece. This property often helps to distinguish feldspars from other minerals of similar CL colour. In general, authigenic feldspars are non-luminescent or very dullly luminescent (Kastner, 1971), serving to differentiate detrital cores from their overgrown CL-positives. In terms of provenance, there is no evidence to suggest that feldspar CL is related to specific igneous or metamorphic origins. However, the presence of feldspar 'suites' containing consistent proportions of the rarer red and/or green emitter grains amongst the common blue emitters can be used to trace particular sources of clastic feldspar supply (e.g. Stow & Miller, 1984).

Because even the smallest feldspar grains luminesce brightly, a far more accurate estimate of the percentage of feldspar in a clastic sediment is obtained by point-counting under CL. This is particularly true for fine sandstones and siltstones. Even grains which are badly weathered or altered still register the typical emission.

**HEAVY MINERALS**

Many accessory minerals of clastic rocks contain at least traces of rare earth or transition metal impurities and are therefore liable to luminesce. Nickel (1978) listed the known CL characteristics of such minerals. Apatites give particularly bright CL with europium a common activator (Mariano & Ring, 1975). Apatite emissions range from bluish-violet, lilac, pink and orange to yellow. Portnov & Gorobets (1969) have proposed that certain of these colours are related to particular igneous or metamorphic origins. If this can be confirmed, it would be an invaluable adjunct to provenance studies. Again, the small size of many heavy mineral grains means that they are often overlooked and easily under-estimated in transmitted light petrography of clastic rocks. Invariably, use of CL produces an often surprising re-evaluation of the importance of accessory grains.

**CEMEMENTS AND DIAGENESIS**

Carbonate cements are commonly involved in occlusion of sandstone porosity (Fig. 6.5b, f). Their mineralogy and sequence of development are more accurately followed by using CL than by transmitted light alone (see above). Other diagenetic features such as corrosion of quartz grains by carbonate, relative timing of quartz overgrowth formation and cementation and the onset of dolomitization can also be rapidly documented with CL. Authigenic kaolinite or dickite commonly form late stage cements in sandstones (Fig. 6.5f, Burley et al., 1985, fig. 7f), and they usually have a brilliant royal blue CL, whose origin is unknown. The extent and timing of these cements and their relationship to compaction and tectonic events, such as extension veining, is much more easily appreciated under CL than with transmitted light microscopy.

A good example of the combined use of CL, SEM and transmitted light petrography in documenting the provenance and diagenetic history of a Jurassic reservoir sandstone is given by Olhausen et al. (1984).

**6.8 PHOTOGRAPHIC RECORDING OF CL**

Prior to the realization that high transmissivity microscopes were mandatory for successful CL work, photography of CL was extremely difficult and the results highly variable. Minerals giving very low intensity emission, such as quartz grains, require many minutes or even hours of exposure with fast films. Generally, these films were working at luminescence ranges beyond their zones of reciprocity failure, resulting in poor resolution, low contrast and indifferent colour rendition. Good microscope transmissivity, aided by straight-through light paths between objective and film, means that slower (and thus finer-grained) films can now be used, working well within their optimum exposure ranges.

Most petrological microscopes can be fitted with photomicrography accessories which allow automatic exposure determination (Fig. 6.3). The large viewing window of the Nucleide Luminoscope also allows the use of a 55 mm f/3.5 macro lens directly mounted on a camera body to take pictures of whole thin sections or slabs under CL. Such pictures are invaluable for mapping CL zones in carbonate cements which are to be sampled for AAS and stable isotope analysis by drilling or scraping from individual cement stages. They also show up fabrics and small-scale sedimentary structures in sandstones and siltstones.

Recent advances in film technology have increased the range of films suitable for CL recording. For routine work, particularly with limestones, where the colour range is restricted and can be adequately represented by a 55 mm f/3.5 macro lens directly mounted on a camera body to take pictures of whole thin sections or slabs under CL. Such pictures are invaluable for mapping CL zones in carbonate cements which are to be sampled for AAS and stable isotope analysis by drilling or scraping from individual cement stages. They also show up fabrics and small-scale sedimentary structures in sandstones and siltstones.

It is also important, with porous rocks, to remove carefully all traces of the diamond polishing abrasives from the slide; industrial diamond grains have a brilliant green CL which produces halation spots, giving the impression of a larger grain, which is apt to be mistaken for an apatite or other heavy mineral grain.

Colour pictures are somewhat more problematic, in that the precise colours of CL are very difficult to reproduce exactly. Daylight films give the best colour balance, with a blue compensating filter for the transmitted light (tungsten lamp) frames. The choice lies between print films with a narrower contrast range and variable colour balance depending on printing filtration, and reversal films with a higher contrast and resolution range but where subsequent correction is not possible. Agfa, Kodak and Fuji produce ranges of colour slide and print films ranging from ISO 25 to 1000, with an HR suffix indicating the films' high resolution capability by virtue of the very thin emulsions used in the colour separation layers. The slower the speed, the finer the grain and the greater the resolving power of these films. ISO 1000 films may be too slow. CL images of thermally unstable quartz grains which rapidly red- denote excitation. Each worker is advised to carefully all traces of the diamond polishing abrasives from the slide; industrial diamond grains have a brilliant green CL which produces halation spots, giving the impression of a larger grain, which is apt to be mistaken for an apatite or other heavy mineral grain.

Colour pictures are somewhat more problematic, in that the precise colours of CL are very difficult to reproduce exactly. Daylight films give the best colour balance, with a blue compensating filter for the transmitted light (tungsten lamp) frames. The choice lies between print films with a narrower contrast range and variable colour balance depending on printing filtration, and reversal films with a higher contrast and resolution range but where subsequent correction is not possible. Agfa, Kodak and Fuji produce ranges of colour slide and print films ranging from ISO 25 to 1000, with an HR suffix indicating the films' high resolution capability by virtue of the very thin emulsions used in the colour separation layers. The slower the speed, the finer the grain and the greater the resolving power of these films. ISO 1000 films may be too slow. CL images of thermally unstable quartz grains which rapidly red- denote excitation. Each worker is advised to carefully all traces of the diamond polishing abrasives from the slide; industrial diamond grains have a brilliant green CL which produces halation spots, giving the impression of a larger grain, which is apt to be mistaken for an apatite or other heavy mineral grain.
However, a great deal of development work remains to be done in determining the causes of CL in minerals and in understanding the geochemical significance of changes in activator concentration in minerals precipitated during diagenesis. It is clear even at this early stage that CL is not a substitute for existing petrological techniques but, when combined with these approaches, it provides a rapid and powerful way of eliciting more data from geological samples. There are now overwhelming arguments for considering CL to be a standard technique and not an esoteric diversion.

6.9 MANUFACTURERS OF CL EQUIPMENT

Nuclide Corporation, AGU Division, 916 Main Street, PO Box 315, Acton, MA 01720, USA.

TECHNOSYN Ltd, Coldhams Road, Cambridge CB1 3EW, England.

7 X-ray powder diffraction of sediments

RON HARDY and MAURICE TUCKER

7.1 INTRODUCTION

X-ray diffraction (XRD) is a basic tool in the mineralogical analysis of sediments, and in the case of fine-grained sediments an essential one. It has the advantage, with modern instrumentation, that almost complete automation can be achieved to give fast, precise results. This chapter discusses the basic theory of the technique, in so far as it is needed to set up systems of analysis, and goes on to describe several specific applications to sediments with appropriate preparative techniques and guides to interpretation.

7.2 THEORY OF X-RAY DIFFRACTION

For a comprehensive treatment of theory, the reader is referred to the classic text of Klug & Alexander (1974). Only a simplified treatment for the understanding and evaluation of basic analytical procedures is given here. A very useful introduction can be obtained from the Philips organization in the UK called ‘An introduction to X-ray powder diffractometry’ by R. Jenkins and J.L. de Vries. The address is Pye Unicam Ltd, York Street, Cambridge CB1 2PX, tel. Cambridge (0223) 358866.

7.2.1 Production of X-rays

In a normal commercially available laboratory diffractometer (assumed throughout this chapter), X-rays are produced by bombardment of a metal anode (the target), by high energy electrons from a heated filament in a Röntgen X-ray tube (Fig. 7.1). The resulting radiation emerges from a thin, usually beryllium, window and consists of (Fig. 7.2):

(i) A broad band of continuous radiation (white radiation) produced by the electrons from the filament converting their kinetic energy to X-rays on collision with the atoms of the anode target.

(ii) A number of discrete lines of varying intensity called the characteristic radiation which represents the energy released by rearrangements of the orbital electrons of atoms of the anode target following ejection of one or more electrons during the excitation process. These lines are known as K, L, M lines etc.; the type of line produced is determined by the orbital electrons taking part in the rearrangement (Fig. 7.3). Various anode materials are commonly used as
Continuous spectrum

Characteristic line spectrum from copper

Fig. 7.2. The spectrum from a copper anode X-ray tube.

targets in X-ray tubes, they include: Cu, Cr, Fe, Co, Mo and Ag. Each has advantages and disadvantages and these will be discussed later in connection with the analysis of sediments.

Considerable advantages are to be gained by the use of purely monochromatic radiation, i.e. radiation of a single wavelength and this is achieved by the use of a Cu filter, or alternatively by using a crystal monochromator.

The Cu filter consists of a thin metal foil which is positioned in the X-ray beam generally close to the beryllium window of the X-ray tube. The type of metal foil selected is such that the intensity of the $K_\beta$ radiation of a particular X-ray tube is effectively removed from the spectrum (Fig. 7.4). This is achieved by using the variation of mass absorption with wavelength (Fig. 7.5) in such a way that the high absorption of the $K_\beta$ of the metal falls between the $K_\alpha$ and $K_\alpha$ radiations of the X-ray tube.

Table 7.1 lists the usual combinations of target element and filters. It should be remembered that as well as greatly reducing the intensity, the Cu filter also reduces the overall intensity of the continuous radiation and the intensity of the $K_\alpha$ radiation.

Further improvements can be achieved in the production of monochromatic radiation with the use of electronic filters (pulse height analysis) associated with the detection and recording devices of the diffractometer (Fig. 7.6).

In the case of a graphite curved crystal monochromator (Fig. 7.7), adjustments of the graphite crystal can be made such that only the desired wavelengths, i.e. $K_\alpha$, pass to the detection device, thus filtering out the unwanted $K_\beta$ and continuous radiation without the use of Cu filters and pulse height analysis.

7.2.2 Diffraction of X-rays by a sample

Figure 7.8 shows a schematic representation of a typical diffractometer. The X-rays are first collimated to produce a subparallel beam, the amount of divergence being controlled by the size of the divergent slit, i.e. a 4° large divergence slit for high angle work to a 1/12° small divergence slit for low angle work.

The divergent beam is then directed at the sample, which is motor driven to rotate at a regular speed in degrees per minute. When mineral planes in the sample attain an appropriate angle, they will diffract the X-rays according to Bragg's Law, i.e. $n\lambda = 2d \sin \theta$.
where \( n \) is an integer, \( \lambda \) is the wavelength of the X-rays, \( d \) is the lattice spacing in ångstroms and \( \theta \) is the angle of diffraction (Fig. 7.9). The diffracted beam is passed through a receiving slit and collimator and, then a scatter slit is introduced to reduce any scattered X-rays other than the diffracted beams from finally entering the detector. In the case of a monochromator being used (Fig. 7.7), the beam passes straight from the receiving slit to the crystal monochromator and then to the detector. The signal produced by the X-ray photons on the detector is first amplified, and then passed on to the electronic recording equipment.

### 7.2.3 Output devices

Output from a diffractometer can be in either analogue or digital form. The conventional analogue recording is a strip chart whose speed in millimetres per minute is synchronized with that of the detector in degrees of 2\( \theta \) per minute so that the x-axis is calibrated in °2\( \theta \) (Fig. 7.10). Deflections recorded can be easily converted into lattice \( d \) spacings of the minerals present by applying Bragg's Law. Most diffractometers possess a digital counter which can record actual X-ray intensities in counts per second.

Early XRD was carried out using powder cameras which used a film recording technique. This is now largely restricted to specialized applications such as structural determinations and to instances where the amount of sample available is very small, the order of a few micrograms. It is a very time-consuming method and not easily susceptible to automation.

Use of the diffractometer has been transformed by the advent of microprocessor control, microcomputers and automatic sample loaders. These have led to completely automated instrument operation and data processing.

### 7.3 XRD ANALYSIS OF SEDIMENTS

XRD is particularly useful in the analysis of fine-grained material which is difficult to study by other means, but there are a whole range of applications to the various components of sediments, as defined by either size and/or mineralogy.

#### 7.3.1 Whole rock analysis

The most basic application of XRD to sediments is in the analysis of whole rock samples. To obtain satisfactory results the original grain size must be reduced to a mean particle diameter of 5–10 \( \mu \)m with, preferably, a limited size range. Care must be taken in particle size reduction not to damage the crystallite by strain as this can lead to diffraction line broadening, which is in any case related to particle size (see Klug & Alexander, 1974, chapter 9). Careful grinding by hand can give satisfactory results but mechanical devices such as the McCrone Micronizing Mill (Walter McCrone Associates, Chicago) have been shown to produce very reproducible particle size distributions without damaging the crystal lattice, both very important criteria in quantitative work. Care must also be taken to obtain a representative sample — this can be achieved by applying appropriate sampling techniques, e.g. riffle boxes, quartering, etc.

Having ground a representative sample to the appropriate grain size, the next stage is to present the sample to the X-ray beam. There are basically two methods to do this; one method is to produce a cavity mount, and the other is to produce a smear mount.

The cavity mount holder (Fig. 7.11) is usually made of aluminium and the sample is packed in from the rear of the cavity in the manner described by Klug & Alexander (1974, p. 373). This type of...
Fig. 7.10. A strip chart of diffractometer trace of the X-ray diffraction pattern of the mineral calcite. The 2θ angle increases from right to left on the horizontal scale and the intensity of the diffracted peak above background is given by the vertical scale. The X-ray tube target was copper.

Fig. 7.11. Aluminium cavity mount.

The smear mount is prepared by smearing the sample with a volatile organic solvent, such as acetone, on to a glass slide. This type of mount produces a partially oriented sample which can produce problems during interpretation, e.g. estimating correct relative intensities.

The cavity mount or smear mount is then inserted into the diffractometer and the appropriate conditions set and recorded: (1) X-ray radiation used; (2) generator voltage and current; (3) the slit combination used; (4) scanning speed; (5) recording device parameters (if a chart recorder used); time constant, rate meter and chart speed should be recorded; (6) the start and the finish positions.

If a graphite crystal monochromator is not available, the choice and target of the X-ray tube used depends to a large extent on the predicted nature of the sample. For clay mineral analysis and for most sediment samples with low amounts of iron minerals present, a copper anode is preferred. If the sediments contain high levels of iron minerals, the use of a copper anode will cause iron fluorescence radiation from the sample as well as the diffraction peaks from the lattice planes. This results in very high backgrounds and hence a poor peak to background ratio (Fig. 7.12). The iron fluorescent radiation (Fe Ka) is caused by the incoming copper Kα radiation from the X-ray tube being the correct energy to displace K orbital electrons from the iron atoms in the sample. In this case, an iron or a cobalt anode X-ray tube is used. Similarly, in the analysis of manganese sediments, an iron or a chromium anode is used as both copper and cobalt anodes cause manganese fluorescence radiation to occur.

If a graphite curved crystal monochromator is available, then as only the desired Cu Kα wavelengths are effectively filtered out, thus allowing the use of a copper anode in the determination of iron-rich sediments (Fig. 7.12).

7.3.2 Qualitative analysis

Assuming that a simple qualitative analysis is required the only task is the interpretation of the chart record (see Fig. 7.10). First the peaks must be identified, then measured in terms of 2θ and converted to lattice spacings in Å.

As an example, the sample in Fig. 7.10, is a high purity calcite. The peak at 2θ = 26°, from the lattice plane d = 2.66 Å, is the dominant calcite peak. The next strongest peak at 2θ = 56° from the lattice plane d = 1.56 Å is also a calcite peak. The other peaks are from other calcite crystal planes.

Fig. 7.12. A comparison of diffractometers with and without a curved crystal monochromator on the mineral haematite using copper radiation (from Philips UK Information Sheet).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CuKα ( \lambda = 1.5418 )</th>
<th>X-RAY POWDER DIFFRACTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.0 of 2Theta to 51.9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>1.759</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>1.678</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>1.590</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>1.502</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>1.414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>1.327</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>1.248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>1.170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>1.092</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>1.014</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 7.2. (a) Conversion chart of 2θ to Angstrom (D-spacing) for copper Kα radiation (Computed by M.J. Smith, University of Durham)
(b) Conversion charts of 2θ to Angstroms (D-spacing) for cobalt X-ray radiation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cofalp, ( \lambda = 1.7902A )</th>
<th>2θ of 2THETA to 51.9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>R.G. HARDY and M.E. TUCKER</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cofalp, ( \lambda = 1.7902A )</th>
<th>52.0 of 2THETA to 100.0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- Conversion charts for X-ray powder diffraction with cobalt as the standard material.
- The table provides 2θ values corresponding to different D-spacing values for various crystallographic planes.
- The data is useful for crystallography and materials science applications.

The tables are designed for ease of reference, allowing users to quickly find the 2θ values for specific D-spacing ranges.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chart 1</th>
<th>Chart 100</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>R.G. HARDY and M.E. TUCKER</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The table entries represent a simplified version of the conversion charts, focusing on the structure and format rather than the detailed numerical data.

---

http://jurassic.ru/
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CrKalpho</th>
<th>lambda = 2.3900A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CrKalpho</th>
<th>lambda = 2.3900A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
of ragged peaks (Fig. 7.13b) and overlapping peaks (Fig. 7.13c). A reasonably successful method of estimating the position of a ragged peak is to take the mid-point position at 2θ/3 of the height above background. One should bear in mind, however, that the reason that the peak is ragged in the first place is likely to be related to a poorly defined crystal structure. Overlapping peaks can be deconvoluted by graphical or computational means, but in practice a visual estimate of the position of the maxima is adequate for qualitative analysis if one bears in mind the tendency of the peaks to move towards a common 'centre of gravity'.

Instrumental conditions also play an important role in the correct measurement of peak position. As the time constant is a pulse averaging circuit, if a large value of the time constant is used together with a fast scanning speed, errors will result due to the formation of asymmetric peaks, in which the point of greatest intensity is shifted to a higher value of 2θ. Generally the product of the time constant and the scanning speed is kept as low as possible, but is never greater than 4.

The diffraction angles (2θ) of the peaks are converted to lattice spacings (d) by means of conversion tables (Fang & Bloss, 1966), by conversion charts (Parrish & Mack, 1963) or by computing into a calculator/computer the equation 

\[ d = \frac{\lambda}{2 \sin \theta} \]

Table 7.2 shows 2θ to lattice spacing conversion tables for copper Kα, cobalt Kα and chromium Kα radiations. The lattice spacings (d) are in ångströms (Å), still commonly used by X-ray mineralogists, though the nanometer (nm) is the technically correct SI unit. Once all peaks have been measured together with an estimate of their relative intensities, it only remains to assign them to mineral phases.

As all minerals and indeed all crystalline materials possess a unique X-ray diffraction pattern, a comparison of diffraction patterns of unknown mineral phases with a set of standard patterns will lead to their identification. This method is very similar to human fingerprint identification. These standard patterns have been compiled by an international organization called the Joint Committee on Powder Diffraction Standards (JCPDS), which collects and updates powder diffraction data. In principle, by a systematic searching of the JCPDS Powder Diffraction Index for Minerals, it is possible to identify almost any mineral that may be present, provided that sufficient peaks are present for that mineral (usually a minimum of three). This operation can of course, be carried out by computers and the JCPDS provide just such a commercially available computer system.

For sediments, however, the total number of possibilities is fairly limited, and can be limited further if one has some idea of its provenance. With this knowledge a reverse search of the Index, beginning with the most likely minerals and eliminating the peaks as they are identified, is a useful short-cut. Alternatively one can make up a template on chart recorder paper, of the diffraction patterns of commonly-encountered minerals, and then use this as an overlay for the unknown chart records. Brown & Brindley (1980, table 5.18, pp. 348–355) computed a comprehensive table of consecutive lattice spacings for the common clay and sedimentary minerals. Table 7.3 lists the main diffraction spacings of some selected minerals likely to occur in sediments together with their relative intensities (I/I₀), hkl values and 2θ and θ conversion angles for Cu and Co Kα radiations.

7.3.3 Quantitative analysis

As the intensity of the diffraction pattern (generally estimated either as peak height or preferably peak area) of a mineral in a mixture is proportional to its concentration, it is possible to make rough estimates of the relative proportions of the minerals in a sample by measuring their relative peak heights or areas. This method, however, is unreliable due to the different 'diffracting abilities' of minerals from different crystal systems. An example of this would be to compare the intensities of halite (cubic system) with illite (monoclinic system) which would be seen to be completely unrelated.

Most 'quantitative' systems of sediment analysis depend upon the preparation of calibration curves. This entails the measurement of the intensity of selected diffraction lines plotted against the quantities of the respective minerals in known mixtures. Generally an internal standard is added in constant amount to the known mixtures and unknown samples to compensate for any errors introduced during the sample preparation or caused by machine drift, etc. The internal standard method has been used widely since being described by Alexander & Klug (1948). Various substances have been proposed as internal standards. Generally it is a completely new substance to the system, such as potassium permanganate K₂MnO₄, halite NaCl, or cerium oxide CeO₂, but it is an advantage to have a substance which has a similar response to that of the analysed minerals. Griffin (1954) used the mineral beethovenite (γ-AlOOH) in his study of clay minerals because they both have a similar response to X-rays.

The principal alternative to the addition of an internal standard is to use a mineral already present in the sample (e.g. quartz) as the internal standard. A relatively simple version of this latter method (after Hooton & Gioretta, 1977) is recommended here.

The equation used is derived from the Klug & Alexander basic equation:

\[ W_i = \frac{\eta_i \rho_i \mu_i}{K_i} \]

where \( W_i \) = intensity of diffraction pattern of component \( i \), \( K_i \) = a constant depending on the nature of the component and the geometry of the apparatus, \( W_i \) = weight fraction of component \( i \) in the sample, \( \eta_i \) = density of component, \( \rho_i \) = mass absorption of the total sample. As \( \eta_i \) and \( K_i \) are both constant for any mineral (in a given instrument) they can be represented in the equation by the symbol \( H_i \), giving

\[ W_i = \frac{H_i \eta_i \rho_i}{K_i} \]

If all components are taken into account, equation (2) becomes

\[ \sum_i W_i = \sum_i \frac{H_i \eta_i \rho_i}{K_i} = 1 \]

the sum of all the weight fractions.

Rearranging: \( \rho_i = \frac{1}{H_i} \frac{1}{\eta_i} \) and substituting into equation (2)

\[ W_i = \frac{H_i \eta_i}{\sum_j K_j} \]

The method can be simplified by determining relative % values instead of absolute values, i.e. to select one mineral as a reference standard, in this case, quartz. If equation (2) is rewritten as

\[ W_{\text{MIN}} = \frac{\rho_{\text{MIN}}}{\sum_{j} K_j \rho_j} \]

(unknown component)

\[ W_{\text{QUARTZ}} = \frac{\rho_{\text{QUARTZ}}}{\rho_{\text{QUARTZ}} + \sum_{j} \rho_j} \]

(reference component).
Table 7.3. Dominant X-ray diffraction peaks of selected minerals likely to occur in sediments in order of decreasing intensities (I/kl) including 26 angles for Cu and Co Kα radiations. Minerals are listed in order of decreasing d (Å) value of the most intense line (from JCPDS, 1974).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mineral</th>
<th>d (Å)</th>
<th>hkl</th>
<th>Intensities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Saponite</td>
<td>15.0</td>
<td>002</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saponite</td>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>002</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vermiculite</td>
<td>14.2</td>
<td>020</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vermiculite</td>
<td>11.7</td>
<td>020</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coarse-grained, mica</td>
<td>14.0</td>
<td>002</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coarse-grained, mica</td>
<td>9.97</td>
<td>002</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coarse-grained, mica</td>
<td>8.87</td>
<td>002</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coarse-grained, mica</td>
<td>7.56</td>
<td>002</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coarse-grained, mica</td>
<td>11.70</td>
<td>002</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coarse-grained, mica</td>
<td>13.60</td>
<td>002</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 7.3. (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mineral</th>
<th>d (Å)</th>
<th>hkl</th>
<th>Intensities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chlorite</td>
<td>7.19</td>
<td>002</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorite</td>
<td>4.80</td>
<td>002</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goethite</td>
<td>3.60</td>
<td>002</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goethite</td>
<td>14.3</td>
<td>002</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goethite</td>
<td>2.88</td>
<td>002</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goethite</td>
<td>2.56</td>
<td>002</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaolinite</td>
<td>7.17</td>
<td>002</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaolinite</td>
<td>2.87</td>
<td>002</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaolinite</td>
<td>6.18</td>
<td>002</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quartz</td>
<td>3.14</td>
<td>002</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quartz</td>
<td>3.94</td>
<td>002</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quartz</td>
<td>4.01</td>
<td>002</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quartz</td>
<td>4.28</td>
<td>002</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quartz</td>
<td>4.38</td>
<td>002</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quartz</td>
<td>4.98</td>
<td>002</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quartz</td>
<td>5.08</td>
<td>002</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quartz</td>
<td>5.84</td>
<td>002</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quartz</td>
<td>6.87</td>
<td>002</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

http://jurassic.ru/
A series of binary calibration mixtures of quartz and other major sedimentary minerals can then be prepared by accurate weighing and the intensities of the chosen analytical peaks measured. Curves can then be plotted, the slope of which gives $H_{\text{quartz}}$. If we assume $H_{\text{quartz}} = 1$, a series of $H$ values can then be obtained for all the major sedimentary minerals which can then be substituted together with the intensities of the minerals into equation (3).

The measurement of intensity in all quantitative methods is best done using a digital counter and integrating a whole area of peak (Fig. 7.14a). There are many more published methods of quantitative analysis but all suffer from similar problems which affect the measurement of intensities, in particular: (i) the crystallinity of some species can vary widely, e.g. micas, kaolinites (Fig. 7.13b); (ii) chemical variations, e.g. solid solution series, which can cause peak shifts as well as varying intensities; (iii) the ordering of the component chemical elements within the structure, e.g. dolomite; (iv) large mass absorption differences between standards and unknown samples.

### Table 7.3. (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mineral</th>
<th>$d$ (Å)</th>
<th>$2\theta$ (°)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Orthoclase</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$b_{1}$</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$b_{1}$</td>
<td>111</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$b_{1}$</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$b_{1}$</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$	ext{Siderite}$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$b_{1}$</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$b_{1}$</td>
<td>113</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$b_{1}$</td>
<td>113</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Siderite</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$b_{1}$</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$b_{1}$</td>
<td>104</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$b_{1}$</td>
<td>104</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Siderite</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$b_{1}$</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$b_{1}$</td>
<td>113</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$b_{1}$</td>
<td>113</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Siderite</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$b_{1}$</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$b_{1}$</td>
<td>113</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$b_{1}$</td>
<td>113</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pyrite</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$b_{1}$</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$b_{1}$</td>
<td>104</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$b_{1}$</td>
<td>104</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pyrite</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$b_{1}$</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$b_{1}$</td>
<td>104</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$b_{1}$</td>
<td>104</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**X-RAY POWDER DIFFRACTION**

XRD provides the most efficient method for the determination of clay minerals in mudrocks, sandstones and limestones. A knowledge of the clay mineralogy can be most useful for provenance studies and it can also give information on the burial history for the formation. Although some clay minerals are evident in whole rock diffractograms, the most satisfactory method is to extract and separately analyse the clay fraction (usually defined as less than 2 microns, <2 μm). It is particularly important to do this in the case of very fine grained and poorly crystalline clays, which are unlikely to give recognizable diffraction patterns in a whole rock scan. Also chemical pre-treatments are sometimes

---

http://jurassic.ru/
necessary to remove large amounts of certain non-clay and cementing materials and in so doing concentrate the clay mineral fraction in the samples. If high levels of carbonate material are expected this can be removed by acid attack. However, certain clay minerals, in particular chlorites and some smectites, are susceptible to attack from dilute mineral acids, e.g. dilute hydrochloric acid. Instead, weak organic acids are recommended, in particular the method described by Hein, Scholl & Gutmacher (1976) in which the samples are heated in a buffered solution of sodium acetate and glacial acetic acid (Morgan’s solution).

Similarly, if large quantities of organic matter are expected, this may be removed by pre-treatment with 35% hydrogen peroxide (H₂O₂) after Jackson (1958, 1979). Large amounts of iron compounds may be removed using sodium dithionite (Na₂S₂O₄) together with a citrate-chelating agent after the method of Mehra & Jackson (1960).

7.4.1 Separation
Complete disaggregation is desirable before size separation is attempted, and this is best effected by ultrasonic means (Gipson, 1963), although, for poorly lithified samples, vigorous shaking with distilled water will sometimes suffice. The sediments should be broken (e.g. by percussion) to particles of approximately 10 mm diameter or less, placed in a beaker, covered with distilled water and immersed in an ultrasonic bath (Fig. 7.16a). Alternatively, an ultrasonic probe can be inserted into the beaker (Fig. 7.16b).

After the sample is disaggregated, the resulting suspension should be transferred to a settling column (e.g. a measuring cylinder) and allowed to stand for an appropriate time until the required size fraction can be removed. Stokes’ Law is used to calculate the settling velocity (v) of the clay particles:

\[ v = \frac{2\pi a^2 (d_1 - d_2)}{9\eta} \]

where g is the acceleration due to gravity, a is the sphere radius, \( d_1 \) is the density of the particles, \( d_2 \) that of the settling medium (usually water) and \( \eta \) its viscosity. This law is empirical only, and applies to spherical particles in a non-turbulent medium at a constant temperature, where the suspension is sufficiently dilute to avoid particle–particle interaction. Because of the platey nature of clay particles, they must be regarded as having an equivalent spherical diameter (esd) when applying Stokes’ Law. A centrifuge may be used as an alternative to a settling column, the effect being to increase the value of g in the equation. The usual size fraction separated for routine clay analysis is <2 μm, and Table 7.4 gives settling times for this and other fractions using both a settling column and a centrifuge. The method as described by Galehouse (1971) is recommended here.

A major problem in the separation of clays is flocculation; this may be avoided in a number of ways: (i) by repeated washing in distilled water to remove any electrolyte present; (ii) by the addition of a deflocculant, commonly sodium hexametaphosphate solution (calgon); (iii) by the addition of ammonium hydroxide NH₄OH.

In principle, any chemical additive, either as a pre-treatment or a deflocculant, is to be avoided, however, since this may have an undesirable effect on the clay minerals themselves.

7.4.2 Preparation
After extraction by pipette, at the required depth from the measuring cylinder, the less than 2 μm fraction is prepared for XRD analysis as an oriented and also as an unoriented mount. There are various schools of thought on making oriented samples;
three principal methods are: (i) smearing the clay slurry on to a solid substrate, e.g., a glass slide; (ii) pipetting the clay suspension into a glass beaker containing a glass slide, then placing the beaker in an oven at 60°C and allowing the distilled water to evaporate and the clays to settle on to the slide; (iii) sedimenting a suspension under a vacuum on to a porous substrate, e.g., a ceramic tile (Fig. 7.17).

The objectives in the various methods are to achieve an orientation of the clay plates parallel to the surface of the substrate, and to avoid differential settling of the clay mineral species (average diameters of kaolinite particles, for example, tend to be larger than those of smectite).

This problem of differential settling of the less than 2 μm fraction in the initial extraction stage can cause serious problems, especially where quantitative results are being used to interpret or substantiate geological theories, and the problems are discussed by Rowe (1974).

Unoriented samples are more difficult to achieve. In most cases, cavity mounts are employed for bulk analysis, and unfortunately pressure is usually applied at some point in order to fill the cavity. Because of the predominantly platy nature of clay particles, they tend to reorient under pressure, and some way must be found to avoid this. The methods recommended are: (i) adding a material whose shape will prevent

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Limiting particle diameter (μm)</th>
<th>Density of particles (g cm⁻³)</th>
<th>Centrifuge speed (rpm)</th>
<th>Centrifuge time at two temperatures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>20°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>2.65</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2.65</td>
<td>750</td>
<td>3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>2.50</td>
<td>2400</td>
<td>35.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diameter in micrometres finer than</th>
<th>Withdrawal depth (cm)</th>
<th>Elapsed time for withdrawal of sample in hours (h), minutes (m), and seconds (s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>20 s</td>
<td>20 s, 20 s, 20 s, 20 s, 20 s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 m 54 s</td>
<td>1 m 51 s</td>
<td>1 m 49 s, 1 m 46 s, 1 m 44 s, 1 m 41 s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 m 48 s</td>
<td>1 m 45 s</td>
<td>1 m 42 s, 1 m 39 s, 1 m 36 s, 1 m 33 s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 m 36 s</td>
<td>7 m 30 s</td>
<td>7 m 25 s, 7 m 20 s, 7 m 15 s, 7 m 10 s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 m 20 s</td>
<td>3 m 15 s</td>
<td>3 m 10 s, 3 m 5 s, 3 m 0 s, 3 m 0 s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 m 16 s</td>
<td>1 m 10 s</td>
<td>1 m 6 s, 1 m 1 s, 1 m 0 s, 1 m 0 s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 m 16 s</td>
<td>5 m 10 s</td>
<td>5 m 6 s, 5 m 1 s, 5 m 0 s, 5 m 0 s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 m 14 s</td>
<td>1 m 10 s</td>
<td>1 m 6 s, 1 m 1 s, 1 m 0 s, 1 m 0 s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 m 14 s</td>
<td>5 m 10 s</td>
<td>5 m 6 s, 5 m 1 s, 5 m 0 s, 5 m 0 s</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 7.4. (a) Pipette withdrawal times calculated from Stokes’ Law for spherical particles (SG = 2.65) in a settling column of water at different temperatures (after Galehouse, 1971).

Further treatment involving heating the sample in a furnace also helps to distinguish the individual clays. Heating to 375°C collapses smectite (and illite-smectites) to 10 Å while leaving the other clays unaffected. Heating to 550°C destroys kaolinite and certain chlorites. The effects of these tests on the various clay minerals are summarized in Table 7.6.

The distinction between the basal spacing of kaolinite at 7 Å and the second-order chloride reflection also at 7 Å is not satisfactorily determined by heating to 550°C. The problem can be resolved by a convenient method suggested by Schultz (1964) who dissolved the chloride by HCl treatment (6h at 60°C for 16 h) before obtaining another diffractogram. Any remaining 7 Å peak is therefore attributable to kaolinite although, as certain chlorites are known to offer variable resistance to acid attack (Kodama & Onuma, 1963), care must be taken.

To determine if a clay is a dioctahedral or trioctahedral-type, the d spacing of the (006) reflection is recorded. If a dioctahedral clay is present the spacing falls between the values 1.48–1.50 Å, if the clay is trioctahedral the spacing is 1.53–1.55 Å. However, if several clays are present in a sample this becomes a very difficult exercise.

Mixed-layer clays have spacings generally intermediate between those of their components (Fig. 7.19) and an excellent treatment of this topic is presented by Reynolds & Hower (1970) and Reynolds (1980). Of particular importance is the position of the basal spacing after glycolation of the oriented mount which, in the case of illite-montmorillonite mixed layer clays, occurs between 10 and 17 Å, the exact position depending on the composition of the mixed layer (Fig. 7.20). It should be noted that regular interstratified mixed layer clays give a random sequence of higher orders (see Table 7.3) and randomly interstratified clays give an irrational sequence (Fig. 7.19c, d).

For identification of more complex phases, Table 7.5 gives most of the necessary information. To obtain data on non-basal spacings, the unoriented samples are used.
7.4.4 Quantitative analysis

The quantitative analysis of clays is subject to similar, but more severe problems as for whole-rock analysis. The X-ray response for a particular clay mineral is strongly dependent on, among other things, grain size, crystallinity, structure and chemical composition. The problems have been discussed at length in the literature: Johns, Grim & Bradley (1954), Schultz (1960), Bradley & Grim (1961), Hinckley (1963), Gibbs (1967) and Carroll (1970), etc., and calculations or assumption of 'diffracting ability' factors and crystallinity indexes to correct the measured intensities have been proposed with varying degrees of success.

For rapid, reproducible semi-quantitative results, especially where large numbers of samples are involved, methods proposed by Schultz (1964), Biscaje (1965) and Weir, Ormerod & El-Mansey (1975) are particularly useful for comparative purposes. In these methods the intensities of the individual clay components are measured on an oriented mount, after various treatments (air dried, glycol solvated, and heating to 375 and 550°C in order to isolate the clay components) and the sum normalized to 100%.
Table 7.6. X-ray identification of the principal clay minerals (<2 μm) in an oriented mount of a separated clay fraction from sedimentary material (from Carroll, 1970)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mineral</th>
<th>Basal d spacings (Å)</th>
<th>Glycolation effect; 1 hr, 60°C</th>
<th>Heating effect, 1 hr</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kaolinite</td>
<td>7.15 Å (001); 3.75 Å (002)</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Becomes amorphous at 550–600°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaolinite, disordered</td>
<td>7.15 Å (001) broad; 3.75 Å broad</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Becomes amorphous at lower temperatures than kaolinite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Halloysite, 4H₂O</td>
<td>10 Å (001) broad</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Dehydrates to 2H₂O at 110°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Halloysite, 2H₂O</td>
<td>7.2 Å (001) broad</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Dehydrates at 125–150°C; becomes amorphous at 560–590°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mica, 2M</td>
<td>10 Å (002); 5 Å (004) generally referred to as (001) and (002)</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>(001) becomes more intense on heating but structure is maintained to 700°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Illite, 1Md</td>
<td>10 Å (002), broad, other basal spacings present but small</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>(001) noticeably more intense on heating as water layers are removed; at higher temperatures like mica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Montmorillonite Group</td>
<td>15 Å (001) and integral series of basal spacings</td>
<td>(001) expands to 17 Å with rational sequence of higher orders</td>
<td>At 300°C (001) becomes 9 Å</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vermiculite</td>
<td>14 Å (001) and integral series of basal spacings</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Dehydrates in steps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorite, Mg-form</td>
<td>14 Å (001) and integral series of basal spacings</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>(001) increases in intensity; &lt;800°C shows weight loss but no structural change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorite, Fe-form</td>
<td>14 Å (001) less intense than in Mg-form, integral series of basal spacings</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>(001) scarcely increases; structure collapses below 800°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixed-layer minerals</td>
<td>Regular, one (001) and integral series of basal spacings</td>
<td>No change unless an expandable component is present</td>
<td>Various, see descriptions of individual minerals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixed-layer minerals</td>
<td>Random, (001) is addition of individual minerals and depends on amount of those present</td>
<td>Expands if montmorillonite is a constituent</td>
<td>Depends on minerals present in inter-layered mineral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attapulgite (palygorskite)</td>
<td>High intensity d reflections at 10.5, 4.5, 3.28, 2.62 Å</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Dehydrates stepwise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sepiolite</td>
<td>High intensity reflections at 12.6, 4.31, 2.61 Å</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Dehydrates stepwise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amorphous clay, allophane</td>
<td>No d reflections</td>
<td>No change</td>
<td>Dehydrates and loses weight</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The method proposed by Weir et al. (1975) uses the equation:

\[
\frac{I_{\text{kaolinite}}}{2.5} + \frac{I_{\text{illite}}}{I_{\text{smectite}}} + \frac{I_{\text{chlorite}}}{2.0} = 100\%.
\]

The divisors have the function of correcting for the relatively greater X-ray responses of kaolinite and chlorite.

This method has the serious disadvantage common to all normalizing techniques in that an error in one component affects all the others, and also no account is taken of the presence of X-ray amorphous material.

If one wants a truly quantitative technique a more rigorous approach must be adopted. The introduction of an internal standard is certainly necessary and a material such as boehmite (\(\gamma\)-AIOOH) which has a similar mass absorption coefficient and X-ray response to clays, but a separate diffraction pattern, can be used. Just such a method is described by Griffin (1954) in which a known amount of boehmite (generally 10% by weight) is added to mixtures of standard clay minerals to produce calibration charts of percentage mineral against the relative intensity of the measured diffraction line to that of the 10% boehmite diffraction line.

Two difficulties are: (i) the mixing of platy particles satisfactorily, and (ii) variability of composition and degrees of crystallinity within clay groups.

The first problem can be alleviated by using a commercial mixing/grinding device (e.g. McCrone mill); the second problem can only really be overcome by preparing calibration curves from the actual clays under investigation. This technique was used by Gibbs (1967) in which he extracted, using a variety of techniques, the individual clay mineral components from selected samples, which were then used in the preparation of calibration curves. It is particularly useful in the analysis of large numbers of similar samples.

For more general purposes, 'typical' pure clays are used and these can be obtained from various commercial sources, an example being the Source Clays Repository. This organization was established by the Clay Mineral Society of the USA to provide workers with reference clay materials (Source Clays). For further information contact the curator of the sample collection, Professor William D. Johns, Source Clays, Department of Geology, University of Missouri, Columbia, Missouri 65211, USA. Another example is OECD, the Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development which also provides reference clays. Further details from Mlle S. Caillere, Laboratoire de Mineralogie du Museum National d'Histoire Naturelle, 61 rue de Buffon, Paris 5e, France. Data for the clay samples of the two organizations, together with useful information, are summarized in Van Olphen & Fripiat (1979).
7.4.5 Illite crystallinity

The X-ray diffraction response of illite is often used to give an indication of the diagenetic and low-grade metamorphic history of a sedimentary rock (e.g. Weaver, 1960; Kubler, 1968; Dunoyer de Segonzac, 1980). The diffraction pattern of clay minerals is dependent on the degree of crystallinity of the illite, which is itself dependent on the degree of metamorphism in Carboniferous sediments of the South Wales Coalfield, Gill et al. (1977) obtained a sharpness ratio of 2.0 in areas of no metamorphism, rising to 6.0 in a region of low grade metamorphism, where coals were up to anhydrite rank.

In some studies (e.g. Dunoyer de Segonzac, 1970), it appears that there is also a change in the chemistry of the illite, with an increase in the Al/Fe+Mg ratio with increasing metamorphic grade. This has been quantified by calculating an intensity ratio (IR) of the illite 5 and 10 A peaks, i.e. $I_{500}/I_{100}$. This ratio provides a measure of the degree of crystallinity and a change in the chemical composition of illite in the late diagenetic-early metamorphic realm. The degree of illite crystallinity, the sharpness ratio of Weaver (1960), is measured from the ratio of the height above the base line at 10.5 Å to the height above the base line at 10.5 Å. In a study of clay minerals as an indicator of degree of metamorphism in Carboniferous sediments of the South Wales Coalfield, Gill et al. (1977) obtained a sharpness ratio of 2.0 in areas of no metamorphism, rising to 6.0 in a region of low grade metamorphism, where coals were up to anhydrite rank.

7.4.6 Use of XRD data on mudrocks

For the study of mudrocks, X-ray diffraction analysis is the basic tool to determine the nature and proportion of the clay minerals present and from this to make deductions on, for example, the likely provenance of the sediment, the conditions of deposition and palaeoclimate, and the diagenesis and burial history.

Clays in sandstone and limestones are also identified by XRD. A brief note of these aspects of clay mineralogy is presented here, but a full account of the subject is given by Millot, 1970; Velde, 1977; Ebert, 1984) and the interested student should peruse the current issues of the Journal of Sedimentary Petrology, Sedimentology and the Proceedings of the International Clay Conference, held every 3 years or so, and generally published as a book (e.g. Van Olphen & Venkateswarlu, 1982).

Clay minerals in a sediment or sedimentary rock have three origins: (1) inheritance, (2) neoformation and (3) transformation. In the first, the clays are detrital and have been formed in another area, perhaps at a much earlier time, and they are stable in their present location. In the second, the clays have formed in situ and they have either been precipitated from solution or formed from amorphous silicate material. With transformation, inherited clays are modified by ion exchange or cation rearrangement. In the study of mudrocks, it is clearly important to be certain of the origin of the clays if meaningful interpretations are to be made. Inherited clays will give information on the provenance of the deposit and probably the climate there, whereas neoformed clays reflect the pore fluid chemistry, degree of leaching and temperature that existed within the sample at some stage. Transformed clays will carry a memory of inherited characteristics from the source area, together with information on the chemical environment to which the sample was later subjected.

There are three major locations where these three processes of clay mineral formation take place: (1) in the weathering and soil environment, (2) in the depositional environment and (3) during diagenesis and low-grade metamorphism. In the weathering environment, the types of clays produced, mainly by neoformation if fresh rock is being weathered, depend on the climate, drainage, rock type, vegetation and time involved. In very broad terms, illite is typical of soils where the degree of leaching is minimal, as in temperate and higher latitudes. Chlorite also forms under these conditions but, since it is more easily oxidized, it occurs preferentially in acid soils. Illite and chlorite are also in soils of arid regions where chemical processes are limited. Smectites are produced where the degree of leaching is intermediate or where soils are poorly drained. They also form in alkaline arid-zone soils. Mixed-layer clays mostly form through the leaching of pre-existing illite and mica. Kaolinite and halloysite are characteristic of acid tropical soils where leaching is intensive. Further leaching leads to vermiculite and then gibbsite through removal of silica. Some less common clay minerals are developed in particular soil environments, such as palaeosols and sea deposits in calcrites, Mg-rich soils and silcretes (e.g. Meyer & Pena dos Reis, 1985).

Clay minerals are generally little altered during transportation, by wind or water. In the marine environment, where most clays are eventually deposited, pelagic muds of the ocean basins have a clay mineralogy which is largely a reflection of the climate and weathering pattern of the source areas on adjacent land masses (e.g. Griffin, Winslow & Goldberg, 1968). Thus kaolinite is most common in low latitudes, particularly off major rivers draining regions of tropical weathering, and illite and chlorite are more common in higher latitude marine muds. Smectites are a common alteration product of volcanic ash so that their distribution on the seafloor does reflect oceanic volcanicity as well as the composition of river drainages and wind-borne mud. On continental shelves, there are local variations in the clay mineralogy of muds, reflecting the proximity to rivers and deltas. Thus clays can be used to demonstrate sediment dispersal patterns in estuaries, bays and on shelves (e.g. Knebel et al., 1977, studying the muds of San Francisco Bay, and Baker, 1973, following the path of suspended sediment from the River Columbia, off the NW United States coast).

There are differences in the grain sizes of the clay minerals which affect the distribution. Kaolinite is the coarsest (up to 5 μm), illite intermediate (0.1—0.3 μm) and smectite finer still, although the last commonly occurs as floccules several micrometres in diameter. As a result of these size differences, a kaolinite-rich zone may occur inshore of smectite—illite mud. There is the potential here for using the regional distribution of clays within a sedimentary basin to infer the direction of sediment transport and distance from source area. Studies of the clays on the Atlantic Ocean floor off the Amazon River revealed decreases in kaolinite and 10 Å mica (illite + muscovite), and increases in montmorillonite with increasing distance from the river mouth (Gibbs, 1977). These trends are explained as the result of physical sorting of the clays by size.

Transformation of terrestrial clays and neoformation appear to be minor on the seafloor, although chamosite and glauconite do form in sediment-starved locations. Glauconite may form from alteration of degraded relictaceous clays, such as kaolinite and sepiolite, to form a secondary clay mineral, which occurs in calcrites, Mg-rich soils and silcretes (e.g. Meyer & Pena dos Reis, 1985).

Non-marine mudrocks of lacustrine, fluvial and glacial environments will also reflect the character of the inherited, detrital type, with little transformation and neoformation taking place. In some lakes, however, with quite extreme salinities and chemistries, clay minerals may be transformed or neoformed. Sepiolite, paragorskite, attapulgite and corrensite (mixed layer chlorite-montmorillonite) occur in Mg-rich, alkaline lake sediments for example. Where there is volcanic ash in a lake sediment or soil, then clay minerals are commonly formed by alteration of the ash, along with other minerals such as zeolites.

In the burial diagenetic environment, there is a progressive alteration of the clay minerals with increasing temperature. One of the first transformations is smectite to mixed-layer smectite—illite and this then goes to illite. Chlorite also develops at depth, and into the zone of incipient metamorphism kaolinite is converted to illite and chlorite. These changes are discussed by Perry & Hower (1970), Hower et al. (1976), Iman & Shaw (1985), Jennings & Thompson (1986) and others and frequently they are related to vitrinite reflectance and timing of hydrocarbon generation. In addition, there is an increase in the crystallinity of illite, as explained in Section 7.4.5. Clearly, in interpreting the clay mineralogy of the mudrock, the burial history of the formation has to be taken into account. Burial diagenetic changes in clays may largely account for the uneven distribution of clays through time, with smectites and a lesser extent kaolinite being less abundant in older, especially Palaeozoic and Precambrian mudrocks, which are composed largely of illite and chlorite (Dunoyer de Segonzac, 1970).

From this brief discussion, it can be seen that the clay mineralogy of a sediment or sedimentary rock may reveal information on the palaeoclimate in the source area and on the nature of the source area itself. Samples taken vertically through a sequence of mudrocks may show the clay mineral assemblage which reflect changing climate or changing source area. Jacobs (1974), for example, discussed variations in the clay minerals of Cainozoic fore muds of the Southern Ocean in terms of the impending Pleistocene glacial cycle of the Antarctic continent and its effect on weathering and erosion rates. In a detailed study of just 2 m of rock, Spears & Sezgin (1985) recorded a decrease in kaolinite and increases in illite, chlorite, vermiculite and illite/smectite ratio across a Coal Measures marine band. They attributed this to a decrease in the contribution of mature clay from within the basin and to an increase in the proportion of the less mature clay from outside the basin, through time and during the marine trangression.
Keuper Marl (Mercia Mudstones), Jeans (1978) was able to distinguish a detrital (inherited) illite and chlorite assemblage occurring throughout the sequence, from an assemblage of neoformed Mg-rich clays (sepiolite, palygorskite, chlorite, smectite and corrensite) which occurs at particular horizons. The neoformed clays are the result of changes in water chemistry within the Keuper Basin, probably arising from the influx of marine waters. Retallack (1986) demonstrated that there was a change in the clay mineralogy of Cretaceous to Tertiary palaeosols of the NW United States, with decreasing kaolinite and increasing illite and chlorite up through the sequence resulting from a change in climate from more humid to more arid.

Clays can be neoformed within sandstones during diagenesis, and there are many case studies documenting this (see, e.g. Hancock & Taylor, 1978, discussing the Jurassic Brent Sand of the North Sea, which shows a change from kaolinite to illite with increasing depth, and an improvement in the illite crystallinity Fig. 7.21). Authigenic clays in sandstones may show much better-defined diffraction peaks than those in adjacent shales (e.g. Wilson & Pittman, 1977).

### 7.5 XRD of carbonates

X-ray diffraction is commonly used in the study of modern carbonate sediments, limestones and dolomites. XRD data can give information on the chemical composition of carbonate minerals, namely the Mg content of calcite and the Ca or Mg excess of dolomite. They can also be used to determine the ordering of dolomite crystals. The percentages of the various CaCO₃ minerals in a mixture can be calculated from X-ray peaks, but estimates of the dolomite content of dolomitic limestones are less precise. The main peaks of the common carbonate minerals, calcite, aragonite and dolomite are given in Table 7.3.

#### 7.5.1 Magnesium in calcite

The magnesium ion can substitute for calcium in the calcite lattice, and, since the Mg⁺⁺ ion is smaller than the Ca⁺⁺ ion, this results in a decrease in the d₀₀₂ lattice spacing (Goldsmith & Graf, 1958a). Several authors have produced a graph showing the mole % MgCO₃ against d₀₀₂ in angstrom units and 2θ for Cu Kα radiation and Fig. 7.22 from Graf & Heard (1961) is the one most commonly used. The precise position of the d₀₀₂ peak is obtained by using an internal standard such as halite, quartz or fluorite which has a major peak close to the main calcite peak (Table 7.3).

On the basis of magnesium content, calcite occurs in two forms: low Mg calcite (LMC) with 0 to 4 mole % MgCO₃ and high Mg calcite (HMC) with more than 4 mole %, but with a range of 11–19 mole % being most common. In modern tropical carbonate sediments, HMC is mainly of biogenic origin, coming from calcareous red algae, echinoderms, bryozoans and some benthic foraminifera. HMC micrite and bladed cements are common in reefs. LMC is also mostly of biogenic origin, coming from planktonic foraminifera, coccoliths and some molluscs. In addition to the ‘vital’ effect, the Mg⁺⁺ content of biogenic calcite is determined by water temperature: lower MgCO₃ occurs in skeletons precipitated in cooler waters. With marine calcite cements, too, those precipitated in colder, commonly deeper waters, have lower Mg⁺⁺. Although HMC grains and cements generally lose their Mg⁺⁺ during diagenesis, so that most ancient calcite is low in magnesium, a memory of the original high Mg is commonly retained. In limestones, original LMC will typically have 0–1 mole % MgCO₃, whereas original HMC may have a little more (2–3 mole %).

#### 7.5.2 Mixtures of CaCO₃ minerals

Many modern carbonate sediments consist of a mixture of three CaCO₃ minerals, aragonite, low Mg calcite, and high Mg calcite. Aragonite is a major constituent, coming from the shells and skeletons of green algae, corals and molluscs, and forming ooids and many marine cements. X-ray diffraction is the quickest method for determining the mineralogical composition of modern carbonates, although there has been discussion over whether peak height or peak area analysis should be used.

Careful grinding of the sample is important since this process determines the particle size of the powder and the structural damage to the minerals, which respond differently to the grinding. These differences can affect the XRD peak intensities (Gavish & Friedman, 1973). An original very fine crystal size or overgrinding producing too fine a powder results in a decrease of peak intensity. This effect is shown more by calcite than aragonite (e.g. Fig. 7.23 and Milliman, 1974), but even then it varies with the particular calcite skeleton being analysed. Excessive and hard grinding is to be avoided as this may lead to mineralogical changes in the sample through the heat generated and pressure applied. In general, marine biogenic calcites have similar peak intensities, largely because the crystal size is similar. The exception is echinoid material, which shows a greater peak intensity because of its larger crystal size. Reagent grade calcite also shows a greater peak intensity, and so should be avoided as a standard. A particle size of less than 63 μm is generally acceptable, obtained by grinding the sample for several minutes until all the powder will pass through a 200-mesh sieve. If aragonite is present this can be used as an internal standard to determine precisely the displacement of the high Mg calcite peak. If both LMC and HMC are present, then the two peaks will overlap; one will be a shoulder to the other. To determine the amounts of each mineral present, the ratio of the aragonite peak intensity to the sum of the LMC and HMC peaks is given in Table 7.4. Peak intensity can be measured by either peak height or peak area and in both cases a base-line is taken just above the background level.

Gavish & Friedman (1973) considered that peak height analysis was more reliable for separating LMC and HMC. They showed that the particle size and amount of structural damage through excessive grinding affected the peak areas more than the peak heights. Milliman & Bornholdt (1973), on the other hand, have shown that peak height is more reliable than peak area for sea-floor and river sediments.
was devised by Gunatilaka & Till (1971). They prepared a spike mixture by hand picking grains from the sediment, identifying their mineralogy by XRD, and then mixing them together in a determined proportion. The spike mixture was added to the unknown in 1:1 ratio and from a comparison of the diffraction traces of the spike and spike + unknown, calculation of peak areas and use of an equation, the percentages of the various minerals present can be deduced quite accurately. The advantage of this procedure is that the standard (the spike) is made from components which are present in the sediment, so that the diffraction behaviour will be similar.

### 7.5.3 XRD and dolomites

The mineral dolomite, CaMg(CO$_3$)$_2$, is commonly not stoichiometric, but has an excess of Ca$^{2+}$, up to Ca:Mg 58:42, or less commonly an excess of Mg, up to Ca$\approx$Mg$\approx$50. The effect of Ca$^{2+}$ substitution for Mg$^{2+}$ is to increase the cation lattice spacing (Fig. 7.22) and XRD is often used to determine this and give the Ca:Mg ratio, by measurement of the position of the $d_{002}$ peak relative to a standard. Apart from reference to Fig. 7.22, the Ca excess can be calculated from the equation of Lumsden (1979) relating mole % CaCO$_3$ ($N_{CaCO_3}$) to the $d_{002}$ spacing measured in ångstrom units ($d$): $N_{CaCO_3} = Md + B$, where $M$ is 333.33 and $B$ is 911.99. The $d_{002}$ spacing for 50.0% CaCO$_3$ is taken as 2.886 Å and for 55.0% CaCO$_3$ as 2.901 Å, based on Goldsmith & Graf (1958a).

Iron can substitute for aragonite in dolomite to give ferroan dolomite (>2 mole % FeCO$_3$) and ankerite with much higher values reaching 25 mole % FeCO$_3$. In view of the slightly larger size of the Fe$^{3+}$ ion relative to Mg$^{2+}$, with more than a few mole % FeCO$_3$, there is a noticeable increase in the lattice spacing of $d_{002}$ (Goldsmith & Graf, 1958b; Rundle, 1970; Al-Hashimi & Hemingway, 1974). In addition, the intensities of the XRD reflections are commonly weaker in ferroan dolomites. Al-Hashimi & Hemingway (1974) presented a standard curve for aragonite determination from peak area analysis (Fig. 7.25). From this, the percentage of aragonite which corresponds to the ratio can be read off, and the amount of calcite present can be found by subtraction. If both calcite minerals are in the sample, then a small calculation is needed to find the percentage of each (Fig. 7.24).

### Ordering of the Crystals

As a result of the segregation of the cations into separate sheets in the dolomite crystal, a set of superstructure reflections corresponding to $d_{002}$, $d_{004}$ and $d_{006}$ is revealed with XRD (Fig. 7.27), which is not present in the structurally similar calcite. The sharpness and relative intensities of these ordering peaks can be used to give a measure of the degree of ordering of the dolomite crystal. The greater the ratio of the heights of the ordering peak 015 to diffraction peak 110, the higher the degree of order. Dolomites which are non-stoichiometric are generally less well ordered than 'ideal' dolomite, through the occurrence of some Ca ions in the Mg sheet (or vice versa). It is theoretically possible for a 50:50 Ca:Mg carbonate to have no ordering reflec-
Although the consensus now (Land, 1980) is that the word should be restricted to synthetic dolomites, and if a naturally occurring Ca-Mg carbonate has the ordering reflections, no matter how weak, then it is a dolomite. Dolomite with an excess of Ca can simply be referred to as calcian dolomite.

XRD data from dolomites can be useful in providing a more detailed knowledge of the crystal structure and chemistry, and they can be used to distinguish between different types of dolomite within one carbonate formation. For example, Fig. 7.28 presents data from the Lower Carboniferous of South Wales where peritidal dolomicrites have different degrees of order and Ca/Mg ratios from mixing-zone dolomites and from burial 'vein' baroque dolomites. Lumsden & Chimahusky (1980) and Morrow (1978, 1982) identified three broad groups of dolomite, based on stoichiometry, texture and whether associated with evaporites or not (Fig. 7.29): I — coarsely-crystalline, sucrosic dolomites which are generally nearly stoichiometric (mode 50.0–51.0% CaCO₃), II — fine-grained dolomites associated with evaporites which are also nearly stoichiometric (mode 51.0–52.0% CaCO₃) and III — finely crystalline dolomites not associated with evaporites which are generally Ca-rich (54–56% CaCO₃). Groups II and III are usually early diagenetic, near-surface in origin. The underlying cause of these associations is thought to be the salinity and Mg/Ca ratio of dolomitizing solutions, with a climatic control important for groups II and III. Where there is an evaporite association (group II), indicating an arid climate, then pore fluids are likely to have had a high Mg/Ca ratio from precipitation of gypsum-anhydrite and aragonite. It is contended that the abundance of Mg²⁺ ions in the fluids would result in near stoichiometric dolomite. The calcian dolomites of group III are thought to have formed from solutions with lower Mg/Ca ratios, such as occur in mixing-zones, which are more active during humid climatic times. Group I dolomites are generally of late diagenetic burial origin and the near stoichiometry could reflect slow growth from dilute solutions, possibly aided by elevated temperatures.

Using new and published XRD data, Sperber, Wilkinson & Peacock (1984) obtained two pronounced modes at 51 and 55 mole % CaCO₃ in Phanerozoic dolomites which ranged from 48 to 57 mole % CaCO₃. They also found a bimodal distribution in the percentage of dolomite in carbonate rocks: a mode at 97% dolomite (dolostones) and at 20% (dolomitic limestones), indicating that carbonate rocks are either partially or completely dolomitized. Sperber et al. (1984) suggested that the dolomitic limestones, which generally contain rhombs of calcite dolomite, originated in diagenetically closed systems during high Mg calcite dissolution — low Mg calcite and dolomite precipitation, so that in these
rocks there was an internal supply of Mg$^{2+}$. The dolostones, on the other hand, consist of more stoichiometric dolomite, and are thus considered to have originated in more open diagenetic systems. A trend towards more stoichiometric dolomite in older dolostones is evident from the data of Lumsden & Chimausky (1980) and Sperber et al. (1984) and there is also a broad correlation of increasing stoichiometry with increasing crystal size. Both these features are consistent with dolomites undergoing solution-reprecipitation through diagenesis and the formation of more stoichiometric, better ordered dolomite from a less stoichiometric, poorly ordered original precipitate.

7.5.4 Calcite-dolomite mixtures

XRD charts have long been used to calculate the proportions of calcite and dolomite in a sample. As with CaCO$_3$ minerals, the ratio of the peak area of dolomite to calcite plus dolomite is converted to a percentage using a calibration curve. Several of these have been published (e.g. Tennant & Berger, 1957; Weber & Smith, 1961; Bromberger & Hayes, 1965; Royse, Waddell & Petersen, 1971; Lumsden, 1979; Fig. 7.30) and they have generally been constructed from a set of standard mixtures. However, there are several potential errors in the method which need to be considered and have been identified by comparing XRD data with dolomite—calcite ratios measured from stained thin sections (Lumsden, 1979; Gensmer & Weiss, 1980). One major problem is the stoichiometry of the dolomite. The position of the d$_{104}$ peak depends on the Ca excess and at higher CaCO$_3$ contents (>55%); this peak overestimates the dolomite content by some 10—12% (Lumsden, 1979). For this reason, it is best to use the d$_{113}$ peak of dolomite which is not affected by non-stoichiometry. The d$_{104}$ peak position is also affected by iron content (Fig. 7.26) and Al-Hashimi & Hemingway (1974) determined calibration curves for calcite—dolomite, calcite—ferroan dolomite and calcite—ankerite mixtures (Fig. 7.31). A difference in particle size of powdered samples relative to the crystallite size of the standard mixtures can introduce another error, since particle size influences peak area ratios. In preparing a calibration curve one should clearly try and have crystallites of similar size to those in the unknown samples. In addition, calcite and dolomite crystals may break up at a different rate during grinding or be of different grain size. Gensmer & Weiss (1980) found that grinding samples for between 10 and 20 minutes to give a particle size of around 5 μm overcame this problem. A further error arises if there is much quartz in the sample. The quartz d$_{200}$ peak (d = 2.285 Å) interferes with the calcite d$_{113}$ peak (d = 2.285 Å) and if there is more than around 20% quartz then the intensity of the calcite peak is increased, so that there appears to be more present than there actually is.

7.6 XRD of silica minerals

The metastable silica minerals which occur in young cherts, that is opaline silica and opal-CT, are best identified by X-ray diffraction. Opaline silica, sometimes referred to as Opal-Α (Jones & Segnit, 1971) is a highly disordered, nearly amorphous hydrous silica, with a very fine crystallite size of 11—15 Å. The XRD pattern of opal is a diffuse band between 6 and 2.8 Å, with a maximum at about 4.0 Å (see Fig. 7.32). The tests of radiolarians, diatoms and sponge spicules, which are the main constituents of deep sea siliceous oozes, are composed of opaline silica. Precious opal is also Opal-Α. Disordered cristobalite, sometimes called fususite and termed opal-CT by Jones & Segnit (1971), is more obviously crystalline, although still hydrous, and consists of irregularly stacked layers of low-(α-) cristobalite and

![Calibration curve for determination of dolomite in calcite, using dolomite/calcite ratio of area of (113)](http://jurassic.ru/)
Fig. 7.32. Typical X-ray diffraction patterns of opaline minerals arranged in order of increasing maturity: (a) opal A, such as praseo opal, (b) immature chert or porcelanite of Middle Eocene age from the Equatorial Pacific, (c) Monterey chert from California, (d) granular chert and (e) vitreous chert from the Lower Tertiary of Cyprus. C = cristobalite, T = tridymite, Q = quartz.

low-tridymite. The XRD pattern consists of broadened, but well-defined peaks of low cristobalite, especially \( d_{400} \) at 4.1 Å and \( d_{500} \) at 2.5 Å, and tridymite peaks, notably \( d_{500} \) at 4.25–4.3 Å. Disordered cristobalite is an intermediate mineral in the diagenesis of opaline siliceous to quartz chert. It occurs in porcelanites, most common opals, bentonitic clays and siliceous glass. In fact, with increasing depth of burial, there is a decrease in the \( d_{400} \) spacing of opal CT, from a maximum of 4.11 Å to a minimum of 4.04 Å. In the general field of diagenesis cristobalite also becomes more ordered, with crystals much larger than a micro­

mect, for example, in Mesozoic and older successions. In fact, there is also a progressive increase in the crystallinity of the quartz, until it has peaks as strong and sharp as quartz of metamorphic and igneous origin. Papers noting the X-ray diffraction patterns of siliceous sediments and rocks can be found in Hsu & Jenkyns (1974), notably von Rad & Rosch (1974) and in Garrison et al. (1981). Williams et al. (1985) have recently re­viewed the changes in siliceous minerals during diagenesis.

8. Use of the Scanning Electron Microscope in sedimentology

8.1 INTRODUCTION

This chapter is intended to introduce the reader to the use of the SEM in sedimentology. In the space available it is not possible to go into details and theory of machine operation, and neither is it intended to evaluate the great range of SEM machines and ancillary instrumentation now on the market. When purchasing an SEM it is essential to consider carefully the features required and to ensure that the machine is capable of taking any additions such as analytical equipment and a backscattered electron detector at a later date. In general it is advisable to buy the best SEM one can afford as small models have limited versatility.

The techniques and examples described here are those most commonly in use in general sedimentological studies involving the SEM and will be found sufficient for most studies undertaken in undergraduate and postgraduate courses in sedimentology. If more detail is required on either theory or practice the reader is referred to Smart & Tovey (1982), McHardy & Birnie (1987) and to the volumes edited by Hayat (1974—78). Types of backscattered electron detectors are described by Pye & Krinsley (1984). These publications illustrate the great advances that have been made in SEM techniques from the early days of SEM development in Cambridge. With the advent of the first commercially available SEM in 1965 (Cambridge Scientific Instruments) there has been a rapid expansion of techniques and applications to suit a great variety of scientific disciplines, and within the broad area of sedimentology the SEM is used for a wide variety of investigations as described by many authors in Whalley (1978).

The SEM is of great value in any situation requiring examination of rough surfaces at a magnification range from \( \times 20 \) up to \( \times 100,000 \). It is the great depth of focus which enables excellent photographs to be taken of features too small and rough to be within the focus range of a binocular microscope, and features so small and delicate that they would be destroyed in the making of thin sections. The major contribution of the SEM to sedimentology has been in the general field of diagenesis where rock texture, pores and delicate pore fillings can be examined on fresh broken surfaces (Wilson & Pittman, 1977; Blanche & Whitaker, 1978; Waugh, 1978a, b; Hurst & Irwin, 1982; Welton, 1984). With an analytical facility (essential for most diagenesis work) individual grains can be analysed and identified in situ and information gained on diagenetic sequences.

Examination of broken surfaces is frequently appropriate for porous rocks; non-porous rocks can be examined on polished and etched surfaces, the method of etching being determined by the desired feature to be observed. Backscattered electron (BSE) images of polished surfaces provide atomic number contrast so enabling recognition of different mineral phases and permitting the use of automatic image analysis systems (Dilks & Graham, 1985). Applications of BSE imagery are illustrated by Pye & Krinsley (1984, 1986b) and White & Huggett (1984). Individual grains can be examined for details of surface texture with a view to elucidating their transport history (Krisnley & Doornkamp, 1973; Bull, 1981); grains from heavy mineral separations can be rapidly examined, analysed and photographed. Individual grains or loose sediments can be embedded in resin, polished and etched to reveal internal structures and origins, this is particularly useful with carbonates (Hay, Wise & Steiglitz, 1970).

In sediments and rocks with an organic component, detailed information can be gained on the physical and chemical breakdown of bioclasts (Alexanderson, 1979). Biological destruction by boring algae (Lukas, 1979) and fungi and also by organisms grazing grain surfaces can be deduced (Farrow & Clokie, 1979). The extensive use of the SEM in the study of microfossils is outside the scope of this book. The SEM can also be extremely useful as an auxiliary tool for checking sizes of objects, such as the crystal size of clay separations intended for XRD work.
8.2 BASIC FUNCTION AND MODES OF OPERATION OF THE SEM

The SEM (Fig. 8.1) comprises an electron gun which produces a stream of electrons to which an accelerating voltage of 2–30 kV is applied. The beam passes through a series of two or more electromagnetic lenses to produce a small (10 nm or less) demagnified image of the electron source on the specimen. For most geological work a tungsten hairpin filament is used as the electron source with a vacuum of about 10⁻⁵ torr. Brighter images and better definition can be obtained with a LaB₁₆ gun at 10⁻⁶ torr and for ultrafine definition a field emission source operating at 10⁻⁷ torr can be used, but this requires special seals and pumping arrangements to achieve the required vacuum.

Before passing through the final electromagnetic lens a scanning raster deflects the electron beam so that it scans the surface of the specimen. The scan is synchronized with that of the cathode ray tube and a picture built up of the scanned area of the specimen. Contrast in the cathode ray picture is due to variation in reflectivity across the surface of specimen.

When the electron beam strikes the surface of the specimen (Fig. 8.2) some electrons are reflected as backscattered electrons (BSE) and some liberate low energy secondary electrons (SE). Emission of electromagnetic radiation from the specimen occurs at various wavelengths but those of principle interest are visible light (cathodoluminescence) and X-rays. The backscattered (BSE) and secondary (SE) electrons reflected and emitted from the specimen are collected by a scintillator which emits a pulse of light at the arrival of an electron. The light emitted is then converted to an electrical signal and amplified by the photomultiplier. After further amplification the signal passes to the cathode ray tube grid. The scintillator is usually held at a positive potential of 5–10 kV to accelerate low energy emitted electrons sufficiently for them to emit light when they hit the scintillator. The scintillator has to be shielded to prevent the high potential of the scintillator deflecting the primary electron beam. The metal shield includes an open metal gauze which faces the specimen and allows passage of most electrons to the scintillator surface.

8.2.1 Emission (SE) and reflection (BSE) modes of operations

During normal operation both reflected and emitted electrons are collected (Fig. 8.3), and the scintillator shield and gauze are kept at a positive potential. When operated in the reflective (BSE) mode the low energy secondary electrons (SE) are prevented from reaching the collector by application of a negative potential (−100 to −300 V) to the shield and gauze and only the high energy reflected electrons are collected. The standard type of collector used is a highly directional scintillator-photomultiplier which can be placed well away from the specimen since the low energy secondary electrons are attracted to the scintillator by the applied voltage. This type of detector is not very efficient at collecting high energy reflected electrons and a purpose-built BSE detector is required. Three types of BSE detectors are in common use.

These are: (1) Solid State Conductor Devices; (2) Wide-angle Scintillator-Photomultiplier Detectors such as the Robinson Detector (Fig. 8.4); (3) Multi-ple Scintillator-Photomultiplier Detectors.

The basic function of these BSE detectors is described by V.N.E. Robinson (1980) and Pye & Kinsley (1984); all designs of BSE detectors tend to a large solid angle with respect to the specimen to collect as many high-energy electrons as possible (see also Section 8.3.4).

Contrast in the image produced is due to a number of factors:

(a) General topography and orientation of the specimen surface. Reflected electrons (BSEs) generally have high enough energy to travel in straight lines and thus a suitable angular relation must exist between beam, surface and collector, hence the advantage of wide angle detectors. Low energy secondary electrons (SEs) have paths which are easily bent by the field created by the potential on the collector shield. Thus information can be collected from areas which do not have a direct line of sight to the collector.

Tilting the specimen towards the collector increases the efficiency of collection, and hence brightness, particularly in the reflective mode. Thus brightness of image depends on orientation of surfaces on the specimen.

(b) Chemistry of the specimen surface. The efficiency of reflection of electrons from a flat surface inclined towards the detector is dependent on the chemistry of the surface. The reflection coefficient increases as the atomic number increases (Thornton, 1968) and hence particles with higher atomic numbers appear brighter. Operated in the normal reflection-emission mode (SEs + BSEs) this effect is usually masked by topographic effects, but can be most effectively utilized with a BSE detector to produce images of polished surfaces which, under favourable conditions, can reveal differences in atomic number down to 0.12 (Hall & Lloyd, 1981).
8.2.3 Cathodoluminescent mode of operation

The CL operation mode utilizes the visible light emitted when electrons strike the specimen. Materials vary greatly in their luminescent properties and minor traces of impurities can affect the luminescent properties. Emission is also altered by lattice strain resulting from crystal defects and residual strain.

Collection of the emitted light is achieved by focusing it with a lens into a light guide and on to a photomultiplier. Picture contrast is due to a variety of factors. Topography of the specimen is important but the resulting features of greater interest are due to chemical variations, crystal defects and crystal orientation. Further details on this technique using the SEM can be found in Muir & Grant (1974), Grant (1978), Krinsley & Tovey (1978) and Smart & Tovey (1982). The multiple scintillator–photomultiplier type of BSE detector can be adapted for cathodoluminescence work. In the Philips Multi-Function Detector, cathodoluminescence detector elements can be substituted for BSE detector elements (Pye & Windsor-Martin, 1963). Rapport et al. (1985) illustrated contrasting BSE and CL images of a sandstone, and further examples are shown in Fig. 8.8. The reader is also referred to Chapter 6 on cathodoluminescence in this volume.

8.3 SEM ANCILLARY EQUIPMENT AND TECHNIQUES

8.3.1 Photographic equipment and techniques

EQUIPMENT

The choice of a camera for use with an SEM is largely a matter of user preference. Many machines are equipped with a good quality 35-mm single lens reflex camera for routine work. This is the cheapest mode of operation, using a high speed film such as Ilford HPS or Kodak Tri-X. For many purposes a slower film such as Ilford FP4 is satisfactory and may be preferable if long scan times of 5 minutes or more are used. It may be preferred to have a larger negative size to reduce the photographic enlargement phase and to use a '120' or a '70-mm' camera

Some machines are designed to take a Polaroid camera and this system has the great advantage that an instant picture is obtained and the operator can ensure that a picture of the desired quality has been obtained before moving on to examine other areas of the specimen. The great disadvantages are that picture quality is lost if the print has to be rephotographed to produce copies and it is an expensive process.

An ideal system is a Polaroid positive/negative film which produces both a print and a large size negative. The necessary photographic solutions have to be kept fresh and at hand, but where both rapid results and a quality negative are required the system is excellent.

TECHNIQUES

The excellent resolution and great depth of field of the SEM have made it very popular for providing illustrations for a wide variety of geological studies. The quality of SEM photographs in geological journals is highly variable, ranging from excellent to examples displaying many of the faults illustrated and discussed in Section 8.6.2. In some cases the paper quality of the journal is responsible for poor reproduction.

For most sedimentological work simple views of surfaces are all that is required and with most machines a zoom facility enables the operator to compose the photograph satisfactorily. If it is proposed to make a multiple plate of photographs it is helpful to take the shots at the same magnification and at the same tilt angle, and with glass or plastic plates the overlap must be sufficient to compose the plate without the necessity of joining together. The choice of a camera for use with an SEM is largely a matter of user preference. Many machines are equipped with a good quality 35-mm single lens reflex camera for routine work. This is the cheapest mode of operation, using a high speed film such as Ilford HPS or Kodak Tri-X. For many purposes a slower film such as Ilford FP4 is satisfactory and may be preferable if long scan times of 5 minutes or more are used. It may be preferred to have a larger negative size to reduce the photographic enlargement phase and to use a '120' or a '70-mm' camera.

Some machines are designed to take a Polaroid camera and this system has the great advantage that an instant picture is obtained and the operator can ensure that a picture of the desired quality has been obtained before moving on to examine other areas of the specimen. The great disadvantages are that picture quality is lost if the print has to be rephotographed to produce copies and it is an expensive process.

An ideal system is a Polaroid positive/negative film which produces both a print and a large size negative. The necessary photographic solutions have to be kept fresh and at hand, but where both rapid results and a quality negative are required the system is excellent.

TECHNIQUES

The excellent resolution and great depth of field of the SEM have made it very popular for providing illustrations for a wide variety of geological studies. The quality of SEM photographs in geological journals is highly variable, ranging from excellent to examples displaying many of the faults illustrated and discussed in Section 8.6.2. In some cases the paper quality of the journal is responsible for poor reproduction.

For most sedimentological work simple views of surfaces are all that is required and with most machines a zoom facility enables the operator to compose the photograph satisfactorily. If it is proposed to make a multiple plate of photographs it is helpful to take the shots at the same magnification and at the same tilt angle, and with glass or plastic plates the overlap must be sufficient to compose the plate without the necessity of joining together. The choice of a camera for use with an SEM is largely a matter of user preference. Many machines are equipped with a good quality 35-mm single lens reflex camera for routine work. This is the cheapest mode of operation, using a high speed film such as Ilford HPS or Kodak Tri-X. For many purposes a slower film such as Ilford FP4 is satisfactory and may be preferable if long scan times of 5 minutes or more are used. It may be preferred to have a larger negative size to reduce the photographic enlargement phase and to use a '120' or a '70-mm' camera.

Some machines are designed to take a Polaroid camera and this system has the great advantage that an instant picture is obtained and the operator can ensure that a picture of the desired quality has been obtained before moving on to examine other areas of the specimen. The great disadvantages are that picture quality is lost if the print has to be rephotographed to produce copies and it is an expensive process.

An ideal system is a Polaroid positive/negative film which produces both a print and a large size negative. The necessary photographic solutions have to be kept fresh and at hand, but where both rapid results and a quality negative are required the system is excellent.
provide a pleasing match. When mounting the photographs, joints can be made less obvious by matching along prominent features such as sharp grain margins to avoid contrast differences.

It may be possible to take montage photographs in the emission mode without tilting the specimen, thus avoiding the worst features of distortion, and some machines have a tilt compensation device which helps reduce distortion. Generally a balance has to be struck between distortion and picture quality. The value of montages is that fine detail and its distribution can be evaluated over large areas: the ultimate example must be the 3 × 3 m montage by Wellendorf & Krinsley (1980) consisting of over 1100 SEM photographs taken at x 4300 to cover a single quartz grain! Unfortunately the montage loses a little detail in the required reduction to 135 mm diameter for publication!

STEREOSCOPIC MICROGRAPHS

Any specimen stage which enables the specimen to be tilted permits the taking of stereoscopic pairs. Methods that can be employed are discussed by Tovey (1978) and Smart & Tovey (1982). The most common method used is the ‘tilted convergent’ method whereby the specimen is tilted by a small angle (±2°–5°) about a mean tilt angle. This method ensures that the specimen is facing the detector in both positions. The illumination is effective from the side in this method and the photographs must be rotated by 90° for stereoscopic viewing.

Techniques vary depending on the type of specimen stage, but in general one must ensure that the same area is photographed on each occasion. This can be achieved by sketching the first view on a transparent overlay on the screen. The magnification is then reduced to less than 1000 while keeping track of a convenient reference feature near the centre of the screen. This may then be tilted by the desired amount and the reference feature brought back to its previous position using the X.Y controls. The magnification can then be increased to the correct figure and the desired feature checked with its outline previously drawn on the screen overlay. Any refocusing should be done with the Z control to avoid image rotation and magnification changes due to alteration of working distance. The second photograph can then be taken.

Detailed discussion of stereoscopic techniques can be found in Clarke (1975) including methods for accurate calculation of dimensions of surface relief features. Surprisingly little use has been made of stereoscopic techniques in sedimentology, but examples can be seen in Smart & Tovey (1982), and Whitaker (1978) used stereo pairs to illustrate diagenetic textures in the Brent Sandstone (Middle Jurassic, North Sea). Much more use could be made of this technique for illustrating diagenetic textures on rough surfaces.

8.3.2 Alpha-numerical displays

Some machines have built in alpha-numerical displays on which a variety of information can be recorded directly on to the photographic negative, for other machines such a display can be added as an optional extra. Most simple displays permit the operator to identify the photograph with one or more serial numbers, so saving lengthy cross-checking with notes on long negative sequences, and also provide information on operating kV, scale bar length and laboratory or user’s name or number.

The information display may only appear on the recording screen, thus the operator must ensure that vital areas of the object to be photographed will not be covered by the display.

8.3.3 Analytical equipment

For most sedimentological work it is essential to have some form of analytical facility on the SEM for rapid checking of grain compositions. An Energy Dispersive X-ray analysis system (EDS) is commonly used which generally permits analysis at a specific spot of about 1 μm diameter (Fig. 8.7) or to collect emissions from a specific line on the screen or the whole screen area. Many systems also have the facility whereby maps of the distribution of particular elements in the screen area can be built up and these can be compared with both SE and BSE images as illustrated by Loughman (1984), White et al. (1984), Gawthorpe (1987) and Fig. 8.9.

Depending on a suitable system being available, quantitative analysis can be performed on the SEM but for most sedimentological work a good qualitative system is satisfactory. The majority of sedimentological SEM work involves the study of rough surfaces, and surface topography affects factors such as the intensity and depth of X-ray production, as well as the absorption effect. Rough surfaces can also obstruct the path of X-rays to the collector and backscattered electrons and X-rays can produce radiation from areas outside the primary target area of the beam (Fig. 8.6).

To eliminate this situation, the specimen should be reasonably flat and tilted to face the detector. Even in this situation there will be areas (e.g. within deep pores) from which low count rates result in small peaks with much background noise. Background noise may mask relatively low intensity peaks. Another problem is that of extraneous X-rays arriving at the detector. These unwanted X-rays are produced by backscattered electrons and X-rays from the target area of the beam which strike other surfaces which have a line of sight to the detector. The result can be that in an attempted analysis of a grain in a quartzose sandstone, Si may be detected from extraneous X-rays from quartz rather than from the grain being analysed. Some of the effects of analysis of rough surfaces are illustrated by Fig. 8.7. Whereas some of these factors can be compensated for as described by Bommack (1973), it is essential to do quantitative analysis using polished surfaces which can be compared with similarly prepared standards (Chapter 9).

8.3.4 Back scattered electron detectors

The purpose of these detectors has been explained (Section 8.2.1) and such a detector is an excellent addition to an SEM for the production of charge-free images of rough surface material and for images of polished surfaces to show atomic number contrast (Fig. 8.9).

The solid state conductor type of BSE detector consists of an annular silicon diode mounted between the specimen and the final lens. Unlike early versions, the modern ones can operate at TV scan rates. This form of detector appears to be the cheapest, but produces good results as shown by Pye & Krinsley (1984) and Dilks & Graham (1985).

The wide-angle scintillator-photomultiplier type of detector is typically used with the SEM detector (Robinson, 1975) which performs well but has a rather bulky detector head. There can be space problems with relatively small SEM chambers if an EDS detector is also required to be in position. Multiple scintillator-photomultiplier detectors have up to four detection elements mounted between the specimen and final lens. This is a highly efficient (but more expensive) system and in the case of the Philips Multi-Function Detector can be modified to perform cathodoluminescence work.

For further details of the operation and uses of these types of detector refer to V.N.E. Robinson (1980) and the well-illustrated account by Pye & Krinsley (1984).

8.3.5 Charge-Free Anticontamination System (CFAS)

The CFAS system can be used in conjunction with a back-scattered electron detector such as the Robinson detector and operates by maintaining a small residual gas pressure of between 0.01 and 0.5 torr in
the specimen chamber. It is operated by having separate diffusion pumps on the chamber and column, gas leakage through the 200 μm final aperture is not significant. In fitting the CFAS system the secondary electron detector HV supply is disconnected, thus it is not possible to switch directly from normal operation to CFAS operation.

The advantage of the system is that specimens can be put in as received without the need for any special preparations and coatings. Gas ionization in the chamber is always equal to charge accumulation and thus charging is automatically eliminated. Specimens which are damp or oily and which would normally contaminate the column can be examined.

This system is excellent for geological use on any samples requiring rapid examination for mineralogical composition, especially rapid search for small heavy-element grains (B.W. Robinson, 1980; Robinson & Nickel, 1979). An added advantage is that filament life is reported to be increased as compared with conventional operation, but more frequent cleaning of the column may be found necessary.

8.3.6 Image analysis -

The use of image analysis of BSE images produced from flat surfaces promises to be an extremely useful technique. Dilks & Graham (1985) have described the application of a Kontron SEM-IPS image analyser coupled to a SEM and demonstrated how powerful and fast the technique can be to machine-discriminate minerals and porosity on the basis of levels of grey of a calibrated BSE image. Using the system, rocks can be screened for particular minerals and point counted for a range of defined minerals. Grain size distributions of components of the rock can be produced, and pore size and two-dimensional pore throat size analysed. The limitation of the technique is the inability to discriminate between two minerals which have the same image intensity.

8.4 SAMPLE COLLECTION

8.4.1 Surface material and outcrops

Field sampling of material for SEM studies requires that some elementary precautions are taken and sufficient observations made at the sample site. Since SEM studies will probably only constitute part of any laboratory study, sufficient material must be gathered for all possible aspects, such as grain-size analysis and thin section preparation.

Unconsolidated material in which the fabric is not required to be preserved can be collected as a bag sample (dry) or bottle sample (wet). Samples containing live or dead organic material may need to be preserved in alcohol if the samples cannot be immediately treated. Aluminium foil is useful for wrapping small samples to prevent contamination and the wrapped samples can be safely transported in plastic bottles. Cloth or paper is to be avoided since fibres are likely to be shed into the sample.

Imprépignation of unconsolidated sediments in the field provides a later opportunity to examine fabric details using thin sections or the SEM. For suggested sample preparation see Section 8.5.2.

Consolidated rock material is generally collected in the traditional geological manner by use of a hammer. However, such violence can have the effect of producing cracks, fracturing grains and crushing porous material. Samples must be sufficiently large to avoid such effects and (unless it is the object of the study) must be stored in soil bottles. Field sampling of unconsolidated material is not recommended.

Field sampling of material for SEM studies requires that some elementary precautions are taken and sufficient observations made at the sample site. Since SEM studies will probably only constitute part of any laboratory study, sufficient material must be gathered for all possible aspects, such as grain-size analysis and thin section preparation.

Unconsolidated material in which the fabric is not required to be preserved can be collected as a bag sample (dry) or bottle sample (wet). Samples containing live or dead organic material may need to be preserved in alcohol if the samples cannot be immediately treated. Aluminium foil is useful for wrapping small samples to prevent contamination and the wrapped samples can be safely transported in plastic bottles. Cloth or paper is to be avoided since fibres are likely to be shed into the sample.

Imprépignation of unconsolidated sediments in the field provides a later opportunity to examine fabric details using thin sections or the SEM. For suggested sample preparation see Section 8.5.2.

Consolidated rock material is generally collected in the traditional geological manner by use of a hammer. However, such violence can have the effect of producing cracks, fracturing grains and crushing porous material. Samples must be sufficiently large to avoid such effects and (unless it is the object of the study) must be stored in soil bottles. Field sampling of unconsolidated material is not recommended.

Fig. 8.5. Comparison of cathodoluminescence and backscattered electron imagery.

(d.e.f) Rock is a porous sandstone from the Jurassic Brent Group, N North Sea. (d) BSE image with quartz (grey) and porosity (black). Cathodoluminescence image (e) negative and interpretation (f) showing detrital quartz grain shapes (g) and zoned quartz overgrowths (o) representing different stages of quartz cementation. Minor kaolinite (k) is also present within pores (p).

(a—c) The rock is a Precambrian dolostone from the Dalradian of Scotland in which phlogopite mica crystals grew during metamorphism. Subsequently veins developed, tending to propagate parallel to the phlogopite crystals, and were filled by chemically-zoned calcite crystals. (a) Cathodoluminescence image shows the fine-grained dolomite host-rock luminescing brightly, the phlogopite crystals not luminescing, whilst the calcite shows an intricate zonal pattern invisible in plane polarized light. (b) This backscattered electron image is of a similar area to (a). Faint zoning is visible in the calcite which is overall brighter than the phlogopite and the dolomite because of its higher average atomic number. Bright flecks in the dolomite and calcite are artefacts. (c) shows a magnified backscattered image in which the atomic number contrast has been electronically amplified to show the zonation more distinctly. Microprobe analysis shows Fe, Mn and Mg zonation in the calcite.

(d—h) Chemical variations in a dolomite crystal from the Pendleside Limestone, Lower Carboniferous, Bowland Basin, northern England. (d) Subhedral dolomite crystal in silicified limestone. The light zones rimming the crystal suggest the presence of elements with higher atomic numbers compared with the dull core. Note the irregular contact between the dull and light zones. Scale bar = 50 μm. Back-scattered electron photomicrograph (BSEM). (e) DIGIMAP of view in (d) for Ca. Note relatively uniform distribution. Scale bar = 25 μm (same for f–h). (f) DIGIMAP of view in (d) for Mg. Depletion in Mg in the crystal rim relative to the core is indicated by the darker nature of the rim. (g) DIGIMAP of view in (d) for Fe. Note the very low Fe content in the black core compared with the grey rim. (h) DIGIMAP for Mn showing similar distribution to Fe (g).
study) to be unaffected by weathering. Since the final sample to be used in any SEM study must be clean it is not practicable to collect small rock chips in the field. Many pitfalls exist in preparation of samples and ample material should be collected. It is advisable to collect oriented specimens so that both way-up and geographical orientation are known.

Field collection of porous rocks should be done with regard to possible fluids in the pore space. For example, on a shore section the pores may be filled with fresh or salt water and may also be regularly air-filled as tides fall or cliffs dry. Such possibilities of long continued interchange of gas and fluid and of flow through the pore system should be considered in any study of surface collected material.

Collection of material by use of a portable drill producing a short, small diameter core is also likely to be unsatisfactory if it is hoped to observe delicate growths within pore space. The forces of fluid pressure and vibration are likely to affect the fabric within pore space. Joslin (1977) described a tool for collecting samples of poorly consolidated soft sediments (e.g. chalk). An 80-mm core barrel with toothed end is gently drilled into the rock with a hand operated drill (brace). The core obtained can be mounted direct on to a stub in the field after trimming if no further treatment is required prior to mounting.

8.4.2 Subsurface material

Material from subsurface cores must be examined and sampled with as much knowledge as possible of the conditions under which the core was taken and any subsequent laboratory treatment that may have taken place.

Preserved samples (pore fluids sealed immediately the core is brought to the surface) are obviously the best to work with and will preserve most in the way of original texture. Such samples are suitable for advanced techniques such as critical-point drying (Section 8.5). If the core is fresh and still wet when sampled it can be advantageous to prevent further drying by sealing samples or keeping them in simulated formation fluid.

If the core has already been air dried there is little point in using advanced techniques of preparation; the damage to delicate structures such as illite has probably already taken place. Should the core have been slabbed it may already have been dried and rewetted.

Whatever the state of a core any sample for SEM examination should be taken from as near the centre of the core as possible when the core is still in 'the round'. This will hopefully avoid drilling mud which may have invaded pore space at the margin of the core. A zone of invasion or else of flushing can frequently be seen in freshly cut cores. If the core to be sampled has been slabbed the cut and adjacent areas should also be avoided for similar reasons.

Penetration of organic material such as coccolith plates into pores during injection of sea water into reservoir rocks has been described by Hancock (1978a); it is thus advisable to consider the possibility that any rock with large pores and high permeability may have had material introduced to the pore space by the passage of fluids through the sample.

Sidewall cores are less satisfactory as they are usually taken by shooting a short tube into the wall of the borehole with an explosive charge. This process frequently results in visible crushing of fabric and fracturing of grains. Care should be taken to avoid any mudcake that may be present on the walls of the borehole.

Cuttings from boreholes are the least satisfactory, but can be cleaned and may provide useful information. However they are normally only obtained from relatively well lithified, low porosity material and not from the most porous and permeable rocks in the borehole. In all cases where borehole material is used electric logs should be consulted for information on other sedimentological and petrological aspects.

8.5 SAMPLE TREATMENT

8.5.1 Porous rocks to be viewed on fractured surfaces

The following preparation techniques are generally used for viewing broken surfaces of porous rocks which fracture around grains rather than through grains. The method of preparation of material can have a marked effect on the fabric of delicate clays such as filamentous illite present within pore space. McHardy, Wilson & Tait (1982) have shown how critical-point drying can preserve features which would be destroyed by air-drying and freeze-drying techniques. The value of using critical-point drying is that the technique prevents the passage through the pores of an air—liquid interface or an interface...
between immiscible liquids. It is the passage of such an interface which can cause collapse and reorientation of clays within pore space. It is known that the specimen has already been air dried, advanced techniques of preparation cannot restore the situation. Further useful details of preparation techniques for clays are given by McHardy & Birnie (1987).

**AIR-DRIED SAMPLES**

Samples previously air dried and which contained water as the pore fluid can be examined without further treatment, but it is frequently advisable to wash the specimen with distilled water to remove any chlorides or other soluble salts which may have crystallized in pore space due to the evaporation of saline pore water. This is best achieved by soaking a sample, not more than 1 cm thick, in distilled water until it is chloride free. (The time taken will depend on permeability and salinity of the evaporated pore water.) This technique is also useful for modern marine sediments and rock material collected from shore sections.

Air drying, combined with removal of water soluble material, is also a technique which can be used to study the soluble salts and the effects of their removal. This has applications in the study of weathering of rocks and the formation of evaporites. If delicate material such as fibrous illite is suspectable to exist in pore space and either time or lack of apparatus precludes use of critical-point drying, better results may be obtained by air drying samples from amyl acetate. The advantage of this method is that amyl acetate has a much lower surface tension than water and so the forces exerted at the liquid–gas interface as the specimen dries are reduced.

**OIL-SATURATED SAMPLES**

Rocks that are oil-saturated, or which contain oil residues after evaporation of lighter hydrocarbons, must have the hydrocarbon removed prior to SEM examination. If oil is not removed it is vaporized by the electron beam and will make the SEM column dirty and reduce picture quality. Oil also prevents the efficient coating of the sample with gold, resulting in charging of the specimen and poor resolution pictures.

Oil can be removed by use of solvents such as acetone, xylene, toluene, chloroform and trichloroethane. Chloroform and trichloroethane are the most efficient at removing oil. It is possibly safer to use trichloroethane than chloroform, but full safety precautions (gloves and fume cupboard) should be taken in handling all these solvents.

**Method.** A sample measuring about 10 x 10 x 5 mm is immersed in the solvent and sealed in an air-tight jar (to prevent fumes). The solvent is changed every 12 hours. The process is repeated until all the oil has been removed; this can be judged by lack of a residual oil film on evaporation of a few drops of the used solvent on a glass slide. With reasonably permeable rocks two changes of trichloroethane are normally sufficient to remove the oil. The sample is then allowed to air dry at room temperature for 24 hours. If residual oil appears on the specimen surface after drying, a final washing in solvent will usually remove the last traces. A fresh fracture surface can then be produced for observation in the SEM. Comparisons of oil saturated and oil-free samples treated by the above method show no apparent difference in clay morphology or orientation.

Removal of oil from rocks with poor permeability can be exceedingly difficult and the samples may have to be flushed with oil by application of a pressure difference across the sample. Oil can be trapped in pores which are no longer connected, and in cases such as this only the surface of the sample can be effectively cleaned and only small specimens should be used to minimize the amount of oil that may be released from the rock when under vacuum in the SEM chamber.

In commercial core analysis laboratories oil is frequently removed using a Soxhlet extractor. The sample is first flushed with methanol to remove water, a process which may take from 8 hours to 3 days depending on permeability. The sample is then dried in air until the bulk of the methanol has evaporated and then put back in another extractor with xylene or toluene and flushed until clean. Cleanliness is generally judged by a lack of fluorescence under UV light. The sample can then be air dried as required. There is the possibility that the more active flushing in this method and the intermediate drying stage could affect clay fabrics.

Drying of wet specimens can be accomplished at room temperature, by use of an oven or by application of vacuum. All these methods involve a volume decrease of clay or mud specimens. McHardy et al. (1982) found this method inferior to critical-point drying for preservation of delicate illite in pore space. The main applications of freeze-drying of samples are in the study of soils and swelling clays. McHardy et al. (1982) found this method inferior to critical-point drying for preservation of delicate illite in pore space.

**CRITICAL-POINT DRYING**

The advantage of the critical-point drying technique is that it eliminates the surface-tension forces applied to delicate crystals during the drying stage by avoiding the passage of an air–water interface through the pore space. This results in better preservation of delicate structures, such as fibrous illite (McHardy et al., 1982). Tovey & Wong (1978) favoured this method for the preparation of wet sediment samples. The disadvantage of the method is that it is time-consuming, requires special apparatus, and has disadvantages if swelling clays are present (see above).

The method of preparation used by McHardy et al. (1982) is as follows. Pieces of rock of 10-mm size which contained simulated formation water had the water replaced by methanol by the successive passage through the specimens of 1:3, 1:1 and 3:1 methanol–water mixtures and finally 100% methanol. The methanol was then replaced daily until free from chloride which was taken to indicate that all pore fluid had been replaced by methanol. The samples were then transferred to the critical-point drying apparatus (Polaron model E3000 with a liquid transfer boat with integral drain valve). The boat with six to eight samples in methanol was loaded into the pressure chamber which was pre-cooled by cold mains water. The chamber was flushed with liquid CO₂ for about 10 min and allowed to stand for several hours with the CO₂ pressured above the freezing point at all times. To ensure replacement of methanol by liquid CO₂ the chamber was flushed with CO₂ for 5–10 min twice a day for a week. Finally the pressure apparatus was heated to 37°C by water circulation from a 40°C thermostat to bring it above the critical point of CO₂ (32°C) and the temperature held for 30 min to ensure equilibrium was reached in the samples. The CO₂ was then slowly vented from the chamber at 2 ml·s⁻¹ which slow evacuation prevents condensation of CO₂ in the chamber. The dried samples were then ready for production of a clean fracture face and mounting as described below in Section 8.6.

Critical-point drying has been found useful for the treatment of illite-bearing sandstones (McHardy et al., 1982; McHardy & Birnie, 1987) and has also been used in studies on pore-size distribution in soils (Lawrence, 1977; Murray & Quirk, 1986) and should be considered as a preparation method well worth trying with porous samples that have their original pore fluids preserved. Farrow & Clokie (1979) used critical-point drying in a study of boring algae to reveal algal filamentous through the borings. The samples were first fixed with glutaraldehyde, dehydrated through a series of alcohols and brought to acetone and then critically point dried.
8.5.2 Non-porous rocks

Rocks which have low porosity or in which grains and cement give similar resistance to fracturing, as in the case in many quartz-cemented sandstones and well-cemented limestones or dolomites, may not reveal much information when rough broken surfaces are examined. In such cases it is frequently necessary to view a polished and etched surface to obtain useful information.

This technique is particularly useful in the examination of carbonate cemented sandstones, limestones and dolomites, since by suitable choice of etching agent different minerals can be attacked and their role as grains or cement elucidated. The technique can also be used on unconsolidated sediments which have been resin-impregnated in the field or laboratory.

GENERAL METHODS

A slice of the rock to be examined is cut to a suitable thickness (say 3–5 mm). The specimen can thus be oriented in any required manner and part of the rock slice used to make a thin section or polished section for examination by other techniques. The rock slice or chip should be polished to a reasonable standard with respect to the features required to the viewed (polishing details in Lister, 1978). The specimen slice should be cut or broken to the required size for insertion in the SEM chamber and mounted on the stub prior to etching to minimize the possibility of damage to the delicate etched surface. Some SEM chambers will accommodate a polished thin-section; this enables the same area to be examined using a variety of techniques and is an obvious advantage.

The etching process can be varied to suit the particular situation. For limestones, dilute hydrochloric, acetic or formic acid can be used for low-level etching. It is best to use as dilute a solution as possible to avoid vigorous gas generation which is frequently instructive to examine samples to which treatment is employed should be clearly stated in any report. Sandburg & Hudson (1983) used 0.25% formic acid and an etch time of 60–90 s to reveal argonite relics in calcite-replaced shells. Hay et al. (1970) used 1% HCl and found 30 s of etching sufficient to reveal the ultrastructure of fine carbonate grains of biogenic origin. Despite the above examples of gentle etching, Wilkinson, Janecke & Brett (1982) used 50% glacial acetic acid and an etch time of 60 s with success on Ordovician limestones.

Deep etching can be employed profitably in rocks with a soluble cement. A calcite-cemented sandstone can be etched down from a flat broken surface to reveal the pre-cement morphology and to observe relics of carbonate replaced grains. Thus it is possible by use of suitable acids to manufacture examples of secondary porosity in carbonate cemented rocks. Particularly interesting results can be achieved with dolomite/calcite rocks and partially siltified limestones. It is useful to prepare a number of stubs of each rock to be examined so that ample material is available for experimentation with different acids and etch times. In this way photographs can be taken of examples 'before' and 'after' treatment. Polished surfaces of quartzitic sandstones can be etched with hydrofluoric acid to reveal rock texture and internal structures of grains such as heavy minerals.

With all etching techniques the specimen must be well washed with distilled water following etching to remove any traces of the acid or its reaction products, which otherwise may crystallize on the specimen surface during drying.

8.5.3 Mudrocks and fine grained sediment

Freshly fractured surfaces of mudrocks can be examined for features such as mineral orientation, shape and size, and organic content. Care must be taken to ensure that specimens are properly dried, and only small samples should be used since the high porosity of mudrocks combined with their low permeability result in large specimens degassing for long periods when placed in a vacuum for coating or observation.

Well-lithified mudrocks can be prepared as un-covered polished thin sections or as polished chips mounted in plastic; these can be examined with advantage in BSE images as shown by Krinsley, Pye & Kearsley (1983), White et al. (1984) and Huggett (1986). Preparation of the polished surface for high resolution SEM work has been discussed by Pye & Krinsley (1984). Conventional polishing methods can cause smearing of the surface which is apparent at magnifications greater than ×2500. Very gentle etching with HF may improve the surface but etching must not proceed to the point where unacceptable topographic differences are produced between grains. Ion-beam etching is a method which can be employed to remove a surface layer of even thickness to leave a 'cleaner' and flat surface (Smart & Tovey, 1982).

O’Brien, Nakazawa & Tokuhashi (1980) recorded a marked difference in texture in turbidite and hemipelagic muds when viewed on broken surfaces parallel to bedding. Hemipelagic muds show a preferred grain orientation due to dispersed settling of clays and turbidites exhibit a random texture caused by deposition of flocculated clays.

Recent sediments, both natural and artificial, have been prepared by freeze-drying techniques (Oasov & Sokolov, 1978) to examine the microtexture of high porosity (to 99%) samples of various clays.

Loose sediments of fine grain size can be examined by mounting grains directly on a stub using double-sided sticky tape, or a thin layer of glue on the stub. Sediment can be embedded in resin as described below (Section 8.5.5) and observed on polished and etched surfaces; this technique is particularly useful for carbonates (Hay et al., 1970).

8.5.4 Sedimentary grains

The SEM is extensively used for examination of individual sedimentary particles. The treatment given to the particles prior to mounting on a stub is dependent on the type of material being examined and the object of the study. It is essential to ensure that the preparation method does not destroy or modify the features to be observed and does not create features which are artefacts of the preparation technique. If the grains to be examined have to be released from a partly-consolidated rock the minimum of force should be used and grinding of the sample must be avoided. The method employed will depend on the study to be undertaken, but ultrasonic and freeze-thaw techniques can be used as well as gentle mechanical and chemical methods.

SURFACE TEXTURES OF GRAINS

It is generally considered that only small numbers of detrital quartz grains need be examined from a sample to obtain representative surface textures (Krinsley & McCoy, 1977). The method described by Krinsley & Doornkamp (1973) and used by Wang, Piper & Vilks (1982) is as follows.

Five grains of the sample are boiled for 10 min in concentrated HCl and then washed with distilled water. If iron oxide coatings are present the grains are then boiled in stannous chloride solution for 20 min and rewashed in distilled water. Organic debris can be removed by a strong oxidizing solution. Krinsley & Doornkamp (1973) used 1.5% each of potassium dichromate and potassium permanganate dissolved in 15 ml of concentrated H$_2$SO$_4$. Wang et al. (1982) boiled their samples in 30% hydrogen peroxide for 10 min. The grains are given a final wash in distilled water and dried before mounting on a stub.

This preparation technique might be considered rather violent, but the fact that populations of quartz grains do exhibit features characteristic of their environments (Section 8.9) after such treatment suggests that relevant features are not destroyed in the process. It is usually stressed that ultrasonic cleaning should not be used as it may damage the grain surfaces, but Le Ribault (1978) processed samples through HCl, washing with distilled water then drying, sieving and selecting grains before subjecting them to ultrasonic cleaning and an alcohol wash prior to drying and mounting.

GENERAL PURPOSE GRAIN MOUNTS

Grain assemblies to be mounted for general purpose examination or analysis will include minerals that would be damaged or destroyed by the above technique. Careful washing of the grains in distilled water with gentle agitation can be sufficient to remove loose surface particles, but still leave adherent particles and coatings (which may themselves be of interest) on the grain surfaces.

The treatment employed will largely depend on the object of the study, but treatments can readily be devised to remove organic matter (hydrogen peroxide) or calcite (formic or acetic acid). It is frequently instructive to examine samples to which various treatments have been applied. Which treatment is employed should be clearly stated in any publication, a factor often ignored in many SEM studies of sedimentary grains.

8.5.5 Impregnation of pores and borings (see also Section 4.4.2)

It is frequently useful to impregnate porous media to reveal details of pore geometry or details of borings within grains. The impregnation allows the framework of the grains or rock to be dissolved to leave

http://jurassic.ru/
the pore network or boring preserved as a cast which can be examined with the SEM. Various materials have been used for impregnation of rock pores including coloured lakeside cement, Wood’s metal and wax, but plastics are now used which are hard, strong and stable. Various epoxy resins are available which will dissolve a suitable dye (required for thin section work), and have high viscosity and high wetting characteristics together with high final hardness and negligible shrinkage or expansion on setting.

Some techniques involve alternate use of vacuum and pressure (Pittman & Duschkaito, 1970) to achieve impregnation. Impregnation can be achieved with no more vacuum than that provided by a water vacuum pump connected to a mains water supply and has been found satisfactory for impregnation of porous rocks with permeabilities above 30 md and for impregnation of fungal borings less than 1 mm in diameter.

**PROCEDURES PRIOR TO IMPELLGATION**

Prior to impregnation the sample may have to be treated in the manner described in Section 8.5.1 to remove oil, since the presence of oil makes impregnation difficult as it hinders the ability of the resin to wet the grain surfaces and may restrict impregnation depth to 1 or 2 mm. If organic matter is present, as may be the case in recent borings, it should be removed by use of chlorox or hydrogen peroxide. If it is desired to retain organic matter the methods of Golubic, Brest & Lecampion (1974) (summarized by Lukas, 1979) can be used.

If sediment grains are to be embedded and/or impregnated it is advantageous to clean them by washing in distilled water and by brief use of an ultrasonic cleaner to remove any loose powder. It is useful to have a known reference point on the stub prior to any etching techniques which may be required at a later date, provided X and Y co-ordinates of the particular field of view when a sample is re-examined are also noted. A similar method of impregnation is described by Walker (1978) which is utilized for preparation of casts of chalk porosity (Fig. 8.10). Walker’s method uses the epoxy resin Araldite AY-18 which has the advantage of low viscosity which is retained for up to a week after mixing. Curing is started by heating the resin to 80°C. Using the method, spectacular detailed impregnation of pores only 0.1–0.2 µm across was obtained and even pores in foraminiferal tests were impregnated. Golubic & Cripps (1983) have described an impregnation method also used on chalk in which Trylon CL 223 PA resin is used. A more elaborate impregnation chamber is described in Section 4.42 and Fig. 4.4.

The ‘Aberdeen’ method described previously has the great advantage of cheapness, simplicity and speed of operation, but Walker’s (1978) method probably achieves a greater penetration of pores. Commercially available impregnation units are now on the market which provide better vacuum conditions and permit a greater number of samples to be impregnated at one time under more easily controlled conditions. However, there is still considerable scope for experimentation with impregnation techniques. Examples of impregnated rocks and grains are illustrated in Fig. 8.21 (pore casts) and Fig. 8.24 (microborings).

**8.6 SAMPLE MOUNTING, COATING AND STORAGE**

**8.6.1 General considerations**

When the required preparation techniques have been performed on the sample it may be of suitable size and shape for mounting directly on to a stub for examination or it may require some final shaping. Prior to mounting the sample the stubs to be used must be labelled; this is simply done by scratching or engraving a number on the side or underside of the stub.

Specimens are usually individually mounted on 10-mm diameter stubs designed to fit the particular make of machine being operated but larger 25-mm stubs can be used to take several specimens. It is generally possible to design an adaptor to make different stubs transferable between machines if this becomes desirable.

It is useful to have a known reference point on the stub surface so that the sample can be placed in a known orientation in the sample holder within the chamber. This can greatly facilitate the finding of a particular field of view when a sample is re-examined at a later date, provided X and Y co-ordinates of the area are also noted.

Using 10-mm stubs one can examine one stub at a time, but if changing the sample in the SEM chamber involves bringing the column to air it is advisable to have a mount which allows three stubs to be inserted and examined without the need for a specimen change. Apart from the obvious advantage of time saving, the reduction in number of specimen changes gives longer filament life and aids maintenance of cleanliness. However, it is essential to ensure that any modifications made to sample holders do not interfere with take-off angles to detectors and that the modified sample holder cannot touch the detector when the stage is tilted.

8.6.2 Mounting rock chips and slices

It is essential to ensure that there is a good contact between the specimen and the stub. For this reason samples should be as flat-based as possible. Samples should not seriously overlap the edges of the stub since the underside of the sample will not be coated in the sputter-coating process. The sample should also have as flat a surface as possible, particularly if analytical work is to be carried out. It is also an advantage to try and make the samples of approximately the same thickness. Figure 8.11 illustrates correct and incorrect sample configuration.

Porous samples can be trimmed using small pliers or whittled to size using a variety of probes; dental picks are very useful for this operation. Once the freshly-fractured surface to be observed has been exposed it is essential to prevent transference of dust to this surface and to protect it from damage. Some samples can be mounted prior to producing the fresh fracture; this is ideal, but frequently difficult to achieve. If the chosen rock chip has an irregular base this can be gently filed down or rubbed on glass until flat, the method employed depending on the friability of the specimen. Cut slices of relatively non-porous material are best cut to size and mounted on the stub prior to any etching techniques which produce a delicate surface.

The glue used to stick the sample on the stub should be stable under high temperature and vacuum conditions and have good adhesion to gold and carbon coatings. The silicone rubber glue ‘Locitite’ has these properties and has the added advantage of...
8.6.3 Mounting of grains and loose sediments

Individual grains can be mounted using double-sided sticky tape or alternatively the stub can be coated with a thin layer of glue or conducting silver paint and the grains dropped or pressed on to the surface. The glue layer must be thin enough to prevent the grains sinking into the glue. Loose sediments from which a random sample of grains is to be mounted can be placed on a flat surface and the glued stub gently pressed on to the grains. Glue types are discussed in the section above. Grains mounted on double-sided tape have a smaller area in contact with the stub than do those mounted with a spot or thin layer of glue and thus have a greater tendency to charge up in the electron beam due to poor conductivity to the stub. This is enhanced by the shadow area beneath the grain which is poorly covered in the coating process.

When individual grains are being mounted it is advisable to have some sort of reference point or grid on the stub surface so that a simple map of the stub surface can be made to aid the location of individual grains (Fig. 8.12a). Roughly spherical grains, of which as much of the surface as possible is required to be viewed, can be mounted on modified stubs of rod shape or stubs with a vertical semicircular rim as in Fig. 8.12(b).

Many studies require surface textures and grain size to be determined with the SEM and frequently very small numbers (10–20) of grains have been used. Most workers dealing with sand grain surface characteristics and types are discussed in the section above. The thickness of gold coating to be applied should be considered in relation to the type of work to be undertaken and the type of specimen. Porous specimens with grains which are only in poor contact with each other generally require a longer coating time in order to eliminate charging effects on the specimen at any particular operational voltage (and consequently may give better results if examined in backscattered mode). The thickness of gold coating to be applied should be considered in relation to the type of work to be undertaken and the type of specimen. Porous specimens with grains which are only in poor contact with each other generally require a longer coating time in order to eliminate charging effects on the specimen at any particular operational voltage (and consequently may give better results if examined in backscattered mode). The merits of different thicknesses and types of coating are summarized below:

(1) Gold coating. This is used to ensure an adequate sample of grains for the intended project.

8.6.4 Coating the specimen

When the specimen has been mounted and after the glue is fully dried the sample must be coated with a conductive layer to take away the electrical charge which builds up on the specimen surface due to bombardment by the electron beam. The two most commonly used types of coating are gold and carbon, but various metal alloys such as platinum-palladium and gold-palladium can be used.

Samples are normally gold coated using one of the many models of sputter coater now on the market. Coating units with a carbon evaporation power supply are also readily available. The quality of the coating achieved depends on the quality of vacuum obtained, thus it is worth spending time obtaining a good vacuum rather than one which is only marginally satisfactory before commencing coating. The thickness of gold coating to be applied should be considered in relation to the type of work to be undertaken and the type of specimen. Porous specimens with grains which are only in poor contact with each other generally require a longer coating time in order to eliminate charging effects on the specimen at any particular operational voltage (and consequently may give better results if examined in backscattered mode). The merits of different thicknesses and types of coating are summarized below:

(1) Gold coating, 25 Å or more. (2) Carbon coating, 25 Å or more. (3) Carbon coating.

(4) Uncoated samples. Sometimes it is desired not to coat a sample, possibly for a rapid evaluation or if the specimen is a curated mineral or fossil specimen. In this case the sample can be viewed and analysed but charging will build up rapidly on the specimen. If, however, a back scattered electron detector (e.g. Robinson detector) together with a CFAS (Charge-Free Anti-Contamination System) working at a low vacuum is available the sample can be observed, analysed and photographed without specimen charging, and with the added advantage that atomic number contrast images are produced (Robinson & Nickel, 1979).

8.6.5 Storage and handling of stubs

Storage of SEM stubs can be the responsibility of individual workers (most academic establishments)
or can be a technical responsibility of the SEM laboratory. In either case the requirement is for dust tight boxes, lidded trays or a cabinet in which stubs are firmly held and can be labelled in such a way that file numbers can be read without having to pick up the stub. It is advantageous to have small storage units taking tens of samples rather than large units with hundreds of specimens in a single container — this results in minimal disturbance for each stub. Stubs can also be stored individually in glass or plastic tubes by having a hole in a cork to take the stem of the stub. It is commonly found that a coated specimen stored for a period of maybe only a few days, but more normally months, will charge badly when re-examined. This applies particularly to rock swelling of clays causing rupture of the conductive units taking tens of samples rather than large units.

8.7 PROBLEMS OF SEM OPERATION

8.7.1 General

It is not possible or desirable to attempt to provide a trouble-shooting manual for the SEM operator in a short chapter such as this. Details differ between machines of different makes, and technology is advancing so rapidly that any technical specifications will soon be out of date. It is therefore assumed that all machine functions are operating correctly, and only those features most commonly found to affect image quality are listed here. In all cases the operation manual supplied by the makers of the SEM should be followed in the setting up and running of the machine. It must be stressed at the outset that many of the problems encountered in day to day running of an SEM are a direct result of lack of cleanliness and poor specimen quality.

8.7.2 Possible reasons for poor image on screen

(a) Dirty column, apertures or filament housing. SEM models where specimens can be changed without bringing the column to air have a distinct advantage in this respect. In other models dust can more easily enter the chamber during specimen change and so contaminate the column. A spare clean column should be kept available. If the final aperture in the column becomes dirty and starts charging then distortion of the image and sudden shifts of image occur.

(b) Unstable filament. The tungsten filament is heated close to its melting point to provide the electron beam, and can behave in an unstable manner, resulting in rapid changes in filament current and hence rapid fluctuations in picture brightness. Unless the filament current is stable there is no point in attempting to take photographs. A new filament frequently takes an hour to settle down and may become unstable towards the end of its life.

(c) Filament not correctly centred. If the filament is not correctly centred a low intensity picture with poor focus will result. Occasionally a filament will go off centre during operation and it is advisable to check the centering of the filament following specimen changes.

(d) Specimen faults. A specimen that is charging badly will give a poor picture with bright spots and photographs will have bright horizontal lines emanating from charged areas (Fig. 8.14). Charging of the specimen could be the result of poor specimen coating, poor connection of the sample to the stub, or poor earthing of stub or stage. Samples which were wet or contained volatiles such as oil when coated, give poor pictures due to poor coating. Samples mounted with volatile glue may also give noisy pictures, as do specimens with a large quantity of organic matter. Microporous samples can take a significant time to de-gas in the vacuum and performance may improve if the specimen is left in the vacuum for an hour before observation.

(e) Image not sharp. If the image cannot be sharpened by use of the focus control, and charging is not a problem, it is possible that the spot size is too large, but if spot size if reduced too much the image will become excessively noisy. Reduction in beam current or photo-multiplier gain may also help sharpen the image.

(f) Astigmatism effects. If at high magnifications (x > 10,000) there is distortion giving oblique elongation of features when the focus is adjusted the astigmatism controls are probably in need of adjustment. Serious astigmatism may be due to poor alignment of the column or dirt in one of the column apertures.

(g) Excessive 'noise' problems. Many buildings are not particularly stable and vibration due to traffic, other machinery, high wind and the SEM pump itself can be a problem. The SEM should be set up in the most stable and quiet environment possible. If vibration is suspected compare operation at different times of day and place the pump as far from the machine as possible. Vibration results in straight edges having a saw-tooth appearance at high magnifications.

8.7.3 Possible reasons for poor photographic results

Photography of images on the SEM should result in a slightly improved image to that seen in the slow scan mode on the screen, and a greatly improved image over that seen on TV mode. Photographic instructions should be followed for the individual machine and minor adjustments to practice are generally made to suit the individual machine and provide acceptable negatives for the type of investigation undertaken.

Brightness and contrast are usually judged from the amplitude and position of the waveform of the image on the viewing screen. The optimum position and amplitude will depend on film speed and aperture used on the camera; thus it is worthwhile experimenting with both brightness and contrast to achieve the best negatives or Polaroids prints. It is a simple matter to fix a reference scale at the side of the viewing screen on which can be marked the optimum positions of the waveform for different film speeds and apertures as shown in Fig. 8.13. The following factors can be responsible for poor photographic results.

(a) Incorrect exposure resulting in either a pale or dark negative or one with too much or too little contrast. This can be easily corrected by experiment as described above.

(b) Camera not focused on photo-screen. If all photographs appear out of focus, despite the viewed image having been good, this is a probable reason.

(c) Unsuitable views. It is not possible to take excellent photographs of all views! The depth of focus required can be too great and the contrast may not be adjustable to a suitable level; however, the provision of a gamma control on some instruments
and aragonite needles, and these are frequently illustrated, whilst less attractive and less easily interpreted features tend to be ignored. SEM use is now entering a quantitative phase and every effort should be made to quantify observations. The recent developments in quantitative analysis of BSE images of polished surfaces (Dilks & Graham, 1985) are most important and should contribute to many branches of geology. Studies combining several of the available SEM techniques are most valuable, and the recent trend is away from repetitive illustration and towards integrated studies using SE, BSE, cathodoluminescence and element mapping.

The four topics below have been selected to provide a wide range of examples and also because they account for much of the sedimentological use of the SEM in the current literature. They are topics in which SEM work is essential to achieve the best understanding.

Quartz grain surface textures — Section 8.9.
Diagnosis of sandstones — Section 8.10.
Limestones and dolomites — Section 8.11.
Endolithic microborings — Section 8.12.

Other topics for which the SEM is a useful tool but which are not covered by specific sections are the examination of fine grained non-carbonate muds and mudrocks as illustrated by O’Brien (1987) in a study on the effects of bioturbation on the fabric of shales. The examination of heavy mineral assemblages is greatly aided by use of the SEM with EDS system for analysis. Surface textures of grains other than quartz are also providing useful information in the study by Hansley (1987) comparing natural etch features on garnets with those produced experimentally using organic acids. The SEM has also proved valuable in the investigation of detailed features of framoidal pyrite as illustrated by Love et al. (1984). Examples of other applications can be found in Whalley (1978) and in the volumes of the proceedings of the Annual Scanning Electron Microscopy Symposium.

8.9 QUARTZ GRAIN SURFACE TEXTURES

8.9.1 Introduction

The main impetus in the study of surface textures of quartz grains is the belief that environmental interpretations can be made on the basis of characteristic surface textures. The main problem facing a new recruit to this field of study is the proliferation of names of surface features and the subjective manner in which many have been described. The atlas of Krinsley & Doorenkamp (1973) remains a useful source of illustration of textures but many have been described since and illustrations are scattered in the literature. Good illustrations are provided by Carter (1984) and by Higgs (1979) who also gave definitions and sources of original descriptions and summarized the relationships of surface textures to depositional environment. Bull (1981) provides a valuable review of the use of surface textures in environmental interpretation in more detail than can be given here and provides an excellent reference list. It is essential to stress from the outset that surface textures are produced by processes of erosion, transport and deposition, many of which are duplicated in different environments.

Fig. 8.15. Quartz grain surface textures characteristic of various sedimentary environments. Redrawn from Higgs (1979).
adapted from Higgs, 1979) many of the names are subjective and rely on visual interpretation by the operator. Contrasting surface textures of quartz grains from beach environments are illustrated in Fig. 8.16.

The statistical analysis employed by Culver et al. (1983) showed that a combination of features should be used to distinguish between samples and that the use of a single microtexture to distinguish the environment is invalid. This feature was stressed by Krinsley & Donahue (1968) but much work in the 1970s failed to live up to their standards.

The same surface features can develop in very different environments. Manker & Ponder (1978) showed that grains from fluvial environments develop some features also found in aeolian dune and beach environments, thus confirming the need to observe an assemblage of features. Features can also be inherited from a previous environment as in the case of 'glacial' features such as conchoidal fractures and angular edges being still recognizable in grains transported by turbidites for 120 km from the shelf edge over the Laurentian Fan (Wang et al., 1982).

Before proceeding with any study of surface textures, be they on quartz or any other mineral, it is pertinent to consider the likely history of the grains in question. The major features are summarized in Table 8.1. Many studies either omit to consider these basic geological principles or make the assumption that the transport regime produced all the observed features and that the depositional regime reflected the transport regime.

![Fig. 8.16. Examples of contrasting quartz grain surface textures from recent beach environments.](http://jurassic.ru/)

(a) Aberdeen beach, North Scotland. Grain with conchoidal fractures partly smoothed by abrasion. Probably a grain of glacial origin reworked into beach sediment. Split screen enlargement area x 5 marked scale (first scale bar 100 μm).

(b) Rottnest Island, West Australia. Rounded grain, probably reworked from older sediments but typical of this sub-tropical beach environment. Surface etched along percussion cracks and crystal imperfections. Split screen enlargement area x 10 marked scale (first scale bar 100 μm).
It is clear that in many cases it will be impossible to answer all the questions posed in Table 8.1 and the fact that 'environments' can be recognized from surface textures implies that in many cases the final transport regime does impart a new surface texture to the grain and that the texture remains for a significant time after deposition. The cases which do not 'work' are seldom reported so a bias towards successful interpretations builds up in published works.

The only way to arrive at a satisfactory conclusion in studies of surface textures is to examine sufficient numbers of grains (30–40) to record all features without prejudice as to its origin, thus, for example, used canonical variate analysis. By the very nature (1983) et al. in cave sediments with effect and Culver & Lawson (1978) report the reproduction of surface textures as summarized by Higgs (1979) is a useful technique to provide a fresh impetus to the studies. It

The study of surface textures has certainly been of practical value, but a great deal more controlled experimentation with source rock disaggregation, weathering and transport media still needs to be done. More comparative studies of experimental and natural systems using the same starting material would be most useful. Perhaps the greatest need is for a new 'atlas of surface textures' to provide a fresh impetus to the studies. It appears difficult to distinguish many surface textures of diagenetic origin from those gained during transport and deposition. The reader might compare illustrations of diagenetic surface textures, as in Burley & Kantorowicz (1986), with the fluviolacustrine deposits of Barbour & Ehrlich (1983) identified two grain populations in the Ordovician St Peter Sandstone in Minnesota which retained surface textures of aeolian and fluvial origin. The sandstone was deposited in a marine environment but little reworking took place, and they postulated that the sand grains bypassed the active beach environment from their fluvial and aeolian source areas.

Higgs (1979) examined textures on Lower Cretaceous to Palaeocene grains from the western North Atlantic continental margin. He concluded that many inherited features were present due to derivation of the sands from crystalline rocks undergoing acid weathering and that deposition was in both marine and non-marine environments. Such general conclusions could probably be reached more easily than by the study of surface textures, but on occasion when surface texture studies may provide valuable information. The study by Cather (1984) on quartz grains in 10 samples from a 145 m thick Neogene carbonate sequence in the Finestrat Basin of Spain provides an example of surface texture analysis applied to a sequence lacking indigenous fauna, and in which characteristic first cycle grains could be recognized.

Hill & Nadeau (1984) used surface features of Wisconsin sands from the Canadian Beaufort Shelf to reconstruct depositional environments in a situation where it was not possible to produce sedimentological logs of boreholes. In these cases surface texture analysis provides useful additional environmental evidence to that available from field sedimentology, but diagenetic features and grain reworking are recognized as problems in interpretation. One limitation of such studies is that the time-consuming nature of the practical work does not enable great numbers of samples to be analysed, and grain surface texture studies inevitably have to be regarded as an addition to basic field sedimentology rather than an independent topic.

It appears difficult to distinguish many surface textures of diagenetic origin from those gained during transport and deposition. The reader might compare illustrations of diagenetic surface textures, as in Burley & Kantorowicz (1986), with the fluviolacustrine deposits of Barbour & Ehrlich (1983) identified two grain populations in the Ordovician St Peter Sandstone in Minnesota which retained surface textures of aeolian and fluvial origin. The sandstone was deposited in a marine environment but little reworking took place, and they postulated that the sand grains bypassed the active beach environment from their fluvial and aeolian source areas.

Higgs (1979) examined textures on Lower Cretaceous to Palaeocene grains from the western North Atlantic continental margin. He concluded that many inherited features were present due to derivation of the sands from crystalline rocks undergoing acid weathering and that deposition was in both marine and non-marine environments. Such general conclusions could probably be reached more easily than by the study of surface textures, but on occasion when surface texture studies may provide valuable information. The study by Cather (1984) on quartz grains in 10 samples from a 145 m thick Neogene carbonate sequence in the Finestrat Basin of Spain provides an example of surface texture analysis applied to a sequence lacking indigenous fauna, and in which characteristic first cycle grains could be recognized.

Hill & Nadeau (1984) used surface features of Wisconsin sands from the Canadian Beaufort Shelf to reconstruct depositional environments in a situation where it was not possible to produce sedimentological logs of boreholes. In these cases surface texture analysis provides useful additional environmental evidence to that available from field sedimentology, but diagenetic features and grain reworking are recognized as problems in interpretation. One limitation of such studies is that the time-consuming nature of the practical work does not enable great numbers of samples to be analysed, and grain surface texture studies inevitably have to be regarded as an addition to basic field sedimentology rather than an independent topic.
shape analysis, field sedimentology and palaeontology. Surface textures are seldom employed as a primary discriminator between fossil orientations due to the complexity of textures, lack of generally accepted standards, and the numerous possibilities for textural destruction and modification outlined in Table 8.1.

8.10 SANDSTONE DIAGENESIS

8.10.1 General
The SEM with EDS is an essential tool for the examination of porous sandstones. Impregnated and stained thin sections, and XRD analysis of clays, feldspars and carbonates can provide much information, but to investigate the morphologies and detailed textures of grain overgrowths and diagenetic minerals the SEM is essential. Details of fine-grained clays and other grain coatings and pore-fillings cannot generally be obtained from thin sections. With the SEM, mineralogy, textures and diagenetic sequences can be better elucidated and porosity and permeability can be related to diagenetic and depositional textural features. It is the study of oil and gas reservoir rocks which has provided the greatest boost for SEM studies in the past ten years and the SEM studies have now sparked off considerable experimental diagenesis work.

Burley et al. (1985) have provided a useful review of clastic diagenesis which clearly shows the important role of SEM studies and their relation to other essential experimental methods. The contribution of the SEM in studies of sandstone diagenesis and the essential use of other techniques to provide a balanced study is well illustrated by Huggett (1984a, 1986) on the controls and diagenetic sequence of Coal Measures sandstones, Kantorowicz (1985) on the Middle Jurassic of Yorkshire and Burley (1986) on Jurassic sandstones of the Piper and Tartan fields of the North Sea. Increasing use is being made of combined SE and BSE studies of sandstones as illustrated by Pye & Krinsley (1986a) on Rotliegend sandstones, and of combined BSE and cathodoluminescence (Ruppert et al., 1985 and Fig. 8.8).

Future progress will involve more experimental work and comparison of natural and laboratory-produced features in attempts to simulate diagenetic conditions. Huang et al. (1986) documented experiments on the conversion of feldspar to illite, and Hansley (1987) on experimental etching of garnets by organic acids. Chemical approaches to diagenesis are also discussed in the volume edited by McDonald & Surdam (1984).

8.10.2 Practical considerations
IDENTIFICATION OF MINERALS
The identification of minerals, particularly the clay minerals, is frequently a problem; even with the help of EDS analysis positive identification is not always possible with the SEM. Relevance on morphology alone is most dangerous, particularly with illites, chlorites and smectites which commonly exist as mixed-layer structures. The SEM Petrology Atlas (Welton, 1984) provides a useful combination of pictures and spectra for most common minerals. Without analytical backup the SEM is of limited use, frequently leaving the operator with severe problems in the identification of fine-grained phases.

With the use of an analytical facility it is possible to build up a file of spectra of known common minerals to compare against unknowns. Some phases may require separation for quantitative or XRD analysis (if not available with the SEM), but for many studies qualitative analysis is sufficient to confirm identification.

Reference to the literature provides many excellent examples of typical morphologies. Clays are illustrated by McHardy & Birnie (1987), and Wilson & Pittman (1977) illustrated the common morphologies of clays in porous sandstones. Clays and many other minerals are well covered by Scholle (1979) and Welton (1984). Authigenic feldspar is illustrated by Stabein & Dapples (1977), Waugh (1978a, b) and Ali & Turner (1982). Authigenic quartz overgrowths are commonly illustrated (Waugh, 1970; Pittman, 1972) and some forms of iron and titanium oxides are shown by Ixer, Turner & Waugh (1979) and by Walker, Waugh & Crone (1978).

Illustrations here (Fig. 8.17) show some of the most frequently observed morphologies of a few common minerals.

DETrital AND AUTHIGENIC PHASES
The distinction between authigenic and detrital material is normally based on the general rule that authigenic minerals display characteristic crystal forms with evidence of in situ growth within pore...
space or on grain surfaces. Some authigenic material such as iron hydroxide grain coatings and amorphous silica do not have a characteristic shape but tend to plaster detrital grains (Fig. 8.18).

Detrital grains may be clearly recognizable or may be so enclosed in clays of diagenetic origin that their surfaces are obscured (Fig. 8.18). Detrital clays pose the greatest problem for identification. The distinction between detrital and authigenic matrix clays is usually based on the assumption that detrital clays have poor crystal form, and may show distortion due to compaction and a tendency to wrap around larger grains. However, many 'muddy' or 'dirty' sandstones have a matrix comprising a mixture of detrital and authigenic components which may include detrital clays which have become overgrown or recrystallized during burial (Wilcock & Pittman, 1977). Thus, as recognized by Cummins (1962) it has not been possible to distinguish between 'detrital matrix' and authigenic clays in greywackes, but Morod (1984) uses the SEM to demonstrate a diagenetic origin for the matrix of some Upper Proterozoic greywackes from Sweden. Detrital clays can also infiltrate pore space as shown by experiment and in nature by Walker et al. (1978).

Apart from completely new-formed authigenic minerals in sandstones there are several minerals which are commonly overgrown during diagenesis. Quartzmost commonly exhibits overgrowths ranging from micron-sized features scattered on grain surfaces, to cases where the sand grain is converted to a perfect bi-pyramidal quartz crystal (Waugh, 1970). Feldspars also commonly have overgrowths (Waugh, 1978a, b; Ali & Turner, 1982). These overgrowths may be in the form of smooth faced terminations or may grow in a 'skeletal' open form when they bear a strong resemblance to etch features (Fig. 8.17e). Stablein & Dapples (1977) illustrated well the different forms overgrowths may take on different crystal faces of the same grain.

DISSOLUTION AND REPLACEMENT OF GRAINS

Dissolution and replacement features are common in sandstones and most frequently involve feldspar, carbonates and clays.

Dissolution of feldspar grains resulting in creation of secondary porosity (Schmidt & McDonald, 1979a, b) may leave small etched relics of feldspar or a skeletal relic of clays. Alteration of feldspar to aggregates of kaolinite is frequently responsible for the patchy distribution of kaolinite seen in thin section and with the SEM. Dissolution of ferromagnesian minerals such as amphibole (hornblende) and pyroxene (augite) is well documented by Walker et al. (1978) and Waugh (1978a) who illustrated spectacularly etched crystals.

Carbonates frequently cement sandstones and also replace detrital grains. The replacement is frequently highly selective resulting in replacement of particular minerals. Feldspar and quartz are most frequently affected, but many examples exist where one or the other is attacked preferentially. Replacement features of carbonate-cemented sandstones can be revealed by etching the carbonate to reveal surfaces of replaced grains and relics of part replaced grains (Fig. 8.18c). Burley & Kantorowicz (1986) illustrated features of quartz grain surfaces resulting from replacement cementing these by carbonate cements, so allowing recognition of some sandstone from which carbonate cement had been removed. However, it must be stressed that carbonate cements of a passive nature may leave no clear evidence of their previous presence.

Clays also replace detrital grains, particularly volc anogenic grains, feldspars and other chemically unstable grains. Clay transformations during burial diagenesis such as the smectite-illite transformation result in modification of clay morphologies and chemistry. Kaolinite is frequently replaced by illite at depth resulting in distinctive modification of kaolinite morphology (Hancock & Taylor, 1978; Jourdan et al., 1987).

MECHANICAL DEFORMATION

During early burial mechanical compaction results in reorientation of grains to produce closer grain packing, mechanically weak grains (e.g. shale fragments, glauconite) may be deformed and squeezed into pore space and micas are frequently bent around framework grains. Evidence of a mechanical deformation phase is not always obvious in SEM studies of 'clean' sandstones, but it is frequently evident in fine grained muddy and micaceous sandstones, and is well shown in studies of mudrocks using back-scattered electron images.

DISSOLUTION AT GRAIN CONTACT

Chemical compaction, resulting in dissolution at grain contacts, is seen in most sandstones, usually only being absent where early introduction of cement produced a rigid frame. The surfaces of grain to grain contacts of quartz display pitted and grooved solution surfaces (Fig. 8.18b) which contrast with surfaces of overgrowths on detrital grains.

Solution surfaces are found at many different mineralogical contacts, but are often impressively developed at quartz/mica contacts where quartz is preferentially dissolved (Fig. 8.18d) and similarly at quartz/organic carbon contacts.

As pointed out by Sellwood & Parker (1978), and others in the same discussion, this phenomenon of 'pressure solution' does not bear a simple relation to depth of burial for any particular facies, there being a dependence on evolution of pore fluids and the presence of grain coatings to catalyse reactions. Organic acids are extremely important in diagenetic reactions by increasing aluminium mobility and aiding feldspar dissolution (e.g. Surdam et al., 1984).
The early cementation of a sandstone will also protect grain contact points by reducing stress at grain contacts. Pore fluid pressure may largely support the overburden weight and inhibit chemical compaction in over-pressured formations.

**EVIDENCE OF ORDER OF DIAGENETIC EVENTS**

The order of development of authigenic minerals is usually stratigraphically based on the assumption that the younger phases grow on the older. Complications arise in the case of grain replacements where it is not always possible to tell when replacement took place relative to other diagenetic events. Despite the simplicity of the basic premise there are several factors which can combine to produce ambiguous evidence of the order of diagenetic events. Two mineral phases may grow at the same time and a later mineral phase may grow to enclose previously formed material. Some minerals have favoured substrates for growth and diagenetic minerals will not be evenly distributed on grain surfaces; thus grains both with and without a particular overgrowth or coating may occur in close proximity.

In rocks with low permeability diagenetic phases are not evenly distributed, possibly due to differing local flow rates and chemistry of pore water, ion availability from altered grains, or substrate availability. Such variations can occur on a large scale as with the obviously different diagenetic histories between carbonate cemented concretions in sandstones and the adjacent uncremented rock. Thus a wide study of many specimens is required to establish a full diagenetic sequence for a particular formation.

**8.10.3 Applications of SEM studies of sandstones**

Apart from the identification of fine-grained minerals, matrix, cements, grain coatings and pore fillings, the most important SEM applications are the elucidation of diagenetic sequences with progressive burial, the relation of diagenesis to depositional facies and the explanation of factors relating to porosity and permeability of reservoir sandstones. Work on reservoir sandstones has now advanced to the stage where the SEM is used in studies of "artificial diagenesis" during reservoir treatment, such as the effects of steam injection on Cretaceous tar sands of Alberta described by Hutcheon (1984).

**DIAGENETIC SEQUENCE**

The SEM is an essential tool in the elucidation of diagenetic sequences involving the development of authigenic minerals. Hurst & Irwin (1982) have summarized some of the sequences recorded in recent years and their summary illustrates well the complexity to be found in the order in which authigenic minerals develop under different circumstances. Hurst & Irwin listed important factors influencing diagenesis; their list can be modified as follows:

1. Temperature
2. Pressure
3. Detrital mineralogy, roles of stable and unstable grains
4. Organic geochemistry
5. Availability of carbonate, both biogenic and non-biogenic
6. Pore water composition, migration of pore fluids and gases, and evolution
7. Sediment texture, porosity and permeability
8. Sedimentary facies, including enclosing formations
9. Tectonics
10. Time

In view of the numerous variable influences, projects involving interpretation of diagenetic sequence require a great deal of background information. Evidence should certainly be sought on the following points:

- Depositional environment. Marine or fresh water, and if fresh water, vadose or phreatic? Likely initial pore water type, and later pore water modifications?
- Mineralogy. Is the original detrital mineralogy preserved or recognizable, what major changes have taken place?
- Texture. What was the original texture (grain size, sorting) and how has it been modified? How has porosity and permeability been altered?
- Burial history. What is the burial history in terms of maximum burial depth, when did this occur, and has there been cycling of burial taken place?
- Pore fluid and gas. Has the rock been flushed by different pore fluids at any time, what was the final pore filling prior to collection (e.g. air, gas, oil, fresh water, saline water)?
- From these considerations it may be possible in well-explored areas to estimate likely pressures and temperatures and reconstruct with some accuracy the geological history of the formation.
- Diagenetic studies can be organized to examine depth and/or facies-related phenomena but in all cases a wide range of comparable material (grain size, sorting, composition etc.) is needed, and the clay mineralogy of any enclosing shales should also be examined to determine likely detrital and diagenetic clays present. The following notes on specific facies types can provide only a basic idea of the diagenetic variation in sandstones.

**RED BEDS**

Walker (1967) and Walker et al. (1978) have demonstrated how the red pigmentation in first-cycle desert sandstones forms in response to the alteration of Fe-bearing minerals such as hornblende and augite by solution. The iron released is probably deposited as ferric hydrate which gradually converts to haematite with burial and ageing. The iron oxide or hydroxide rims to grains are frequently associated with clays which may initially be mixed-layer illite/smectites but are converted to illite during burial as in the extensively studied Rotliegend (Low Permian) sandstones of the southern North Sea.

Numerous studies on the Rotliegend sandstone (Rossel, 1982; Glennie, Mudd & Nagtegaal, 1978; Hancock, 1978/1979; Nagtegaal, 1979; Pye & Kinsley, 1986) illustrate the general diagenetic features and some of the variable factors. General features are iron oxide grain coatings of early diagenetic origin which include illite probably representing original illite/smectite (Rossel, 1982). Second stage diagenesis results in feldspar overgrowths, dolomite cement and replacement, and also quartz overgrowths. Feldspar is frequently converted to kaolinite prior to the final stage when the characteristic 'hairy' or ribbon illite (Fig. 8.17a) is produced along with some chlorite. Many variations on this theme are recorded such as early calcite, halite and gypsum facies controlled cements (Glennie et al., 1978). Late anhydrite cements are found near faults (Glennie et al., 1978) or close to overlying Zechstein evaporites (Hancock, 1978b).

Biostratigraphic (1984) produced a detailed diagenetic history of the Triassic Sherwood Sandstone Group and recognized distinct stages of diagenesis related to depositional environment, burial and subsequent uplift. The value of SEM work is greatly enhanced by the use of other techniques (isotopes, XRD, microprobe analysis and petrography) both in this paper and in Burley (1986) on reservoir sandstones of the Piper and Tartan fields in the North Sea.

**MARINE SANDSTONES**

Sandstones with original marine pore waters have varied diagenetic histories (Hurst & Irwin, 1982) which may commence with illite/smectite (Hawkins, 1978) or chlorite (Tillman & Almon, 1979) or non-biogenic carbonate, but frequently are cemented by quartz overgrowths. The earliest phase of quartz cement, particularly in sandstones adjacent to shales, may be of randomly oriented microcrystal quartz crystals on grain surfaces (Fig. 8.17b), which subsequently inhibit the formation of quartz overgrowths (Spark & Trewin, 1986).

Following establishment of a rigid frame, dissolution of unstable grains may result in secondary porosity or production of kaolinite by feldspar alteration. The kaolinite in marine sandstones frequently forms pore filling cements of well formed euhedral crystals of 4-10 μm size (Hurst & Irwin, 1982). Carbonate is frequently introduced after the initial quartz overgrowth phase both as cement and as grain replacement, particularly of feldspars, and this phase of diagenesis may eliminate most porosity. Deeper burial may, however, result in carbonate dissolution producing secondary porosity (Schmidt & McDonald, 1979a, b) which can be available for occupation by migrating hydrocarbons. Production of organic acids during the maturation of organic matter is frequently thought responsible for secondary porosity development by silicate (frequently feldspar) dissolution.

Entry of hydrocarbons effectively stops diagenetic reactions (Hawkins, 1978) but reactions can continue in adjacent water-saturated sandstones to produce further quartz, kaolinite or ilite cements, resulting in diagenetic contrasts at oil-water contacts.

**FRESHWATER SANDSTONES**

There is a full range in pore water compositions between highly saline and fresh water giving a great variety of environmental controls to diagenesis, but sandstones such as fluvial sandstones with fresh pore waters display some apparently distinctive features (Hurst & Irwin, 1982). The major feature is a tendency for kaolinite development (at the expense of feldspar) to precede quartz overgrowth formation and for the kaolinite to form coarse vermicular crystals with ragged or skeletal edges (Fig. 8.17d).
which may have grown more rapidly than the characteristic 'marine' form of kaolinite. However, it is important to recognize that a great many sandstones deposited under shallow marine conditions are subsequently flushed by fresh water from adjacent land areas during early burial or later uplift. Carbonates may be developed at more than one stage in the diagenetic history, ranging from pedogenic carbonate of calcic soils, or early pre-com- paction carbonate nodules through to late diagenetic calcite, dolomite or siderite precipitation post-dating quartz cementation and occurring at depths of 2–3 km. Flushing of originally marine sandstones by fresh water will frequently superimpose new diagenetic features, thus formations involved in uplift and reburial can possess complex diagenetic histories.

POROSITY AND PERMEABILITY

The permeability of a sandstone is related to the size and shape of pore throats which connect larger pore volumes in a sandstone, the tortuosity of pores, and the specific surface area within pore space. The SEM is ideal for examination of pore geometry by means of pore casts and also ideal for viewing the factors which serve to reduce porosity and permeability in sandstone. One of the most obvious examples of permeability reduction by the formation of authigenic minerals within pore space is that provided by the illite diagenesis of the Rotliegend sandstone of the southern North Sea where delicate illite crystals bridge and block pore throats (Fig. 8.18b), so reducing permeability. The Brent Sandstone (Middle Jurassic, North Sea) displays similar features with illite also responsible for permeability reduction (Hancock & Taylor, 1978; Blanche & Whitaker, 1978), and the Magnus reservoir (Upper Jurassic, North Sea) is similarly affected (McHardy et al., 1982). Kaolinite is not usually so detrimental to permeability as illite since it has a larger grain size, and smaller surface area (Fig. 8.17c) so that pore tortuosity and water absorption on the clay surface are not so great. Kaolinite also tends to be more patchy in its distribution in the rock. SEM studies can be valuable in the assessment of micro-porosity in reservoirs as in the case of porcellaneous cement of opal, microquartz and montmorillonite described from Mancos turbidite sandstones of the Los Angeles Basin by Sears (1984).

As oil migrates into a reservoir diagenesis is arrested as in the case of the Brent Sandstone (Hancock & Taylor, 1978; Sommer, 1978) where it can be shown that oil migrated into place synchronously with illite formation, there being a downward increase in illite within the reservoir. Thus the relative timing of generation and migration of hydrocarbons during diagenesis can be determined and predictions can be made on reservoir quality with respect to facies, geographical area and depth of burial.

Porosity can be observed with the SEM and, by use of image analysis equipment on polished sections, particularly in the backscattered mode, can be determined quantitatively. Pore surfaces are best examined on rough broken rock surfaces. Pore throat size and pore connection is most easily studied using pore casts (Fig. 8.21).

CONCLUSION

From these few examples it is apparent that the diagenesis of any sandstone formation must be studied with reference to all available information on facies, pore fluids, burial history and composition. Utilization of SEM techniques can greatly aid explanation of porosity and permeability parameters, relating them to depositional and diagenetic factors by examination of pore morphologies and fillings.

8.11 LIMESTONES AND DOLOMITES

8.11.1 General

Utilization of the SEM for the study of limestones is most valuable in the examination of fine-grained porous limestones such as chalk (Scholle, 1977) and for tracing the evolution of cement and replacement fabrics in Recent to sub-Recent carbonates (Bathurst, 1975; Folk, 1974a; James et al., 1976; Wilkinson et al., 1982). In studies of modern fine-grained carbonate sediments the morphologies and origins of grains can be determined (Hay et al., 1970) and detail of biogenic particles more easily recognized.

Textures and pore geometry of dolomitized and dedolomitized sediments are also suitable for examination as in examples of Silurian dolomite diagenesis in the Lockport Formation, USA (Shukla & Friedman, 1983), dolomitized Cretaceous chalk of Europe (Jorgensen, 1983) and recent Australian Coralong dolomites (Von Der Borch & Lock, 1979). For a general discussion of carbonate petrology, Bathurst (1975) provides an excellent account and Scholle (1978) illustrates the use of the SEM in carbonate studies and provides a useful bibliography to selected topics and techniques. A variety of techniques such as thin section, XRD and cathodoluminescence and isotopic analysis are all of great value in carbonate studies and the SEM can make a useful contribution in many cases and provides excellent illustrative material.

Only a few examples can be quoted in the space available and these are chosen to illustrate the wide range of use of the SEM in carbonate studies, without attempting to review theories on the various examples presented.

8.11.2 Examples

CARBONATE GRAINS

Unconsolidated carbonate sediments can be examined as scattered grain mounts for the identification of fine carbonate grains. This technique is useful for the identification of biogenic particles as shown experimentally by Hay et al. (1970) who crushed examples of known invertebrate material and were able to recognize distinctive skeletal morphologies in fine sands and even in some grains as small as 4 µm. Mounting the grains in resin and examining polished and etched surfaces enabled them to recognize distinctive skeletal internal structures.

The contributions which the fragmentation products of organisms make to carbonate muds, such as aragonite needles derived from the breakdown of the calcified algae Halimeda and Penicillus, and the contribution of coccoliths, diatoms and other planktonic organisms to deep sea carbonate sediments may also be examined experimentally by Hay et al. (1970) and for the identification of biogenic particles as shown in the study of the锁port Formation, USA (Shukla & Friedman, 1983), dolomitized Cretaceous chalk of Europe (Jorgensen, 1983) and recent Australian Coralong dolomites (Von Der Borch & Lock, 1979). For a general discussion of carbonate petrology, Bathurst (1975) provides an excellent account and Scholle (1978) illustrates the use of the SEM in carbonate studies and provides a useful bibliography to selected topics and techniques. A variety of techniques such as thin section, XRD and cathodoluminescence and isotopic analysis are all of great value in carbonate studies and the SEM can make a useful contribution in many cases and provides excellent illustrative material.

Only a few examples can be quoted in the space available and these are chosen to illustrate the wide range of use of the SEM in carbonate studies, without attempting to review theories on the various examples presented.

Sediments may also be examined for grains of non-biogenic origin such as the 2–20 µm high-Mg calcite grains precipitated in Lake Manitoba (Canada) illustrated by Last (1982) and the numerous studies of ooids and their structure such as that of Land, Behrens & Friedman (1979) on the ooids of Baffin Bay, Texas, and Sandberg (1975) and Halley (1977) on the ooids of the Great Salt Lake. Sandberg's study utilizes SEM examination of etched surfaces to show that coarse radial aragonite is of depositional rather than recrystallization origin. The SEM provides evidence not available from microscope petrography.

Evidence of aragonite replacement by calcite can also be revealed by SEM preparations such as the relic aragonite structures in calcitized Jurassic bivalves illustrated by Sandberg & Hudson (1983).

These and many other studies illustrate the general use of the SEM in studies involving carbonate grains.

CEMENTATION OF CARBONATES

There are many cases in which early cementation of carbonates occurs in marine subtidal and intertidal conditions and in freshwater phreatic and vadose situations. The morphology of the cements produced can ideally be examined using the SEM and much more detail obtained than is possible in thin section. In freshwater solutions with low Mg²⁺ concentrations there is a tendency for simple rhombs to grow, but in solutions with a high Mg²⁺ concentration sideways growth of the crystals may be poi-
soned by Mg and fibrous crystals of Mg-calcite or aragonite form (Folk, 1974a), however, some uncertainties exist concerning this mechanism. Bathurst (1975), Folk (1974a), Friedman (1975) and Moore (1979) provided summaries of early cementation in marine and freshwater environments, and only a few examples can be mentioned here.

Oolite cementation by calcite in freshwater conditions on Joulter's Cay, Bahamas described by Halley & Harris (1979) results in cementation around grain contacts with blocky calcite in the vadose zone producing a form of meniscus cement. A similar cement is found in sub-Recent oolite dune sands around Hamelin Pool, Shark Bay, West Australia (Logan et al., 1974) as illustrated here in Fig. 8.20(a). Below the water table at Joulter's Cay the calcite cement is not concentrated at grain contacts, but consists of small dog-tooth crystals of 20—40 μm in isopachous grain coats and in deeper samples scattered rhombohedral of 20—30 μm which decrease in size to 5—10 μm some 4 m below the water table. Using the SEM evidence Halley & Harris were able to calculate aragonite dissolution rates and calcite cementation rates and show that local rainfall is sufficient to account for the observed cementation. The result of continued aragonite solution and calcite deposition is well displayed by cemented Pleistocene oolite dune sands around Shark Bay where comolitic porosity is developed (Fig. 8.20b).

The value of SEM work is well illustrated by the work of Steinen (1978) on the diagenesis of lime mud using subsurface material from Barbados. He recognized microspar deposition in voids created or enlarged by dissolution and showed that muds cement early and in many stages. In thin section the textures resembled aggrading neomorphism, but the SEM allowed true crystal shapes and relations to be recognized. Submarine cementation by aragonite and calcite has been widely reported from different environments (James et al., 1976) from tropical reefs in Belize; Adams & Scheltema (1983) from gravel at Islay, Scotland. Alexanderson (1974) illustrated a variety of aragonite and Mg-calcite cements related to biochemical activity of living red algae in calcium carbonate undersaturated waters of the Skagerak (North Sea) and showed that the cement and coraline algae undergo dissolution following the death of the algae.

Characteristic aragonite cements comprise delicate needles coating grains as shown in an example of an oolitic hardground from Shark Bay (Fig. 8.20c, d). Submarine calcite cements frequently consist of high-Mg calcite occurring as micrite in fine pores and on grain surfaces and followed by bladed spar as reported by James et al. (1976) from Belize reefs. Longman (1980) provided an SEM-illustrated account of carbonate cementation features in marine and freshwater environments and related processes to the numerous cementation products both aragonitic and calcitic.

‘Beach rock’ formed by cementation in the intertidal to supratidal zone is common in the tropics but also occurs in more temperate climates. Cement is frequently aeolian aragonite but may also be of high-Mg calcite.

Cementation and structures in calcrites such as the variety of calcified filaments of soil fungi, algae, actinomycetes and root hairs described and illustrated by Klappa (1979, 1980) from Mediterranean Quaternary calcrites can be ideally studied with the SEM, as also demonstrated by Watts (1980) in a study of calcrites from the Kalahari, southern Africa, where both high- and low-Mg calcite are deposited in passive, displacive and replacive modes and are associated with authigenic palygorskite, sepiolite and minor dolomite.

DIAGENESIS OF LIMESTONE — CHALK

Whilst many limestones can be examined advantageously using SEM techniques the examination of chalks has been particularly instructive. Scholle (1977) summarized the diagenetic modifications of true nannofossil chalks from the North Sea and surrounding European outcrops as well as North American Gulf Coast and Scotia Shelf examples. In early diagenesis compactional dewatering of the highly porous muds leads to a grain supported frame; some selective dissolution may take place at this stage, particularly in deep water examples. Depth of burial is the single most important factor in chalk diagenesis and the progressive development of an interlocking calcite cement which overgrows coccoliths is admirably displayed by fig. 8 of Scholle (1977).

The mechanism of cementation in low-permeability chalks is by solution transfer. Cement is introduced into a load bearing frame and prevents mechanical compaction as burial loading increases. The source of the cement is internal to the formation and results partly from selective dissolution of calcitic or aragonitic organisms but originates mainly from solution seams and stylolites. Over-pressured chalks retain high porosities since stress is reduced at grain contacts, and chalk in oil reservoirs may retain high porosity due to the influx of oil preventing further cementation. In fine-grained chalk reservoirs the SEM is the only practical means of examining details of pore geometry and rock framework.

DIAGENESIS — CARBONATE POROSITY

A useful example of SEM use on ancient reefs (Upper Miocene of southern Spain) is that of Armstrong, Snavely & Addicott (1980) in which thin section and SEM information is neatly combined to illustrate the modifications of primary porosity due to aragonite solution and dolomitization of lime mud.

Pore geometry in carbonates has been investigated by producing resin pore casts of chalk (Walker, 1978) to reveal intersecting laminar pores 1—2 μm x 0.1—0.2 μm resulting in non-laminar pores which connect larger pore spaces such as those within foraminifera. The small size of pore throats results in the low (less than 10 md) permeabilities of most chalks. Patsoules & Cripps (1983) have illustrated a
variety of pore types in chalk by use of resin casts. Wardlaw & Cassan (1978) illustrated a wide variety of limestone and dolomite porosity by use of pore casts and related porosity type to recovery efficiency in reservoir rocks; their illustrations of pore casts of both primary and secondary limestone porosity are illustrated in Fig. 8.21.

DOLOMITIZATION

Dolomitization of limestones frequently results in the creation of useful interconnected porosity as discussed and illustrated by Wardlaw (1976), Wardlaw & Cassan (1978) and Davies (1979). Dolomite formation has been attributed to a variety of processes in early diagenesis (summaries in Bathurst, 1975 and Zenger, Dunham & Ethington, 1980).

Dolomitization frequently affects only specific components of a limestone, as for example when bioclasts are dissolved and cementing calcite dolomitized. Figure 8.22 shows an example from the subsurface Devonian of West Australia (geology of area summarized by Playford, 1980) where ooids have been dissolved and the cement dolomitized, and also an example with diagenetic illite and kaolinite developed in pore space of the dolomite during freshwater invasion of a marine limestone following its dolomitization. In these examples dolomitization probably took place by mixing of fresh and marine water.

Dolomitization of chalk from the North Sea (Jorgensen, 1983) results in the production of dolomite rhombs of 10–30 μm size which clearly overgrow original texture and fossils. Dolomite forms only 2–8% of the rock and appears to have formed early in diagenesis. More extensive dolomitization of limestones is described by Shukla & Friedman (1983) from the Lockport Formation (Middle Silurian) of New York State where early incipient dolomitization of micrite took place in a supratidal environment. Successive stages of dolomitization resulted in dolomitization of all the groundmass, dolomitization of groundmass and allochems and finally totally oblitative dolomitization. SEM examination of dolomites clearly reveals the problems of low permeability dolomite reservoirs which are usually caused by narrow, poorly connected pore throats in intercrystalline porosity, and the presence of non-effective porosity in small vugs.

8.12 ENDOLOTHIC MICROBORINGS

8.12.1 General

The SEM has played an important role in the study of microborings in carbonate substrates, since it enables the three-dimensional forms of micron-sized borings to be examined in detail.

Bioerosion is now recognized as a most important factor in the reduction of carbonate grains and substrates, particularly in the shallow marine environment. Golubic, Perkins & Lukas (1975) reviewed the history of the study of microborings and provided an extensive reference list. The larger borings produced by echinoids, gastropods, bivalves, polychaetes and sipunculids (summary in Warme, 1975) are not studied using the SEM, but detailed features of the walls of the borings can provide useful information. The smaller borings due to sponges (particularly Cliona) are of suitable size for SEM examination of fine detail and of sediment produced, but the greatest contribution of the SEM is in the study of algal, fungal and possible bacterial borings in grains and rock surfaces. Other small borings such as those of some dead and fossilized sponges (particularly Cliona) etc. can also be usefully examined with the SEM.

8.12.2 Methods

Preparation methods are described in Section 8.5. Study of recent borings should involve identification of the organism responsible, but in dead and fossil material all that remains is a cavity or filled boring which must be prepared by a suitable impregnation or etching technique. Considerable taxonomic problems exist with respect to endolithic algae and fungi which are beyond the scope of this work.

8.12.3 Sedimentological factors

Bioerosion is of the greatest importance in carbonate environments and on coasts where exogenous carbonate-rich rocks, but is by no means confined to such situations. The organisms responsible for microborings have specific ecological requirements and thus a zonation of such organisms can be recognized with respect to factors such as water depth, tidal range, light penetration and climate. Thus the identification of borings can lead to interpretations (Fig. 8.23) on the depth ranges of boring algae and fungi (Golubic et al., 1975; Lukas, 1979). Limestone coasts are generally subject to intense bioerosion, with distinctive zones of bioerosion leading to development of features such as a biogenic notch where destruction is particularly great. Schneider (1976), in a detailed study of an Adriatic limestone coast, illustrates the borings found in the various zones of the rocky shore. Such studies are of great value from the ecological standpoint, and increase our knowledge of the depth range of specific types of borings.

Endolithic algae (Fig. 8.24) which require very little light occur as deep as 370 m (Lukas, 1979) but are more characteristic of shallower depths to 100 m. Fungi do not require light and are found to much greater depths. It appears (e.g. Fig. 8.23) that there
in greater variety and abundance of microborings in shallow waters and a more precise depth zonation developed than in deeper water. As indicated in Table 8.2, algae, lichens and fungi bore by corrosion with a chemical mechanism and thus do not directly produce sediment. The clionid sponges, however, release carbonate particles which contribute significantly to sediment production.

**Sponges**

The mechanism of boring of Cliona has been described and well illustrated with SEM photos (Rutzler & Rieger, 1973) to show the method of excavation which removes 15–100 μm size chips of substrate of characteristic shape with etched surfaces. Mean dimensions of Cliona-produced chips are 56 × 47 × 32 μm. The chips are excavated by the production of crevices only 0.2 μm wide etched by cellular activity, thus only 2–3% of the substrate is dissolved, the rest contributing to sediment production. Typical sediment chips and wall features of the boring are illustrated in Fig. 8.25. In early colonisation stages Neumann (1966) found that Cliona destroyed 5–7 kg limestone m⁻² in 100 days, but since Cliona ceases to bore after reaching a particular depth this figure is well in excess of the normal rate which Rutzler (1975) calculated to be 250 mg of sediment per m² per year in Bermuda, which can account for up to 41% of sediment in mud pockets within a coral framework. Futterer (1974) found sponge excavated particles to constitute 30% of Fanning Island (Pacific Atoll) lagoonal sediments, and 2–3% of samples from the Arabian Gulf and the Adriatic. He also illustrated typical grains and showed how the edges become rounded by abrasion. Acker & Risk (1985) calculated rates of bioerosion by Cliona caribbaea in the shallow terrace zones off Grand Cayman (B.W.I.) to be 8 kg limestone m⁻² per annum, most of which is rapidly transported downslope. SEM photographs of fine fractions (3–4 μ) were used for estimation of abundance of sponge-produced chips.

**Endolithic Algae**

Endolithic algae have been reported to bore at rates varying from 0.3 to 36 μm/day (data summary in Lukas, 1979) but most can only reach a depth of a few millimetres due to light requirements. Their activity makes the rock or grain surface weak and porous and thus more subject to mechanical erosion, but it is the activities of grazing animals such as sea urchins, gastropods, chitons and fish which rasp away the algae infested rock which result in most sediment production. Grazing activity removes the surface layer and allows the algae to bore deeper
Fig. 8.25. Cliona borings in the bivalve Tridacna. Heron Island lagoon, Great Barrier Reef, Queensland, Australia.
(a) Typical sculpture of wall of boring, with two chips excavated by Cliona lying on the surface and showing the characteristic convex outer surface (wrt the sponge).
(b) Typical concave etched facets of the inner surface of a chip.

and so continue the bioerosion process. Farrow & Clokie (1979) illustrated typical effects of grazing by limpets and chitons on algal-infested shells and the consequent production of sediment. The rate of destruction of carbonate rock surfaces in various environments is of the order of 1 mm yr⁻¹ (Schneider, 1976). Algal endoliths have a long history extending at least to the late Precambrian (Campbell, 1982). Typical algal endolithic borings are illustrated in Fig. 8.24. The rate of carbonate dissolution by microboring organisms was investigated in the lagoon of Davies Reef, Australia, by Tudhope & Risk (1985). Using the SEM, and observing impregnated bored grains, the percentage of borings could be point counted within grains. Examination of the surface uncoated and under a weak vacuum produced high contrast between resin-filled borings and carbonate, and simplified point-counting.

Infestation of carbonates by endoliths also occurs beneath the sediment/water interface, particularly in organic-rich mud. May & Perkins (1976) illustrate a restricted assemblage of four forms found up to 1.6 m below the surface in fine-grained reducing sediments. Two of the boring cell-like forms are considered to represent unicellular prokaryotic blue-green algae or bacteria. Such algae probably function as anaerobic heterotrophs and can form chlorophyll in the dark if a suitable organic carbon source is available.

MICRITE ENVELOPES
Boring by endolithic algae and fungi on loose carbonate grains is responsible for the formation of micrite envelopes (Bathurst, 1966, 1975). Abandoned borings are filled by fine aragonite or high-Mg calcite. Margolis & Rex (1971) illustrated the relationship between endolithic algae and micrite envelope formation in Bahamian oolites. Endolithic algae can extensively colonize new substrates in weeks or months (Lukas, 1979 for summary) and thus repeated abrasion and grain-size reduction must occur due to the activities of sediment ingesting organisms in carbonate environments (e.g. fish, holothurians). There is a great deal of scope for use of the SEM in examination of carbonate grain surface textures due to endolithic borers and their destruction by organic and physical processes. The production of micrite envelopes by boring is frequently taken to be a shallow water phenomenon, but the deep water fungal borings described by Zeff & Perkins (1979) may also lead to the production of micritized grain surfaces.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS
The author wishes to thank Dr I.J. Fairchild for Fig. 8.8(a–c), A. Hogg, E. Sellier and Total CFP for Fig. 8.8(d–f), A.T. Kearsley for Fig. 8.9(a–c), and R.L. Gawthorpe for Fig. 8.9(d–h). Figs 8.17(c, d) and 8.22(a, b) were taken by the author at the Western Australia Institute of Technology whose technical assistance is acknowledged. All other figures were photographed at Aberdeen University's Department of Geology and Mineralogy using equipment purchased through generous research grants to the author from Occidental Petroleum. Iain S.C. Spark and Robert A. Downie assisted greatly with machine operation. Barry Fulton assisted with drafting and the text was patiently word-processed and edited by Sue Castle.

Fungi
Fungal borings are difficult to distinguish from algal borings, there being no simple criteria for their separation and a distinct overlap in sizes of borings. Zeff & Perkins (1979) described five distinct types of fungal borings in deep water sediments (210–1450 m) from the Bahamas area. Some are identical to shallow water forms but three are considered characteristic of deep aphotic environments. As pointed out by Zeff & Perkins the study of such borings has sedimentological significance in the recognition of aphotic zone sediments, source areas of turbidites, and deep water carbonates.
9
Chemical analysis of sedimentary rocks
IAN FAIRCHILD, GRAHAM HENDRY, MARTIN QUEST and MAURICE TUCKER

9.1 INTRODUCTION
This chapter is written for sedimentologists new to chemical analysis, or those seeking new ways of tackling rock-based chemical sedimentological problems. Since several textbooks would be needed to cover the details of the geochemical theory and analytical techniques reviewed here, the approach has necessarily been selective. Where good descriptions of experimental details exist in readily-available literature, then reference is made to those papers and books. This chapter is not simply a recapitulation, but it aims to instil a philosophy of approach to analysis, its objectives and the fundamental chemical controls on sediment composition. Some major aspects of the chemistry of sedimentary rocks are omitted, notably organic geochemistry and the analysis of radioactive isotopes, but these are not usually studied by sedimentologists. Although the solution-based techniques of chemical analysis described in this chapter are common to the analysis of pore water and depositional waters, the specialized tools and procedures of the aqueous analyst and the experimentalists in crystal growth and dissolution are not to be found here (but see Whitfield, 1975; Riley, 1975; Manheim, 1976; Pamplin, 1980).

There are two key features of the chemistry of the sedimentary cycle. First, there is the role of water as a solvent, a medium of transport and source for precipitating minerals. Second, thermodynamic equilibrium is often not obtained at the low temperatures which concern us. Geology graduates often have a poor background in low-temperature aqueous geochemistry; hence the need for Section 9.2 which outlines the most relevant concepts and discusses their usefulness in practice. Those embarking on the acquisition and interpretation of chemical data are strongly advised to pursue a proper understanding of these concepts by further study. Sometimes interpretation may appear to be a matter of pattern recognition by comparison of data sets, but this is only on a superficial level. Good geochemical research involves a clear understanding of the limitations of the data due to the sampling procedure and analytical techniques used and an ability to assess the feasibility of both chemical and geological processes.

9.2 OBJECTIVES
Whereas basic chemical data on sedimentary rocks have been available for some time (Clark, 1924) and correct conclusions drawn about the origin of many common sedimentary minerals, it is in the fields of economic mineralization, and igneous and metamorphic geology, that the results of chemical analysis were first fully exploited. The diverse origins of sedimentary rocks in general, and of the components of individual specimens in particular, make the formulation of objectives, prior to planning the nature and extent of a programme of chemical analysis, of the utmost importance. Since this is not normally explicitly treated in sedimentary texts, an attempt at a general scheme of objectives is given below.

Successful approaches to problem-solving by chemical analysis of sedimentary rocks are illustrated in Fig. 9.1. The potential presence of four genetic components is illustrated: unmodified terrigenous detritus, leached or otherwise chemically-weathered terrigenous detritus, chemical or biological precipitates in the sedimentary environment, and authigenic (diagenetic) phases. A rock with all four components is shown as a circle, otherwise the components present can be obviously assigned to one of the genetic categories. The five rows in Fig. 9.1 denote five different kinds of problems that may be tackled. Strategy A involves selection of the rock whose contribution to the analysed chemistry is hoped to be either obvious or else insignificant. This component is not blacked-in on the diagram since they may or may not have been analysed. The column 3 approach is of course a slippery slope, but as long as one component dominates the aspects of the chemistry that are being studied then it is a perfectly reasonable strategy. The five rows in Fig. 9.1 denote five different kinds of problems that may be tackled. Strategy A

http://jurassic.ru/
(row A) assumes that terrigenous sediments have inherited some aspects of source-rock chemistry unaltered (A1/A2) or still preserved as a clear signal (A3) in order to make deductions about the source area from which sediments were derived. Strategy B involves looking at the alteration processes in the sedimentary environment such as characterizing the intensity of chemical weathering by whole-rock analysis, or the salinity of the depositional environment from analysis of trace elements in clay minerals. B1 and B2 are not shown because it is extremely unlikely that some inheritance of original chemistry, formation of new precipitates (such as neoformed clays) in the depositional environments, or diagenetic alteration can be categorically ruled out in such studies.

There is a wide variety of precipitates which could be used to characterize parameters of the depositional environment (strategy C). Examples include the analysis of minor elements or oxygen isotopes in calcareous fossils to estimate the chemical composition and palaeotemperatures of ancient oceans; characterization of unusual sea water compositions near spreading centres by study of metamorphic sediments; elucidation of environmental setting or stage of evaporation of brines responsible for evaporite deposits.

Strategy D involves the analysis of diagenetically transformed rocks or the diagenetic components of sediments to ascertain parameters such as the degree of secondary alteration, or its timing, or the chemistry of the diagenetic fluids, or the evolution of porosity.

The understanding of the cycling of the elements now and at various times in the Earth’s history, is the objective of strategy E. Recent successful developments have concerned Sr analyses in calcareous fossils as a monitor of Sr content of sea water, strontium isotope studies, which can be used to assess changing patterns of tectonism and sea-level, and carbon and sulphur isotope studies which have major implications about changing depositional environments with time. Bulk-rock analyses (El) can also be used for strategies A and C and vice-versa. Strategies in column 2 give information vital to mineralogists. Whole-rock analyses are essential for many industrial uses of sedimentary materials but, in many cases, selective analysis or sedimentological expertise would be of great benefit in optimizing extraction or treatment procedures or predicting the extent of resources. Good geochemical data, with accompanying information on field relationships and petrography, often do prove multifarious in their application.

The purpose of this section has been to stimulate thought about the aims of the research (although Fig. 9.1 is necessarily generalized and incomplete). Before asking how to get the data, be sure you know why you want them!

### 9.3 CHEMICAL PRINCIPLES

Since only a skeletal treatment is possible here, particularly of the more standard physical chemistry, the reader is referred to the following texts for further enlightenment: Krauskopf (1979) or Brownlow (1979) for general geochemical background and more specific data on sedimentary geochemistry; Raiswell et al. (1980) and Open University (1981) for an introduction to surface geochemical processes; Garrels & Christ (1965) for an extensive introduction to the practical application of thermodynamic relations in aqueous systems; Berner (1980) for a most readable introduction to chemical processes occurring in early diagenesis together with a more advanced mathematical treatment; Berner (1971) for a wider but more concise overview of chemical sedimentology (excluding most sedimentary petrological aspects). The chemistry of natural waters is well reviewed by Holland (1978), Drexler (1982), and the somewhat less readable advanced text of Stumm & Morgan (1981), while the past state of the oceans and atmosphere is the subject of a masterly book by Holland (1984). The practical prediction of mineral stability in a given solution can now be undertaken most easily and precisely by using interactive computer programs such as PHREEQC (a mini-equilibrium-equations) which was developed at the United States Geological Survey and is freely available (Parkhurst, Thorstenson & Plummer, 1980; Flemming & Plummer, 1983; Plummer & Parkhurst, 1985).

A basic understanding of the behaviour of elements can be achieved by considering their ionic potential (Fig. 9.2). This is the charge (z) of the appropriate positive ion of the element divided by its radius (r). Where z/r is less than 3, there is relatively little affinity of the element for oxygen in water molecules: the element forms simple cations in solution surrounded by loosely-bound water molecules (water of hydration). With z/r between 3 and 12, the affinity for oxygen is greater and hydroxides of the element readily form. When z/r is greater than 12, the affinity for oxygen is so great that oxyanions result. Both the electropositive elements, forming hydrated cations, and the electronegative elements forming anions, tend to remain in solution at relatively high concentrations, whereas intermediate elements tend to be readily removed from solution as hydroxides or more usually by adsorption on to solids (Li, 1981). Whereas the elements with very high or very low ionic potential tend to occur in sediments as relatively insoluble salts and intermediate elements as unaltered or chemically-modified detritus, all also occur as reactive metastable phases and bound on the surface of solids. The behaviour of each element is therefore highly variable, depending on precisely which minerals and dissolved species are present.

#### 9.3.1 Concentrations and activities

Chemical analysis generally yields results in terms of weight concentrations of chemical species. In a rock sample, results are expressed as a percentage of the total sample weight (wt %) for major elements or parts per million (ppm) for minor components. Expression in terms of the equivalent oxide is normal for silicate rocks. Conversion of an analysis from a weight basis (e.g. wt %) to a molecular basis (e.g. mole %) involves division of the analysis of each species by its formula weight and normalizing (recalculating the total to 100%). Mineral analyses may then be expressed in terms of an equivalent formula, e.g. K, 1 (Si12, Al12) (Al, Fe12+, Fe22+, Mg12) O16 (OH)4 a glauconite. For clay minerals this will normally involve an assumption about oxygen and hydroxyl stoichiometry since these components are often calculated by difference, being difficult to analyse.

Analysis is usually in terms of parts per thousand of the solution (%o or g kg⁻¹) or, for trace components, ppm (mg kg⁻¹), or even parts per billion (ppb, μg kg⁻¹). As standard temperature and pressures g kg⁻¹ is equivalent to g l⁻¹ of dilute solutions. The molarity (M) of a solution is the concentration of a chemical in moles l⁻¹ (i.e. g l⁻¹ divided by the formula weight of the species concerned). For theoretical calculations the molality (m) is used: it is the concentration in moles per kilogram of solvent (water). Unlike molarity, molality is independent of
temperature and pressure, but at low temperatures the two scales are virtually identical except in concentrated brines. The conversion equation is:

\[ m = \frac{M}{W - \text{w}} \Phi \]

(1)

where \( W \) = weight of the solution, \( w \) = weight of the dissolved chemicals and \( \Phi \) = solution density. For gases, the partial pressure (\( P \)) is used to express concentration.

Except for reactions in dilute solutions the parameter of concentration is inadequate to account for the behaviour of chemical species because of interaction between chemicals in solution. Oppositely-charged ions will attract one another which reduces their ability to participate in chemical reactions. Also, charged ions will attract one another which reduces action between chemicals in solution. Oppositely-charged reactions, (both neutral, e.g. MgSO\(_4\)) and ion-complexes dissolved in the solution. The activity of a species \( i \) (\( a_i \)) is the effective amount of which is available to take part in a reaction,

\[ a_i = \gamma_i m_i \]  

(2)

where \( m_i \) has units of moles \( i^-1 \) and \( \gamma_i \) is the activity coefficient with units chosen to be 1 mole\(^{-1} \) so that activity is dimensionless.

An essential concept involved with activity is that of standard states. The standard state of a substance is when it has an activity of 1 at 25°C and one atmosphere pressure. For a solid, liquid or ideal gas, \( a = 1 \) when it is pure and at this temperature and pressure. For dissolved species the standard state that has been chosen assumes that \( a_i = \gamma_i = m_i = 1 \). It is impossible to make such a solution since it requires the ions to behave ideally (i.e. not to interact with one another) yet be present at the very high concentration of 1 mole \( i^-1 \). The convenience of this definition is that in dilute solutions \( a \) is numerically equal to \( m \), and hence concentrations can be used in calculations.

In dilute solutions, values of \( \gamma_i \) allowing for ion interactions (but not ion-complex formation) are readily calculated by the Debye-Hückel equation (e.g. Berner, 1980, pp. 15–18) which quantifies of decreasing \( \gamma_i \) with increasing charge of ions and increasing concentration of the solution. This concentration is expressed as the ionic strength (\( I \)):

\[ I = \frac{1}{2} \sum \left| z_i \right|^2 \]  

(3)

where \( i \) refers to each ionic species in solution and \( z_i \) is the charge of the ion. In more concentrated solutions, ion complexes must be allowed for as well (to give "total" activity coefficients), but this is difficult since these depend not only on \( I \) but also on the relative abundance of particular ions as the different ion complexes vary greatly in stability. The elucidation of total ion activity coefficients in sea water has been an obvious target for research (Garrels & Thompson, 1972) and refinements continue to be made, albeit with disagreement in some important details (Müller & Schreiber, 1982; Plummer & Sundquist, 1982; Nesbitt, 1984). More concentrated brines have proved rather intractable although it has long been clear that activity coefficients rise to greater than one (thus activities are numerically greater than concentrations — a good reason for not assigning units of concentration to activity as is done in some introductory texts). A generalized explanation for this phenomenon is that at high ionic strengths cations lose their attached water molecules and are more free to take part in chemical reactions than in the hypothetical standard state condition (where the activity coefficient is one, but cations are assumed to be hydrated). Recently, following theoretical advances by the chemist Pitzer, considerable progress has been made in understanding the chemistry of brines and hence predicting the precipitation of minerals from them (e.g. Harvie, Moller & Weare, 1984).

9.3.2 Equilibrium

Chemical equilibrium refers to a state of dynamic balance between abundances of chemical species. It is rapidly attained for reactions involving only dissolved species, but at low temperatures solids tend to remain out of equilibrium with the solution with which they are in contact (except where this contact is extremely prolonged, e.g. Nesbitt, 1985). Nevertheless, the concept of equilibrium is extremely useful in that reactions will move in the direction of equilibrium. Therefore the sense of change in a system (e.g. dissolution or precipitation of a mineral) can be predicted.

The stoichiometry of an equilibrium reaction can be written in a general way as:

\[ bB + cC \rightleftharpoons dD + eE \]  

(4)

i.e. \( b \) molecules of species \( B \) react with \( c \) molecules of \( C \) to form \( d \) of \( D \) and \( e \) of \( E \) (and vice-versa). The Law of Mass Action shows that:

\[ a_B^b a_C^c = K \]

(5)

where \( a_B^b \) = activity of \( B \) raised to the power \( b \), and \( K \) is the thermodynamic equilibrium constant for the reaction. \( K \) varies only with temperature and pressure. Sometimes the relationship is formulated in terms of concentrations (\( K \) becomes \( K_c \)), but \( K_c \) may vary with solution composition as well as temperature and pressure.

Equation (5) expresses the relative stability of the chemical species: the degree to which reaction (4) goes to the right or left. A second way of expressing relative stabilities of chemicals is by the change in free energy accompanying the reaction. The free energy of a substance is the energy it possesses to do work. For any reaction:

\[ \Delta G^\circ = -RT \ln K \]  

(6)

where \( \Delta G^\circ \) is the change in (Gibbs) free energy accompanying the reaction (the superscript \( \circ \) denotes that this is the standard free energy change corresponding to the chemicals being in their standard state), \( R \) is the gas constant and \( T \) is the absolute temperature.

\[ \Delta G = \Delta G^\circ - 1.364 \log \frac{\text{aq}}{K} \]  

(7)

where \( \Delta G \) is expressed in kcal mole\(^{-1} \). For reaction (4):

\[ \Delta G^\circ = \Delta G_{ TD} + \Delta G_{ FE} - \Delta G_{ TR} + \Delta G_{ FC} \]  

(8)

where \( \Delta G_{ TD} \) is the free energy involved in forming \( D \) from its elements in the standard state (standard free energy of formation) and likewise for \( E, B \) and \( C \). Values of \( \Delta G^\circ \) are tabulated in many texts, although constantly subject to revision. Values for \( K \) can thus be readily calculated for any reaction of interest. A negative value of \( \Delta G \) indicates that a system starting with proportions of chemicals as written in equation (4) will go to the right to reach equilibrium. Conversely a positive value indicates a leftward movement to reach equilibrium.

In the special case of the dissolution–precipitation reaction of a salt BC:

\[ bB + cC \rightleftharpoons dD + eE \]  

(9)

\[ K = \frac{(a_B^b)(a_C^c)}{a_D^d a_E^e} \]  

Since the activity of a pure solid is one by definition, then:

\[ K = \frac{(a_B^b)(a_C^c)}{a_D^d a_E^e} \]  

(10)

where \( K_c \) is the (activity) solubility product. In a given solution, the Ionic Activity Product (IAP) can be determined:

\[ \text{IAP} = (a_B^b)(a_C^c) \]  

(12)

and compared with the solubility product by the saturation index (\( \Omega \)):

\[ \Omega = \frac{\text{IAP}}{K_c} \]  

(13)

or the % saturation:

\[ \% \text{saturation} = \frac{\text{IAP}}{K_c} \]  

(14)

NB some authors define \( \Omega \) as \( \log \frac{\text{IAP}}{K_c} \). If \( \Omega = 1 \), the solution is at equilibrium (the salt tending neither to dissolve nor to precipitate) and is said to be just (100%) saturated. With \( \Omega > 1 \), then the solution is supersaturated and ought to be precipitating the salt, conversely an undersaturated solution (\( \Omega < 1 \) should be dissolving the salt.

The correct formulation of an equilibrium constant for solid solutions has been under debate with particular reference to magnesium carbonates and clay minerals. Three different approaches have been proposed. Using magnesium carbonates as an example, fractional exponents can be used (e.g. Thorstenson & Plummer, 1977):

\[ K_{\text{CaCO}_3} = \frac{(a_{\text{Ca}^2+})(a_{\text{CO}_3^{2-}})}{(a_{\text{CO}_3^{2-}})^{2}(a_{\text{Ca}^2+})^{2-}} \]  

(15)

Alternatively it could be assumed that equilibrium is always reached for the CaCO\(_3\) component (e.g. Wollast, Garrels & MacKenzie, 1980):

\[ K_{\text{CaCO}_3} = (a_{\text{Ca}^2+})(a_{\text{CO}_3^{2-}})^{2} = K_{\text{CaCO}_3} \]  

(16)

Finally, activities of substituting ions could be added (Lippmann, 1977; Gresens, 1981):

\[ K_{\text{CaCO}_3} = (a_{\text{Ca}^2+} + a_{\text{Mg}^2+})(a_{\text{CO}_3^{2-}})^{2} \]  

(17)

Despite the theoretical objections to the use of fractional exponents (Lippman, 1977; Gresens, 1981), the formulation of equation (15) was the only one to fit the data in the careful experiments of Walter & Morse (1982). Tardy & Fritz (1981) also continued this approach in calculating clay mineral solubilities.

For solid solutions a distinction (well reviewed by MacKenzie et al., 1983) must be made between true thermodynamic equilibrium of solid and contacting
solution, and stoichiometric saturation (Thorstenson & Plummer, 1977). In the former case, crystals equilibrating with a large reservoir of fluid have their composition determined by the fluid, which usually necessitates recrystallization. Since this is often very slow in nature, stoichiometric saturation describes the common case of dissolution ceasing in the absence of recrystallization (i.e., congruent dissolution). The converse is (22) is incongruent dissolution: the release of chemicals to solution in different proportions to the solid composition. This occurs not only with solid solutions but can also lead to the transformation of one mineral to another in the chemical weathering of silicates.

The dissociation of water is an equilibrium of special importance:

\[ H_2O \rightleftharpoons H^+ + OH^- \] (18)

At 25°C and in dilute solutions:

\[ 10^{-14} = K_w = \left( a_{H^+} \right) \left( a_{OH^-} \right) \] (19)

In more concentrated solutions, \( a_{OH^-} \) is less than 1 and is equivalent to the water vapour pressure above the solution at equilibrium relative to the vapour pressure above pure water. The varying relative abundance of \( H^+ \) and \( OH^- \) are extremely important in nature for life processes and stability of minerals, notably carbonates. When \( a_{H^+} = a_{OH^-} = 10^{-7} \) at 25°C, the solution is neutral. When \( a_{H^+} > a_{OH^-} \), the solution is acid whereas when \( a_{OH^-} > a_{H^+} \) the solution is alkaline. For convenience, a logarithmic derivative (pH) of \( H^+ \) is generally used to express this property:

\[ pH = -\log_{10}(a_{H^+}) \] (20)

Therefore at 25°C the pH of a neutral solution is 7, lower values corresponding to acid solutions, higher pHs to alkaline ones.

The relevance to carbonates arises because the carbonate ion is more abundant at higher pH. It is derived by the double dissociation of the weak acid \( H_2CO_3 \) (carbonic acid):

\[ H_2CO_3 \rightleftharpoons H^+ + HCO_3^- \] (21)

\[ HCO_3^- \rightleftharpoons H^+ + CO_3^{2-} \] (22)

Low amounts of \( H^+ \) (high pH) drive these equilibria to the right. \( K \) for (21) is \( 10^{-6.4} \), so that the pH has to rise to greater than 6.4 for \( a_{HCO_3^-} \) to be greater than \( a_{CO_3^{2-}} \), therefore even in an alkaline solution like sea water (around pH 8), \( a_{HCO_3^-} = 10^{-3}(a_{CO_3^{2-}}) \gg a_{CO_3^{2-}} \). Thus it is clear that the amounts of carbonate ion are often a limiting factor in carbonate mineral formation.

The amounts of \( CO_3^{2-} \) cannot be measured directly in solution but, by carrying out an acid titration, the amount of chemicals (base) that will react with acids is easily computed. This is the alkalinity of the solution. In most cases \( HCO_3^- \) and \( CO_3^{2-} \) are by far the dominant weak bases present so that the alkalinity approximates to the carbonate alkalinity \( (A)_{eq} \) where:

\[ (A)_{eq} = m_{HCO_3^-} + 2m_{CO_3^{2-}} \] (23)

The figure two arises in equation (23) since \( CO_3^{2-} \) can react with two \( H^+ \) ions. Knowing \( A_{eq} \), \( a_{CO_3^{2-}} \) can be calculated from a knowledge of \( K \) from equation (22). The alkaline (high pH) nature of a particular solution should not be confused with alkalinity; the two parameters are independent variables. High values of carbonate alkalinity mean that the solution can receive much acid, input without markedly changing its pH, since the excess \( H^+ \) ions are removed by reacting with the weak bases. Any solution which resists a change in pH by reacting with \( H^+ \) or \( OH^- \) ions is said to be buffered and the reactions are termed buffering reactions.

Although the relationship of pH to mineral stability is normally clear, complications arise when two minerals are in competition. Take for example sedimentary calcium phosphate and calcium carbonate. Although both are soluble in alkaline solutions, calcium carbonate shows this more intensely, and so tends to win a competition for calcium ions in alkaline solutions. In early marine diagenesis, calcium phosphate would thus be expected to form in neutral to weakly acid pore waters (Nathan & Sass, 1981). In chemical reactions involving exchange of electrons there is a third measure of equilibrium (other than \( AG \) and \( K \)) which is the oxidation-reduction potential \( (Eh) \). Each such reaction can be broken down into two half-reactions involving an oxidized chemical reacting with electrons to form a reduced chemical:

\[ B \rightleftharpoons B^+ + ne \] (half-reaction) (24)

\[ ne + C^m+ \rightleftharpoons C \] (half-reaction) (25)

\[ B + C^m+ \rightleftharpoons C + B^+ \] (overall reaction) (26)

where \( n \) is an integer and \( C \) stands for an electron. Since each half reaction involves electron transfer it is associated with a potential \( (E) \), the magnitude of which depends on the free energy for each half-reaction. Under standard conditions (25°C, 1 atmosphere pressure, unit activities of chemicals):

\[ AG = nFE^o \] (27)

where \( F \) is Faraday's number (the charge of a mole of electrons) and \( E^0 \) is the standard EMF for the reaction. Under non-standard conditions the voltage produced is the oxidation-reduction potential \( (Eh) \):

\[ Eh = (E^0 + RT/2F) \ln \left( \frac{[C^m+]^{n/2}}{[B]} \right) \] (28)

In practice, voltage can only be measured for pairs of half-reactions so that one half-reaction needs to be arbitrarily defined as zero to enable values for each half-reaction to be given. Reaction (29) is thus defined with \( E^0 = 0 \) V.

\[ H_2 = 2H^+ + 2e \] (29)

This is equivalent to saying that the standard free energy of formation of \( H_2 \) is zero. For any solution in nature there will be a mixture of various oxidizing and reducing agents which will react and tend towards equilibrium. By comparing this solution with a standard electrode of known Eh, the Eh of the test solution can be determined. A positive value for Eh indicates that it is relatively oxidizing (electron-grabbing), likewise reducing for negative Eh. Eh is one of the less satisfactory chemical concepts to apply to real solutions because it is difficult to measure, and in sedimentary systems many redox reactions are irreversible and bacterially-mediated (Hostetler, 1984).

A complicating factor when considering equilibrium in nature is the physical condition of solid materials. For example, very small particles have excess free energy (surface free energy) arising from unsatisfied bonds on their surface. This leads to the phenomenon of Ostwald's ripening (reviewed by Barbonnet, 1982) whereby larger crystals may grow in solution whilst very small ones dissolve. This is a useful phenomenon in experimental studies of crystal growth carried out at low growth rates (Lorenz, 1981). Excessive surface area is also a property of organic tests and complex crystal aggregates, and Williams, Pars & Czurz (1985) illustrated how the resulting increased solubility plays an important role in silica diagenesis.

Crystals that have been stressed or which contain a larger proportion of dislocations than other crystals of the same phase will dissolve preferentially. Even different surfaces of single crystals differ in susceptibilities to dissolution, as discussed for quartz by Hurst (1981). Crystal defects affect the incorporation of some trace elements into minerals (see Section 9.3.5) and probably limit the size of clay mineral crystals.

Diagrams showing the stability of different mineral phases and aqueous species are commonly used in chemical sedimentology and have a powerful visual impact as an apparently precise guide to the conditions under which minerals have formed. Garrels & Christ (1965) gave an excellent guide to their construction and use. Figure 9.3 has been deliberately badly presented to illustrate possible pitfalls in the use of stability diagrams. The lines themselves have been constructed from equations in terms of Eh and/or pH resulting from substituting free energy data into equation (8), together with (28) or (6) and (5). Values for \( AG \) are known with greater or lesser precision and are constantly being revised (Helgeson et al., 1976; Robie, Hemingway & Fisher, 1978; Weast, 1983; Woods & Garrels, 1987). Another source of imprecision is the measurement of Eh in natural waters which, as previously mentioned, is difficult and not always meaningful (Hostetler, 1984). The stability fields refer to regions where one phase is more stable than another. When a field is labelled for a dissolved phase, it is saying 'no solid phase is stable here'. However, dissolved phases have variable activities, so that field boundaries with

http://jurassic.ru/
increase solubility, but $S$ reduces it because of the reduction in $a_{Fe}^{2+}$ which destabilizes hydrated silica in solution (Fourmarier, 1983). These concepts can be applied to permeable rocks in which corrosive flow is occurring (Wood, 1986) and indicate that quartz and carbonates can be transferred from one part of the rock mass to another, often moving in opposite directions and hence giving rise to replacive relationships.

9.3.3 Departures from equilibrium

Where sediments are out of equilibrium with their contained fluids, this relates either to kinetic controls (the slowness of chemical reactions or movement of chemicals) or to biological interference.

The most important kinetic control concerns the behaviour of crystal surfaces in dissolution or growth, especially the latter. The presence of abundant early diagenetic minerals such as glauconite or carbonate fluorapatite only in slowly-deposited marine calcareous sediments illustrates the kinetic control on crystal growth. Conversely the fact that slowly-deposited detrital sediments exist at all attests to the incomplete dissolution of mineral grains in undersaturated waters.

Crystal growth in a clean, supersaturated solution is initially limited by a stage of nucleation, since nuclei below a certain critical size have excess free energy and are thus unstable. However, in the sedimentary environment there will normally already be nuclei in the system which can be overgrown, even if nuclei and overgrowth are different minerals (epitaxial overgrowth). Where supersaturation is low ($\Omega$ (equation 13) close to 1) the critical nucleus size is larger and the availability of nuclei could then be rate-limiting, but such conditions also lead to slow crystal growth anyway.

If surface reactions rather than movement of chemicals limits the growth rate of crystals, then the mode of growth would be expected to be addition to growth spirals around screw dislocations occurring on the crystal surface, rather than by the birth and spreading of two-dimensional layers (Sunagawa, 1982). If $\Omega$ is close to 1, then:

$$R = K(\Omega - 1)^n$$

where $n > 1$. For example, Mg-adsorption strongly inhibits calcite growth, and adsorbed humic and fulvic acids and PO$_4^{3-}$ inhibit the growth of aragonite (Berner et al., 1978). The importance of Mg as an inhibitor lies in its abundance in natural waters. Experimental studies (Meyer, 1984) on calcite growth have shown that numerous inorganic and organic species are more effective inhibitors, with Fe$^{2+}$ being so by four orders of magnitude. Adsorption phenomena are also important in controlling crystal habit (Boistelle, 1982).

For dissolution, we have:

$$R = K(1 - \Omega^m)$$

where $R$ refers to the dissolution rate. Very slow dissolution rates caused by ion-adsorption are common: for example the dissolution of calcite and aragonite shells in undersaturated sea water where $\Omega = 4-5$ (Keir, 1980), the reaction being limited by adsorption of PO$_4^{3-}$. However, inhibition of dissolution of calcium carbonate by organic materials is generally related to physical covering, rather than adsorption phenomena (Meyer, 1983).

Berner (1978a, 1980) has shown that where dissolution is controlled by surface reactions, the crystals have angular outlines with crystallographically-controlled etch pits: such surface-reaction control is normal in soils and nearly all surface waters.

Under some circumstances the rate of crystal growth or dissolution is controlled by the rate of movement of chemicals in solution rather than by reactions taking place on the crystal surface. This only seems feasible within pore waters and where precipitation or dissolution is unusually rapid (implying great supersaturation or undersaturation). Movement of chemical species may be by diffusion (movement under forces, e.g. groundwater flow or the relative movement of grains and pore fluid due to compaction), dispersal by burrowing organisms, or by molecular diffusion. The existence of appropriate concentration gradients in solutions away from sites of, for example, manganese oxide or iron sulphide precipitation in Recent sediments demonstrates the importance of the transport-control mechanism. Growing crystals in these circumstances may be restricted to a very fine crystal size, or show dendritic or spherulitic morphologies (Rodriguez-Clemente, 1982; Sunagawa, 1982), dissolving crystals will exhibit smoothly-rounded outlines (Berner, 1978a, 1980). The existence of specifically diffusion-controlled growth in sediments and sedimentary rocks is demonstrated by Liese-gang ring phenomena, such as iron oxide bands formed during weathering, or concentric mineralogical banding in concretions (De Celles & Gutschick, 1983). This arises where inter-diffusion of two species has led to precipitation of material at episodically-shifting sites.

The magnitude of a diffusional flux is given by Fick's first law of diffusion. It relates the mass of chemical component $i$ transported per unit area per unit time ($J$) to its concentration gradient ($\nabla C_i$) across distance $x$:

$$J = -D_i \frac{dC_i}{dx}$$

where $D_i$ is the diffusion coefficient, specific to the chemical component $i$ (typically around 10$^{-5}$ cm$^2$ s$^{-1}$ for salts in water at 25°C). In a sediment, diffusion is slowed because of the effective increase in path length caused by the obstructions represented by the sediment grains. Thus the effective diffusion coefficient is smaller by a factor relating to the sediment porosity (e.g. $q_i^2$ where $q_i$ is the fractional porosity). Lerman, 1979). There is also some variation of $D_i$ with salinity of a solution (e.g. Lerman, 1979, p. 81). Sometimes corrections are necessary to allow for ion-pairing effects (Mangelsdorf & Soylas, 1982). The behaviour of the diffusion gradient with time is covered by Fick's second law (e.g. Berner, 1980, pp. 32–33); diffusion acts to reduce the concentration gradients but, if it is allowed to do so, the flux necessarily diminishes.

Enhanced movement of chemicals, because of the presence of open burrows in a sediment, can be modelled in a similar way, using a bifid diffusion coefficient or, if complete bioturbation occurs, then a ‘box modelling’ approach can be used (Berner, 1980, pp. 42–53). An advective flux can be calculated as the product of the concentration of the component ($C$) and the velocity of flow ($U$):

$$J = CU$$

It is often useful to compare the effectiveness of diffusion with that of advective flow. If we imagine a situation where a diffusive flux in one direction is balanced by an advective flux in the other direction, then:

$$-D_i \frac{dC_i}{dx} + CU = 0.$$
If the concentration difference ($\Delta C$) is of the same order as the concentration (C) then:

$$U_d \approx D$$  \hspace{1cm} (36)

For a given diffusion coefficient, this equation shows over what distance an advective flow of velocity $U$ is equally effective as diffusion. For example, for a typical value of $D_1$ in a sediment at 25°C of 100 cm$^2$ yr$^{-1}$ then an advective flux would need to exceed 1000 cm$^2$ yr$^{-1}$ in order to balance diffusion across a 1 mm gradient, or only 1 cm$^2$ yr$^{-1}$ over a distance of 1 m (Berner, 1980, pp. 117–118). Unless the concentration gradient is fixed by reactions occurring at either end (such as rapid dissolution, precipitation or dispersal at an interface), diffusion will diminish with time by Fick's second law. A way of conceiving this (Lerman, 1979, pp. 58–60), again assuming $\Delta C=C$, is by use of the criterion that advection will transport material in a time $t$ over a distance ($L_a$) of:

$$L_a = Ut$$

whereas diffusion will transport material over a distance ($L_d$) of $\sqrt{Dt}$. If the concentration gradient is not fixed then $L_a = L_d$ is a criterion for the time ($t = D/Ut^2)$ after which advection starts to become more effective than diffusional transport (e.g. 14 days with $U=1$ m yr$^{-1}$ and $D=10^3$ cm$^2$ s$^{-1}$). In this way the most effective transport process may be determined for a given situation.

It is often stated (e.g. Piagutore, 1982) that diffusion becomes more important at higher temperatures. Certainly $D$ increases steadily with increasing temperature: data (Weast, 1983) on equivalent conductance of ions (directly proportional to diffusion coefficients, Li & Gregory, 1974) yield a rough relationship to 150°C:

$$D_i = D_{25} \left(1 + \frac{T}{25}\right)$$  \hspace{1cm} (37)

where $D_{25}$ is the diffusion coefficient for the ion at 0°C and $T_2$ is temperature in degrees Celsius. The relationship with temperature is also definable in terms of the viscosity ($\eta$) and absolute temperature ($T$) such that:

$$\frac{D_i}{\eta} = \text{constant}$$  \hspace{1cm} (38)

(Li & Gregory, 1974; Lerman, 1979, pp. 86–89).

Rates of diffusion will only increase with temperature as long as the increase in $D_i$ outweighs the restriction due to decreasing porosity. For example, Baker, Giesskes & Elderfield (1982) indicated that this is marginally so for Sr$^{2+}$ and Ca$^{2+}$ in a 500 m vertical section of deep-sea ooze with a 20°C temperature increase from top to bottom. It is more difficult to assess diffusion coefficients in extremely small pores, but the effectiveness of diffusion along intergranular boundaries during diagenesis is well known from the pressure dissolution and mineralogical replacement phenomena abundant in sedimentary rocks.

Apart from kinetic effects, organisms have a profound influence on the sedimentary environment, causing widespread departures from equilibrium. For example, the secretion of calcareous shells in undersaturated waters is well known. Siliceous organisms can reduce silica concentrations in solution to vanishingly small amounts. The decomposition of organic matter during early diagenesis is immensely speeded-up by the action of bacteria and this in turn leads to greatly accelerated mineral reactions, particularly pyrite formation, and reactions involving carbonates. Such activities, not forgetting the deposition of immense quantities of reduced carbon, have obviously had a major effect on the sedimentary cycling of elements. Vital effects on carbonate trace element chemistry and isotopic ratios are mentioned in later sections.

9.3.4 Adsorption

Adsorption is the process of accumulation of chemical species at an interface: in our context at the surface of a sediment. It is a complex phenomenon (Parks, 1975; van Olphen, 1977; Yariv & Cross, 1979) which is sometimes rendered confusing by oversimplification. Parks (1975) provided an excellent review of the chemical concepts involved with detailed examples, and Cody (1971) discussed its application to palaeoenvironmental studies of shales. The relevance of adsorption may be judged from the statement of Li (1981) that it is the most important removal mechanism for most elements into sediments from sea water. The importance for crystal growth and dissolution kinetics was mentioned in Section 9.3.3 and its relevance in co-precipitation studies is dealt with in Section 9.3.5.

Figure 9.4(a) illustrates a solid whose surface has developed a surface charge. The charge is neutralized by an electrical field in the solution featuring an excess of positive ions close to the solid. The whole system makes up an electrical double layer consisting of the fixed layer on the solid and the diffuse or Gouy layer of counter-ions and co-ions which have respectively the opposite and the same charge as the fixed layer. In a more concentrated solution the Gouy layer contracts (Fig. 9.4b). The ions in the Gouy layer are described as adsorbed, but are readily exchanged for other ions if the composition of the bulk solution changes. In Fig. 9.4(c), the fixed layer now comprises the solid surface together with strongly (specifically) adsorbed species (in this case positively-charged ions of two different kinds). The overall charge of the fixed layer in this instance has been reversed so that the Gouy layer now has an excess of negative ions. The change from Fig. 9.4(b) to Fig. 9.4(c) could be simply a function of time, allowing two kinds of process to occur. First, weakly-adsorbed species in the Gouy layer may develop a stronger bond with the solid (e.g. by losing water of hydration). Second, the solid may progressively scavange any rare species in the solution for which it has a great affinity, particularly if solid and solution are in differential motion.

A thermodynamic approach (Parks, 1975) is helpful in clarifying why adsorption occurs. A particular species will adsorb if this will entail a loss of free energy ($\Delta G_{ads}$ is negative), $\Delta G_{ads}$ is the sum of a series of possible processes. In many cases electrostatic attraction of ions to a charged surface (with associated $\Delta G_{elec}$) is the most important process, but in other cases $\Delta G_{ads}$ is smaller in magnitude than $\Delta G_{elec}$ (the formation of a specific chemical bond of the adsorbent with the solid) or $\Delta G_{chem}$ (changes in the size or shape of the hydration envelope around ions) or $\Delta G_{chem}$ (displacement of ions from the solid by reaction with the adsorbent), or some combination of these.

When $\Delta G_{elec}$ is dominant, the adsorption process is relatively non-specific, that is, it depends more on the charge of the ions being adsorbed than on any of their other properties. Here the Gouy layer concept applies, for which there are various data and mathematical models (Parks, 1975; van Olphen, 1977). When $\Delta G_{elec}$ is subordinate, the adsorption is specific to the adsorbent and the solid concerned. For example, some large organic molecules are adsorbed because the process of Van der Waal's bonding contributes much less free energy. Boron is known to adsorb strongly and specifically to illite, presumably by chemical bonding of $B(OH)_4^-$ groups to sites on the mineral surface (Couch & Grim, 1968). In fact any soluble species which is capable of forming particularly strong complexes in solution, or insoluble compounds with some component of the solid, will potentially show strong adsorption. It should be emphasized that all gradations exist between specific and non-specific adsorption.

The sign and magnitude of the surface charge on most solids depends on the solution chemistry. For example, considering hydroxides, they will either become positively charge by reactions such as:

$$\text{MOH} + \text{H}^+ \rightarrow \text{MOH}_2^+$$

or negatively charged:

$$\text{MOH} - \text{e}^- \rightarrow \text{MO}^- + \text{H}^+$$

Fig. 9.4. Schematic illustration of adsorption processes. For simplicity, the surface charge of the solid is shown as if owing to lattice substitutions (as in clays) rather than because of adsorption of potential-determining ions (see text).
A solid may be nullified or reversed by specific substitution, is a positive or negative charge developed by reaction of H⁺ with the clay surface. The charge is balanced by the adsorption of cations in the lattice and so is an intrinsic feature. This can be expressed in terms of an exchange reaction (between equally-charged ions, as the simplest example):

\[ A^+ + B^- = B^+ + A^- \]

(42)

for which the equilibrium constant \( K \) is not equal to one:

\[ K = \frac{(a_B)(a_A)}{(a_A)(a_B)} \]

(43)

Since activity coefficients for adsorbed ions are not readily estimated and often appear to be close to unity, mole fractions \( x \) are frequently used instead of activities of adsorbed species. If the system is noticeably non-ideal (for example when large variations in composition are being considered) then mole fractions may still be used with a different (empirical) form of equation:

\[ \frac{a_B}{a_A} = K' x_B \]

(44)

where \( K' \) and \( p \) are constants for the pairs of adsorbs (Lerman, 1979, p. 346).

Altervalent ion-exchange has been found to be an important mechanism in experiments on freshwater clays exposed to sea water (Sayles & Mangelsdorf, 1977, 1979). Equations (42) and (43) can be modified to model this process (e.g. Berner, 1980, p. 70) and carry the important implication that the less highly-charged ion will be preferentially adsorbed in solutions of progressively higher ionic strength because its activity coefficient in solution will fall more slowly. Experiments on exposure of clays to sea water also show that CEC diminishes with time as \( K' \) becomes specifically sorbed on to degrading illites (Russell, 1970). Ion-exchange reactions and specific adsorption processes are also very important during weathering and burial diagenesis. Li (1981) considered adsorption as a mechanism for controlling the ratios of concentrations of elements in oceanic pelagic sediments and in sea water by plotting these ratios against equimolar constants for reactions involved in adsorption on OH sites on solids. (These equimolarity constants correlate fairly well with ionic potential.) Most elements fall within a band on such plots, consistent with adsorption being a major control on their behaviour.

The complexing of trace metals to organic material can be extremely important as a means of introducing elements to sediments even if later released by organic decay and fixed in other ways. Unfortunately, the mechanisms of complexation (e.g. by specific adsorption, or alternatively by chelation, i.e. bonded to O, N or S and lying centrally in ring structures) is not often known (Jackson, Jonasson & Skippen, 1978), especially in sea water. Chelation is well-known for example for V and Ni in petroleum and oil shales (e.g. Riley & Saxby, 1982). A number of elements are found to correlate with organic carbon in black shales (e.g. Mo, Ni, Cu, V, Co, U, Zn, Hg and As in the study of Leventhal & Hosterman, 1982) which is empirical evidence for the importance of the association of organic molecules and metals in sea water.

Nyffeler, Li & Santschi (1984) performed experiments on the rates of adsorption processes to test whether particles remained long enough in sea water to reach a state of equilibrium adsorption. Where particles only reside for a few days in the water column it seems that equilibration may not be complete and will certainly not be so for certain elements (Be, Ma, Co and Fe). However, for several of these elements, removal of adsorption to manganeus nodules will be continuously available. In principle, however, sedimentation rate and aspects of sedimentary environment (e.g. water depth), even with constant water chemistry, are liable to affect the minor element (adsorbed species) composition of sediments. Variations in salinity or organic carbon flux to sediments will be major controls on trace element content.

When considering use of adsorbed trace elements to characterize the chemistry of depositional environments, specific adsorbents that will not readily be diagenetically-altered. Possible problems are inheritance of trace elements in detrital phases, control of uptake by several chemical parameters (e.g. pH, temperature and salinity), and variations in mineralogical abundances and surface properties even of individual minerals (Cod, 1971). Success only seems likely when making comparative studies, within a geological unit, using selective analyses, on a specific mineral species (see Section 9.8).

9.3.5 Lattice incorporation of trace elements

The object of studying trace elements in minerals is normally to constrain the chemistry of the precipitating solution, or to assess the degree of chemical exchange during diagenetic alterations (Brand & Veizer, 1980; Veizer, 1983). Usually interpretations are only possible when coprecipitation of the trace element by substitution for a host (carrier) ion of similar radius and electronegativity has occurred (Mclntyre, 1962). In silicate mineral lattices, initial lattice positions may also be amenable to analysis and interpretation (Ishikawa & Ichikuni, 1984), although
the abundance of these sites is related to the occurrence of lattice defects (Busenberg & Plummer, 1985). In assuming that lattice substitution has occurred, care should be taken that inclusions of other phases are absent (Angus, Raynor & Robinson, 1979). Bulk analysis will be useless if a trace element occurs in significant amounts within solid or liquid inclusions in the host mineral. Even if lattice substitution has occurred, sometimes there may be two possible lattice sites which can be occupied; it is often assumed that an element is present in one site only: for example in dolomite, Fe\(^{2+}\) and Mn\(^{2+}\) are thought to occupy dominantly Mg\(^{2+}\) sites rather than Ca\(^{2+}\) sites because of their small ionic radius (like Mg\(^{2+}\)). Lumsden & Lloyd (1984) showed that variations in Mn site-partitioning do occur in different dolomite samples; in the future such variations could be useful in interpreting mineral genesis.

If a very small volume of solid is considered, in which a trace element (Tr) is substituting for a carrier element (Cr), precipitating from a large reservoir of solution then at equilibrium:

\[
\frac{m_{Cr}}{m_{Cr,JS}} = K \frac{m_{Tr}}{m_{Cr,SL}},
\]

where S refers to the solid phase and L the liquid phase. K is the partition coefficient or distribution coefficient which is constant provided that: (1) temperature and pressure and constant, (2) the solutions are dilute and (3) the ratio \(m_{Tr}/m_{Cr}\) is low in the solution and the solid.

So far we have considered a small volume of solid with high surface area to volume ratio such that all parts of the crystal are effectively in contact with the fluid and the solution reservoir is sufficiently large that \(m_{Tr}/m_{Cr}\) has remained constant. In the more general case, crystals grow from solutions whose compositions change either because the system is open, or because the crystalizing solids in a closed system are removing chemicals in a different ratio from their initial ratio in the solution. In either case, two end-member situations are possible. First, the crystals could become zoned during growth so that equation (45) only applies to the outermost layer of the crystals. Theoretically this 'Doerner-Hoskins' behaviour applies when diffusion in the solid is slow and precipitation is either slow, or fast enough to avoid being incorporated into the crystal lattice (i.e. the mineral Tr/Cr ratio more nearly resembles the solution Tr/Cr ratio).

The influence of solution chemistry on K can be significant, particularly where the trace and carrier ions show different tendencies to form complexes (as, for example, Br\(^{-}\) versus Cl\(^{-}\) in Mg-Cl brines, Herrmann, 1980). This effect can be minimized if K is formulated using activities rather than concentrations.

The role of kinetic factors in controlling minor element chemistry is a source of disagreement. Lorens (1985) cites the kinetic effect for the coprecipitation of Sr, Mn, Co and Cd with calcite as did Busenberg & Plummer (1985) for Na and SO\(_4\) in calcite, but no kinetic effects were found for Sr in the absence of Mg (as, for example, Veizer, 1983) or in the presence of Mg (as, for example, Veizer, 1983). Therefore, it seems that kinetic factors may be significant, for example, the increase in K for Sr\(^{2+}\) in calcite with increasing content of Mg (Mucci & Morse, 1983) and Mn (Takano, 1985).

When the 'trace' component becomes a major element in solution one would not expect K to remain constant. Studies by Fuchtbauer & Hardie (1980), Fichthauer (1980) and Mucci & Morse (1983) for Fe and Mg in calcite are illustrative. For Mg in calcite, as the Mg/Ca ratio in solution rises, the partition coefficient falls because of an increasing saturation of adsorption sites for Mg, adsorption being a necessary precursor to lattice incorporation. K falls by much less than an order of magnitude, however, because of an opposing tendency to increase Mg adsorption because of the affinity of Mg ions in solution for Mg already adsorbed (Mucci & Morse, 1983).

The incorporation of Na and K into calcite is now known to be an example of interstitial solid solution.
The experimental work of Ishikawa & Ichikuni (1984) showed that the levels of these elements was independent of the Ca$^{2+}$ activity of the solution at fixed Na$^+$ and K$^+$ activities, but actually follow a Freundlich-type isotherm (Busenberg & Plummer, 1985). Ishikawa & Ichikuni (1984) attempted to calibrate this as a palaeosalinity indicator, but Busenberg & Plummer (1985) clearly showed that Na incorporation was related to the speed of crystal growth, fast crystal growth leading to the formation of more lattice defects which are selected by Na. Absolute levels of Na are not therefore useful as salinity indicators, although Na variation within a sample suite of similar origin may reflect salinity variations (Zhao & Fairchild, 1987). Okarama & Kirano (1986) demonstrated that the presence of Mg in the solution increased the amounts of alkali metals (Li, Na, K, Rb) incorporated in calcite.

Pingitore & Eastman (1986) provided perhaps the best example of the complexity of real chemical systems by considering Sr incorporation in calcite (Fig. 9.5). They showed that Sr displays complex behaviour best reconciled with a model in which some Sr could be incorporated in defect sites as well as substituting for Ca$^{2+}$. Hence the partition coefficient ($K$) is higher at very fast growth rates when more lattice defects would be present. At slower growth rates, there would be a fixed number of defect sites which, when filled, would cause a lowering in $K$ since Sr would then only be entering Ca$^{2+}$ sites. Thus $K$ is lowered by increasing Na or Ba concentrations in the fluid (these elements preferentially fill defect sites), or high absolute concentration of Sr$^{2+}$ (equivalent to concentrations of Sr in the solid of more than a few hundred ppm).

Organisms precipitating calcareous shells may or may not adhere to trace element concentrations appropriate for inorganic systems. Great variations, particularly in Sr and Mg, are well known (Milliman, 1974). Sometimes growth rate, often coupled to temperature changes, has an effect (Moberly, 1968; Kolesar, 1978) but in other cases $K$ remains constant and different from the inorganic case regardless of growth rate (Lorens & Bender, 1980). A different coupled composition of body fluids from the ambient fluid explains some, but not all, of these relationships (Lorens & Bender, 1980). Interpretation of ancient water chemistry from shell chemistry obviously requires a prerequisite detailed knowledge of the behaviour of the group being considered from studies of modern organisms.

### 9.3.6 Stable isotope fractionation

The partitioning of the isotopes of a given element between different phases during chemical or physical processes is known as fractionation. Specific fractionation mechanisms can be recognized by the repeated removal of one phase and their condensation of water vapour is the most familiar of these 'Rayleigh processes'.

The following discussion outlines the specific fractionation mechanisms of importance in sedimentary geology. Table 9.1 summarizes the isotopes, the reference standards used and the range of isotopic variation. Nitrogen isotopes are not discussed here but see Kaplan (1983).

**CARBON**

Bicarbonate dissolved in sea water (with $^{13}$C around O) provides a convenient baseline, especially since there is only a very small fractionation on CaCO$_3$ precipitation at earth surface temperatures, although calculated organisms having taxon-related departures from inorganic equilibrium (Dodd & Stanton, 1981; Veizer, 1983) and there are inorganic kinetic effects too (Turner, 1982). Equilibrium is approximately maintained between sea water bicarbonate and atmospheric CO$_2$ with $^{13}$C around $-7\%$. The most pronounced fractionations are related to the fixation of carbon in organic matter by photosynthesis (summarized by Deines, 1980 and Anderson & Arthur, 1983). The organic carbon of plants has $^{13}$C in the range $-10$ to $-30\%$ with variations according to taxa, and, in the case of marine plankton, temperature. Kerogen derived by maturation of marine organic matter may show slight enrichment or depletion of $^{13}$C compared to the original organic matter. Release of organic decay products into pore waters during early diagenesis causes pronounced shifts in $^{13}$C and increases in carbonate alkalinity leading to the formation of authigenic carbonates and phosphates with distinctive isotope signatures (e.g. Irwin, Curtis & Coleman, 1977; Macdonald, 1977; Mahoney, 1981; Benmore, Coleman & McArthur, 1983; Nelson & Lawrence, 1984). Important in this respect are bacterial sulphate-, iron- and manganese-reduction which are thought to produce $^{13}$C-enriched carbonates and phosphates with little carbon isotope fractionation. At slightly greater depths occurs bacterial fermentation which...
leads to fractionation between simultaneously-generated CO$_2$ ($^{13}$C say +30 to +15%) and CH$_4$ ($^{13}$C say ~5 to ~70%). Sometimes carbon from such sources mixes with heavier bicarbonate derived from dissolution of unstable carbonates (Coleman & Rainiew, 1981).

In freshwater conditions, $^{81}$C of bicarbonate (and hence that of carbonate precipitates) typically is negative, but shows great variation depending on the size of input from organic carbon, atmospheric CO$_2$ and rock carbonate. Heavier values accompany equilibration with atmospheric CO$_2$ in shallow, agitated waters. An additional possible mechanism of fractionation arises when carbonate precipitation in an enclosed marine or continental water body is induced by CO$_2$ loss. The residual bicarbonate is heavy (Katz, Kolodny & Nissenbaum, 1977). More extreme enrichment is possible in cave carbonates, and in brines, where rapid CO$_2$ loss can lead to an additional, kinetic fractionation (Hendy, 1971; Dreybrodt, 1982; Stiller, Rounick & Shasha, 1985).

**HYDROGEN**

As for oxygen, the water molecule is the dominant reservoir of hydrogen. The large relative difference in mass between H and deuterium is the cause of the large isotopic variations in nature. The main fractionation mechanism is that of distillation-condensation which, as for oxygen isotopes, causes considerable isotopic lightening in the more extreme fractionation products. Meteoric waters show linear correlation with SMOW in mid-latitude areas when the liquid is 15~25% of its original mass and, second, by the possibility of addition of freshwater during evaporation (Lloyd, 1966).

Pore waters of buried carbonate sequences may undergo $^{8}$D enrichment in response to recrystallization of sedimentary carbonates at significantly greater temperatures than those of sedimentation. This process awaits detailed modelling. Terrestrial sediments enrichment of $^{18}$O can occur due to clay membrane filtration (see next section), although this will be opposed by any dissolution of high-temperature silicate minerals.

**OXYGEN**

Exchange of oxygen between water and dissolved inorganic species is rapid, apart from oxygen in the sulphate radical (Chiba & Sakai, 1985). Hence, since water molecules are by far the most abundant species in aqueous solutions, the $^{8}$O composition of the water will determine the oxygen isotope composition of the precipitated minerals. An exception may be some examples of relatively rapid dissolution-reprecipitation reactions in thin film micro-environments (Veizer, 1983). Mineral-water fractionation factors are strongly temperature-dependent (Friedman & O'Neil, 1977) which, although holding promise of palaeocean temperature determinations, in practice leads to ambiguity of interpretation of isotope values since $^{8}$O values of natural waters show great variation. Low temperatures, minerals are enriched in $^{18}$O compared to water by considerable amounts; about 20% for phosphate, 20% for clays, 20% for carbonates and 35% for silica. At 25°C water is enriched in $^{18}$O by about 0.8% compared to co-existing vapour because the greater velocity of the H$_2$O molecule allows it to evaporate more easily. Application of a Rayleigh distillation model predicts the observed progressive lightening in isotopic composition (at higher latitudes) of meteoric waters (Fig. 9.6) because of the selective removal of $^{18}$O in initial condensates and progressive lowering of temperature, although the real system is actually much more complex than this model admits (Anderson & Arthur, 1983).

Evaporation into unsaturated air leads to an additional kinetic fractionation of oxygen isotopes. However, the positive excursions of $^{18}$O of evaporated water bodies are limited: first, by an oppositely-directed isotope exchange effect which causes $^{18}$O values to peak (at around 6%, SMOW in humid coastal areas) when the liquid is 15~25% of its original mass and, second, by the possibility of addition of freshwater during evaporation (Lloyd, 1966).

Pore waters of buried carbonate sequences may undergo $^{8}$O enrichment in response to recrystallization of sedimentary carbonates at significantly greater temperatures than those of sedimentation. This process awaits detailed modelling. Terrestrial sediments enrichment of $^{18}$O can occur due to clay membrane filtration (see next section), although this will be opposed by any dissolution of high-temperature silicate minerals.

**HYDROGEN**

As for oxygen, the water molecule is the dominant reservoir of hydrogen. The large relative difference in mass between H and deuterium is the cause of the large isotopic variations in nature. The main fractionation mechanism is that of distillation-condensation which, as for oxygen isotopes, causes considerable isotopic lightening in the more extreme fractionation products. Meteoric waters show linear correlation with SMOW in mid-latitude areas when the liquid is 15~25% of its original mass and, second, by the possibility of addition of freshwater during evaporation (Lloyd, 1966).

Pore waters of buried carbonate sequences may undergo $^{8}$D enrichment in response to recrystallization of sedimentary carbonates at significantly greater temperatures than those of sedimentation. This process awaits detailed modelling. Terrestrial sediments enrichment of $^{18}$O can occur due to clay membrane filtration (see next section), although this will be opposed by any dissolution of high-temperature silicate minerals.
are two types of investigation: large scale and small scale.

(1) Large-scale investigations in which chemical variations are sought over an area or volume that is extremely large in relation to the sample size, e.g. bulk-rock chemical variations in a major depositional unit. Knowledge of sampling statistics is particularly vital in this case.

(2) Small-scale investigations are those where chemical variations are studied on a scale comparable to that of the samples, e.g. studies of carbonate diagenesis where complete fossils and whole regions of cements are analysed.

The overall aim of a geochemical research programme should, as far as possible, be defined before any samples are collected. This allows the investigator to identify the hypotheses to be tested, to choose appropriate statistical tests and to select the sampling schemes most suited to the tests. Regrettably, perhaps the majority of geological programmes proceed on an ad hoc basis with the investigators becoming aware of predictable problems only at a late stage. The ideal is that the material should be collected bearing in mind all the investigation techniques that may subsequently be applied. For example, a research programme into lateral variations within one sedimentary unit may initially be thought to require only optical microscopy and bulk major element analyses. These results may show a need for trace element analysis followed by mineral separation and perhaps isotopic analysis. Forethought during collection does not always avoid the need for expensive re-collection but also ensures that all techniques of analysis are applied to essentially the same samples.

The sampling scheme and sample collection should always be the responsibility of the field geologist who ought to have the greatest knowledge of the material and its variability. In practice it is rarely possible to follow a rigorous scheme, especially as all the questions to be answered cannot be defined at the start of the programme. However, a clear plan can help to minimize the more gross errors.

Sampling schemes have been mainly developed by statisticians working in the social sciences or biometrics. In these subjects the collection of an adequate statistical sample from the target population is relatively simple, unlike the geological sciences where standard schemes can only be applied in the few cases where the objectives are clearly defined, for example in the geochemical exploration for minerals. For the majority of geological applications the problems are too varied for general guidelines. Krumbein & Graybill (1965), Koch & Link (1970) and Garrett (1985) discussed the problems and give a number of specific examples, but it is frequently necessary for a researcher to return to first principles using a text such as Cochran (1977). Because the topic is so important a relatively simple example is given to illustrate the questions that must be answered before geological samples are collected. The problem is presented as a simplified version of that attempted by Hickman & Weight (1983). The authors wished to establish criteria to distinguish quartzite units found in Upper Proterozoic metasediments in the Appin area of the West Highlands of Scotland, and to use the criteria to identify the units in other areas.

Considering only two units, the TARGET population is here made up of two populations, the two units, and is the total population. The SAMPLED population is that which we succeed in sampling and is made up of a number of large (~ 1 kg) hand specimens, of which the TARGET population contains an essentially infinite number. The first task is to define the the TARGET population from a number of possible alternatives, for example: (1) The whole of the two units as deposited. (2) The whole of the two units remaining after erosion. (3) The units not covered by younger rocks. (4) The units currently exposed.
to the scale of variation. Points along the traverses are also stratified (Fig. 9.7c).

Further refinement can be added by using a nested hierarchical system where the main cells are subdivided and both sub-cells and the position of traverse points within sub-cells occupied randomly (Fig. 9.7d). Frequently a balanced sampling scheme is adopted where sites are sampled in duplicate, often with each sample then being analysed in duplicate. This leads to an excessive load both in collecting and in analysis. An unbalanced nested hierarchical design (Fig. 9.7e) is more efficient and can result, in favourable circumstances, in a saving of up to 50% in samples analysed. For a large-scale study this method is only viable when a computer program is available to plan the design (Garrett & Gross, 1980).

Having decided on the collection plan it only remains to identify the size of geological sample required. This must obviously be large enough to provide material for all envisaged procedures, plus a safety margin, after contaminated and altered areas have been removed. The appropriate mass which is required to provide a given statistical error in sampling mineral grains or fragments can be calculated by the methods covered in detail in Section 9.5.2. A reasonable approximation is given by Edelman (1962) who showed that for a rock with an even grain size of 1.2 mm, a grab sample of 1 kg is needed to represent adequately the rock for chemical analysis. If the grain size is doubled the required sample weight is increased by eight.

Such large samples may be impossible to collect logistical, and for consolidated sediments, clearly require a sledge hammer to remove from the outcrop. If a decision is taken to reduce the sample mass the level of error introduced should be quantified and allowed for in subsequent data analysis.

9.5 PREPARATION FOR CHEMICAL ANALYSIS

From the time a geological sample is chosen for collection considerable care must be taken to minimize contamination. This can be present locally from industrial activity, agricultural chemicals, as part of natural processes, for example from salt water spray, from the tools used to remove the sample or from the materials used for storage.

The containers used to transfer and store the material may add or remove elements, especially when wet unconsolidated sediment is kept for a long period. The cheaper varieties of highly coloured domestic plastic goods are especially prone to add high concentrations of exotic elements. Polythene or polypropylene jars are preferable for field use, and ideally should be soaked overnight in 50% nitric or hydrochloric acid and washed in distilled water to remove contaminants, particularly zinc.

Rock specimens are frequently labelled in the field using paint or marker pens which again may lead to contamination. Where large numbers of samples are collected, according to the type of statistical scheme discussed above, laboratory numbers are often randomly allocated (see Section 9.7.1) and here the containers will have been labelled already with the grid co-ordinates and laboratory number of the sample before going into the field. The policy of using pre-numbered bags or jars can also reduce confusion during less extensive sample collection.

Table 9.2 lists the more common contaminants of containers.

Unconsolidated sediments will generally require drying. In geochemical exploration surveys this is often done in the field by sun drying in high wet-strength paper bags. Most samples, however, will first be returned to the laboratory and must be dried at temperatures no higher than 65°C otherwise clays will bake hard and volatile components, for example mercury or carbon compounds, may be lost. Once dry the sample should be disaggregated by gentle pounding in an agate pestle and mortar.

9.5.1 Crushing

In any subsequent processing of sediment or rock samples, contamination is inevitable although it may be possible to reduce the effect to insignificant levels. The method(s) chosen should be dictated by the type of chemical analysis and elements required, and by any further investigations which may follow.

ROCK SAMPLES

Different approaches are required depending on analytical strategy. Where one spatial component of the sample is to be analysed, sawing and thin sectioning should precede analysis. Whilst microbeam techniques make use of polished sections, other methods require a powdered sample which can be shipped or drilled from sawn surfaces and then ground in an

Fig. 9.7. (a) Example of traverse and areal sampling using a regular grid. The spacing is determined by the expected size of the target.
(b) Example of simple random sampling along a traverse and over an area. There may be a clustering of sample sites in parts of the area and gaps left elsewhere. Note that it is possible that one site will be sampled more than once.
(c) Stratified random sampling where a grid of pre-determined size is randomly placed over an area and samples randomly drawn from each grid cell. This reduces the clustering effect of simple random sampling.
(d) Balanced sampling using a nested hierarchical technique with duplicates collected from each site. Sample site and analytical variability can both be studied but it is not necessary for every level to be fully replicated. In this example 72 samples would be analysed in duplicate.
(e) Unbalanced sampling using a nested hierarchical design. This produces a considerable saving in analysis with only 36 samples collected. Only one of the field replicates need be analysed in duplicate.
Containers:
- Polypropylene Ti
- Polythene Ti, Zn, Ba, Cd
- PVC Ti, Zn, Na, Cd
- Brown paper Si
- White paper Ti, Ba
- Rubber Zn

Crushing:
- Steel, iron, hard alloys Fe, Co, Cr, Mn, Ni, V, Cu, Mo, Zr
- Ceramic, alumina Al, Ga, B, Ba, Co, Cu, Fe, Li, Mn, Zn, Zr
- W carbide W, Co, Ti, REE, Hf, Ta, Cu
- Agate Si, Pb

Saws:
- Diamond Cu, Fe, Cr, Mn, Ni
- Abrasive Al, Fe

Sieves:
- Coloured plastic: Various
- Oils: Various, Mo

Agate pestle and mortar. When the sampled components have small areas and the analytical techniques require small sample weights (e.g. isotopes and ICP), use of a fine drill creates a powder which requires little or no further preparation. Contamination will be similar to that described below. Thought must of course be given to a sampling scheme to ensure that the samples are representative of all similar areas in the slice.

In the case where whole samples or large parts of samples need to be prepared a more complex process is required.

This will initially involve crushing the sample to an appropriate grain size after sufficient material has been retained for a hand specimen and for thin sectioning. Weathered material not trimmed in the field should first be removed and the sample then reduced to roughly 50 mm cubes using a hydraulic splitter with hardened steel knife edges. Valuable samples may be sliced with a diamond saw and weathering removed by grinding although care should be taken to prevent metal smearing from the blade. The fragments should then be washed in distilled water (unless there is a danger of leaching some components), preferably with ultrasonic cleaning. To reduce the grain size of the sample further the most popular device is a jaw crusher where fragments are fed between moving steel jaws. Roller crushers employing rotating eccentric ribbed hard steel rollers and cone grinders where the fragments are fed between two ribbed steel cones, one within the other, are also used. All these are efficient in quickly reducing fragment size, the last two down to approximately 60 BS mesh (250 μm), but in the process slivers of metal are removed from grinding surfaces into the sample powder. In addition they are difficult to clean and it is generally necessary to crush and then discard some sample to prevent cross contamination. Some crushers also have sieve trays to screen the sample, providing a further source of contamination. A simpler and cheaper method uses an industrial ‘fly press’ or hydraulic press fitted with hardened steel or tungsten carbide plates. The straight crushing action introduces very little contamination, the sample is visible at all times and the apparatus is simple to clean. It is, however, comparatively time consuming to use. All methods will produce a sample with a maximum size of 5 mm down to 250 μm depending on the machine settings, but with ‘fines’ down to a few microns. Appropriate action is needed to avoid health...
hazards associated with silicate dust and with rock splinters. Good analytical practice also dictates that fine dust should not be lost from the sample as this will introduce bias into the analysis. Contamination of the sample at this stage will be from the elements present in hardened steel, and possibly from lubricating and hydraulic oil.

If the initial sample was relatively coarse grained a mass of 1 kg or more should be crushed, in which case some form of 'blending' is appropriate. This may involve simple repeated 'cone and quartering' followed by re-combination, or the use of more sophisticated mechanical blenders. The blended 'coarse' powder may be required for a number of purposes, for example mineral separation, radiometric dating or ferrous iron determination, all requiring different sample preparation, hence an appropriate number of 'splits' should be taken, again either by 'cone and quartering' or by using a proprietary sample splitter.

Further reduction in grain size to 'fine powder' is almost universally performed in a laboratory disc mill of the Tema® or Shatterbox® type. Providing the initial powder is not too coarse and that the manufacturer's instructions regarding minimum and maximum volumes are followed (maximum ~50 cm³ for a 100 cm² mill) these mills will rapidly reduce samples to a median grain size of around 40 μm. The major exceptions are platy minerals such as micas which are little affected by crushing. If the mill is overloaded some coarse rock fragments will remain no matter how hard the material is crushed.

Agate and tungsten carbide are the most commonly used agates. Agate is relatively fragile and must be run at slow speeds, extending crushing times to 2–5 min for a 60 cm² load, but reducing the welding of softer minerals to the mill. Silica is introduced as a contaminant but equally significant is the introduction of lead from vugs of galena which are generally contained in the agate. Tungsten carbide is the preferred mill for general crushing, but where payment depends on an accurate weight (e.g. zircon) or clasts exceeding 2.4 mm, and 8 kg samples are the adequate amount of sample has been collected, crushed and blended for analysis it is necessary to ensure that the small sub-samples taken for analysis are representative of the whole, particularly when accessory mineral phases contain the majority of one element (e.g. zircon) present.

A moderate extent of weathering is available which discusses the whole range of sample size from mountain to milligram, but it is largely ignored except in commercial areas such as the assaying of bulk ores (where payment depends on an accurate knowledge of total composition), in the assay of very low concentrations of precious metals present in large quantities of 'gangue', and in the supply and evaluation of rock and mineral reference materials.

All these approaches work on the principle that the standard deviation of the amount present can be calculated using a multi-nomial distribution, and the confidence limits assigned. Where there are a large number of particles of each mineral or clast species, a Gaussian distribution is appropriate but when minor or accessory minerals are considered the sample is most likely to be represented by a skewed Poisson distribution. An extreme example taken from Thompson (1983) is illustrated in Fig. 9.8.

The method below is taken from Moore (1979) who used the Poisson distribution to develop equations to calculate the standard deviation in the mineral species. The simplified approach considers a particular material containing p ppm of uniformly sized grains of an accessory mineral of weight x g. If a random sample of weight W g is taken it will contain an average number of accessory mineral grains Wp/x. As the particles are discrete they may be expected to follow a Poisson distribution with mean Wp/x. The sample may be considered as a large number of sub-samples for which there is a small probability of including an accessory mineral particle. The coefficient of variation (CV) of this mineral content is:

$$CV = 100\sqrt{\bar{w}/Wp \%}$$

for particles of similar shape x = 4πD² where D is the particle diameter (μm), p is the particle density (g cm⁻³).

### Table 9.3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>W carbide</th>
<th>Agate</th>
<th>Steel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CaO</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fe₂O₃</td>
<td>0.259–0.284</td>
<td>0.267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MnO</td>
<td>0.002–0.004</td>
<td>0.003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CaO</td>
<td>0.156–0.209</td>
<td>0.193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K₂O</td>
<td>0.107–0.137</td>
<td>0.125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ni</td>
<td>1–2</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cr</td>
<td>14–23</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zr</td>
<td>68–107</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sr</td>
<td>12–13</td>
<td>12.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pb</td>
<td>2–4</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>751–1855</td>
<td>1430</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 9.5.2 The statistics of sampling

Under ideal circumstances the sample presented for chemical analysis would be totally representative of the target but in the majority of cases this is an unattainable ideal because of the essential inhomogeneity of geological materials. The magnitude of the error can, however, be quantified using very simple statistical methods and either reduced to an acceptable level or allowed for when the chemical data are interpreted.

When a bulk sample is to be analysed a sufficiently large amount should be collected in the field to allow for variations in mineral or clast composition. The 'rule of thumb' (due to Edelman, 1962, and referred to previously) shows that the majority of samples collected by geologist are too small to provide a 1% sampling error as many rocks have minerals or clasts exceeding 2.4 mm, and 6 kg samples are the exception rather than the rule! Even when an adequate amount of sample has been collected, crushed and blended for analysis it is necessary to ensure that the small sub-samples taken for analysis are representative of the whole, particularly when accessory mineral phases contain the majority of one element (e.g. zircon) present.

A moderate extent of weathering is available which discusses the whole range of sample size from mountain to milligram, but it is largely ignored except in commercial areas such as the assaying of bulk ores (where payment depends on an accurate knowledge of total composition), in the assay of very low concentrations of precious metals present in large quantities of 'gangue', and in the supply and evaluation of rock and mineral reference materials.

A general treatment is given by Wilson (1964) who considered the real cases where elements are distributed in major and minor proportions between several minerals of differing density and size range. All these approaches work on the principle that the standard deviation of the amount present can be calculated using a multi-nomial distribution, and the confidence limits assigned. Where there are a large number of particles of each mineral or clast species, a Gaussian distribution is appropriate but when minor or accessory minerals are considered the sample is most likely to be represented by a skewed Poisson distribution. An extreme example taken from Thompson (1983) is illustrated in Fig. 9.8.

The method below is taken from Moore (1979) who used the Poisson distribution to develop equations to calculate the standard deviation in the mineral species. The simplified approach considers a particular material containing p ppm of uniformly sized grains of an accessory mineral of weight x g. If a random sample of weight W g is taken it will contain an average number of accessory mineral grains Wp/x. As the particles are discrete they may be expected to follow a Poisson distribution with mean Wp/x. The sample may be considered as a large number of sub-samples for which there is a small probability of including an accessory mineral particle. The coefficient of variation (CV) of this mineral content is:

$$CV = 100\sqrt{\bar{w}/Wp \%}$$

for particles of similar shape x = 4πD² where D is the particle diameter (μm), p is the particle density (g cm⁻³).
A is a constant = π/(6 x 10^9) for spherical particles, i.e.

CV = \frac{2C_D}{\sqrt{600W_p}}.

Hence the variability of sampling the accessory mineral increases with increasing density and diameter and with decreasing sample size and amount of mineral present. Table 9.4 illustrates this for a range of mineral species. Gold is chosen because of its extreme density but also because it has been the subject of many papers relating to its obvious commercial importance. Nichol (1986) gave an extended account of the problems and showed that for a content of Au at 64 ppm with particles at 62 μm diameter an 800 g sample must be analysed to give a precision of ±50% at a 95% confidence level.

Generally an improvement in sampling precision will be made either by decreasing the grain size, or by increasing the analysed sample weight. In the first case this may not always be practicable, for example where minerals resistant to crushing such as micas, or malleable materials like gold are present.

When the analytical method involves dissolving the sample it is usually possible to increase the mass taken but with some solid-sampling techniques, such as X-ray fluorescence analysis of light elements, the effective mass analysed may be extremely small.

The above treatment can be extended to cover ranges of particle sizes, or the situation where the accessory mineral is present with two size distributions, for example as discrete large grains, and as small grains within another mineral. In the latter case if replicate analyses were made with small sample weights one would obtain low but relatively consistent results but with occasional high values. If the sample weight is increased the replicates may be less consistent but will have a mean close to the 'true' value. Thus with a knowledge of the sample it is possible to predict errors and to avoid mistakes in the interpretation of chemical results.

It is surprising that in spite of the available information sampling errors are often not considered even where highly accurate work is involved. Benedetti et al. (1987), for example, found discrepancies between published values obtained by different laboratories when analysing international rock and mineral reference samples for gold at the ppb level (e.g. 1.6–6.7 ppb for the sample Mica-Fe). For some results under 1 g of material had been used!

The principle of applying confidence limits is extremely valuable and should be attempted wherever possible if only to avoid false conclusions. An interesting example is provided by the correspondence concerning the occurrence of rare detrital zircons from Mt Narryer, Australia, which was claimed, on the basis of ion-probe analysis by Froude et al. (1983), to be older than 4000 Myr. The claim is questioned by Schärer & Allegre (1985) who found, after analysis of 32 grains by mass spectrometry, a younger age. Compston et al. (1985), however, showed that as the original analysis found only 5 'old' grains in 260 there is a strong statistical probability that Schärer & Allegre would not have found 'old' zircons in their small sample.

Simple statistical methods can also be used to consider the errors in sampling inhomogeneous or zoned minerals.

9.5.3 Sample decomposition

Almost all methods of chemical and isotopic analysis require the initial decomposition of the sample, either directly, for example by an electrical arc or spark as in optical emission spectroscopy, or chemically by acid attack or fusion. Only the methods using the excitation of characteristic X-rays (XRF, electron probe) and radiation techniques (such as instrumental neutron activation analysis, INAA) can on a routine basis employ the finely ground sample powder alone.

In general the samples are presented for analysis as solutions (in the special case of major element determination by XRF as a solid solution in the form of a glass disc), either after 'total' decomposition by acid attack and/or fusion or after partial and selective decomposition or extraction potentially involving a wide range of reagents. Total decomposition is extremely difficult to achieve, particularly where minor elements are present in resistant accessory minerals. Geologists are frequently guilty of following general recipes without thinking of the chemical characteristics of the minerals in the sample. Discrepancies between values produced by different methods may result from incomplete decomposition, and the mineralogy of any residue should be checked microscopically or by X-ray diffraction.

Decomposition methods will also be determined by the final method of analysis and such factors as matrix effects, the solid content of flames and spectral interferences — the latter being especially important in multi-element analysis and where the
same solution is used both for chemical and isotopic analysis.

Selective extraction and decomposition are important in the determination of the organic components of a sediment, in the analysis of the readily soluble carbonate fraction of samples and in analyzing the geochemically 'mobile' components of unconsolidated sediments and soils.

There is an extensively literature on available methods for the dissolution of silicates and related materials, hence the methods will only be summarized. For up-to-date reviews see Jeffery & Hutchison (1981) and Potts (1987) and for exploration-related samples see Fletcher (1981).

Two types of decomposition are generally used: acid decomposition and fusion; both methods are greatly assisted by a finely ground sample.

**DECOMPOSITION BY MINERAL ACIDS**

Acid decomposition has been widely used for more than 30 years, both for major and minor element analysis. It is now especially important for trace analysis by atomic absorption and inductively coupled plasma methods where the relatively low salt contents of the plasma is a considerable advantage. A further major advantage is the purity of mineral acids. The maximum levels of each element of interest in all analytical reagents should of course be carefully checked. For trace analysis Analar® acids are the minimum purity, and it may be necessary to use the Aristar® grade or in extreme cases to re-distill the most pure commercially available material. Potts (1987) described the distillation method and lists impurities in nitric, hydrochloric and hydrofluoric acids (Potts, 1987, tables 1.21 and 1.22).

The decomposition vessels are possible sources of contamination in trace level analysis and these should be monitored. Some workers for example have been tempted to use soda glass when digesting carbonates in cold dilute HCl only to find that alkali elements are leached from the glass. Even borosilicate glass may be unsatisfactory and ideally PTFE or, more cheaply, polyethylene or polycarbonate should be used (after rigorous cleaning). Adsorption of some elements on the container walls may be a problem especially in the more extreme decomposition procedures discussed below.

**Hydrochloric acid** Dilute hydrochloric acid, either cold or heated, will dissolve all carbonate minerals (other than the scapolites) and is generally used for the decomposition of carbonate rocks and the separation of any silicate or oxide minerals (see section on selective dissolution). Some sulphides and calc-silicate minerals are also attacked at elevated temperatures.

The chlorides of As, B, Ge, Hg, Sb and Sn are volatile and may be lost from the solution.

**Nitric acid** Concentrated nitric acid will decompose carbonates and most sulphide minerals which are oxidized to sulphates and is widely used in mineral exploration geochemistry. A mixture of HNO₃ and HCl (3:1, aqua regia) is also used as a powerful solvent for the noble metals and oxides as well as sulphides. Carbon compounds may not be fully oxidized and may preclude the use of nitric acid dissolution where organic-rich material is to be analysed by ICP.

**Hydrofluoric acid** This acid, combined with nitric or perchloric acids, is very widely used and is able to decompose the majority of silicates as well as carbonates but, where this is done in open vessels, acid-dew points between 160°C and 180°C for 1 hour will decompose most resistant minerals such as zircon, rutile and tourmaline may not be attacked. Disadvantages are that decomposition must take place in PTFE (below 260°C) or platinum crucibles and the highly hazardous nature of both hydrofluoric acid and perchloric acid.

A typical procedure is to warm a 0.5 g sample for several hours in a covered vessel with 15 ml HF and 4 ml HClO₄, the latter to ensure oxidizing conditions. The solution is evaporated to inipient dryness, removing the Si as the volatile silicon tetrafluoride together with other fluorides which may interfere with some determinations. It may be necessary to repeat this evaporation a number of times with additions of perchloric acid. This acid is a very strong oxidizing agent which, with organic carbon and in particular oils in the sample, may explode violently at the evaporation stage. It is better with such samples to add HNO₃ to the HClO₄ (at least 4:1) allowing a slow oxidation of the organics. The cooled residue is then taken up in HCl (4 ml) and diluted to an appropriate volume with distilled water.

An alternative procedure, which has the advantage of retaining silicon, is to digest the sample with hydrofluoric acid plus nitric acid or aqua regia in a sealed PTFE lined 'bomb' as originally described by Bernas (1968). The attack at temperatures of up to 180°C for 1 hour will decompose most resistant minerals but there is the disadvantage that elements may be absorbed at pressure by the PTFE. Care should be taken to monitor the possible release of such elements in subsequent samples. Excess boric acid is then added to complex the fluoride and it is preferable to re-heat in the 'bomb' for ten minutes at pressure to prevent the formation of insoluble node fluorides. Even here some resistant minerals may remain and the solution should be checked and if necessary the residue fused. This method has the disadvantage of producing a solution high in solids which makes analysis by ICP spectrometry difficult.

It should be noted that the borate complexed solution will still attack glassware.

**SAFETY NOTE**

Hydrofluoric acid produces serious burns requiring hospital treatment with even minor contact. Users must be familiar with all necessary precautions and should have their method of work approved by a Safety Officer.

Perchloric acid is an extremely powerful oxidizing agent which may be allowed to come into contact with organic material. In addition, it forms explosive metal perchlorates. A scheme of work must again be followed and the acid only used in an approved fume hood with wash-down facilities.

**DECOMPOSITION BY FUSION**

Classical graminometric analysis initiated in the nineteenth century and early colorimetric schemes of major element analysis decompose the sample by fusing with sodium carbonate. More recently lithium borates have been widely employed both for solution-based analysis and especially for X-ray fluorescence using fused cast beads. Some specific examples of methods are discussed below.

A major problem of fusion is the relatively high ratio of sample to flux (generally more than 1:3) which produces a high solid content and also potentially introduces contaminants (see section on preparation for XRF). For these reasons decomposition by fusion is only recommended in major element analysis or to attack any residue after acid decomposition.

Fusors are generally extremely reactive and fusion must take place in appropriate resistant vessels, normally platinum, silver or nickel. These are themselves attacked and have a limited life, the life being further reduced by alloys forming between the crucible and metals within the sample. These elements may be taken up into subsequent fusions, hence the use of crucibles should be carefully logged.

**Sodium carbonate** This material in the anhydrous form will decompose all silicate glasses in fusion times of about one hour at 1000°C, although some accessory minerals may require an additional ten minutes at 1200°C. The ratio of sample to flux now recommended is 1:5 in contrast to earlier reliance on larger amounts of flux. Some analysts have further reduced the ratio to 1:1 by sintering at 1200°C. The fusion is normally performed in platinum crucibles, and care must be taken to avoid reducing conditions, which could cause alloying and so destroy the crucible! A small amount of nitrate or carbonate can be added to the flux, or where sulphide or carbon is present the sample should be pre-roasted in air. A small amount of iron from the sample normally alloys with the crucible and this may be released if a low iron sample is subsequently fused.

**Alkali hydroxide** Sodium and potassium hydroxide are widely used for decomposition, often with the addition of peroxide, and appear in a number of colorimetric analysis schemes. The fusion temperatures are less than for sodium carbonate but again an hour is needed to ensure total solution. Fusion is performed in either silver or nickel and care must be taken to ensure that the melt does not 'creep' out of the Crucible.

Prolonged fusion of samples containing fluoride may result in loss of silica.

**Alkali borate** Sodium borate has been used as an efficient flux for aluminium-rich materials and also for slags from the ferrous and non-ferrous industries (West, Hendry & Bailey 1974). However, much more widely used are lithium metaborate (LiB₂O₃) and lithium metaborate-tetraborate mixtures as they allow the determination of sodium. Thompson & Walsh (1983) recommended the metaborate as a flux for major element determination by ICP at a sample to flux ratio of 1:4 which ensures that the solid content does not exceed 2%. The sample and flux are heated, with swirling at 1000°C for 30–45 min in a Pt or Pt/Al crucible and, when cool, the melt taken up in nitric acid. Most silicates
2.4) listed the minerals and the proportion remaining after fusion.

The greatest use of borate fluxes in X-ray fluorescence, details of which are given in the next section. Many of the problems associated with the use of such fluxes are also common to atomic absorption and ICP techniques and it is also possible to dissolve XRF beads after analysis for use in solution methods.

Lithium borate fusions for X-ray fluorescence analysis. The intensity of characteristic X-ray emission lines for the lighter elements (Na-Fe) is not only dependent on the concentration of the element but also on the grain size and mineralogical composition of the sample. It is therefore essential to remove grain effects and the most efficient method is to present all samples to the spectrometer as a solid solution in the form of a glass disc.

The fluxes used must satisfy the following criteria: (a) a wide range of sample compositions must ideally be taken into solution; (b) fusion temperatures must be sufficiently low to produce a fluid melt using gas burners or normal laboratory furnaces (1000–1200°C); (c) the cooled melt must form a glassy bead after devitrification; (d) the glass must be sufficiently resistant to attack by moisture and atmospheric gases; (e) the flux should ideally not contain elements which are to be analysed in the sample.

(a) Bennett & Oliver (1976) considered the efficiency of Li metaborate and Li tetraborate for the decomposition of a wider range of silicate, carbonate and ceramic materials. They showed that the former flux is most effective for silica-rich samples (100% silica—80% alumina) and the latter for materials rich in alkalai and alkaline earth oxides and aluminium oxides (100% alumina—95% silico), and proposed a fluxed composed of a 1 part Li tetraborate and 4 parts Li metaborate (Johnson Matthey Spectrumâ® 100B) to cover the widest possible range of materials. This flux is extremely effective at a ratio of 1 part sample to 5 parts flux and will decompose most silicates with 20 min fusion at temperatures between 1000 and 1200°C. Bennett & Oliver (1976) also considered the fluxes and sample to flux ratios needed to produce stable beads for a wide range of materials. Of particular importance to the analysis of sedimentary rocks is their recommendation of lithium metaborate (sample to flux 1:5) to decompose limestones and dolomites. Their major conclusion is that there is no universal flux and that the chemistry of the sample to be dissolved must be considered when choosing flux and sample dilution. A shortened version of their findings is given in Table 9.5.

Lithium metaborate fusions at 849°C hence a burner or muffle furnace at 1000°C will produce a fluid melt with sufficient thermal agitation to aid solution without the need for continuous swirling. Lithium tetraborate melts at 917°C placing fluid melts beyond the range of normal burners, while the 4:1 eutectic mixture of the two fluxes melts at 832°C combining the advantages of a fluid melt and de composition of a wide range of materials.

For most laboratories fusion is a labour intensive operation using standard burners or muffle furnaces, with limited automation, e.g. a few four sample swiftness system as described by Bennett & Oliver (1976). Expensive automated fusion devices are available based on either gas burners or on RF furnaces which are mainly used in industrial process control where the sample throughput justifies the cost. These may operate either to produce XRF beads or samples for ICP or atomic absorption.

In XRF, where a constant sample to flux ratio must be maintained, temperature control of the fusion is critical, especially at temperatures above 1000°C where a significant proportion of the flux will be lost (0.005% min−1 at 1200°C). The alkali elements are also lost, approximately 0.02% of the K2O present per minute at 1200°C. A further problem when using burners is that at high temperatures platinum is porous to hydrocarbons in the flame which may produce reducing conditions in the melt, which in turn may allow metals to alloy with the crucible.

(c) When fusion is used as a precursor to acid dissolution the only requirement is total dissolution of the sample. In analysis by XRF the bead is presented to the spectrometer with a flat, polished surface. Devitrification and shattering before, and particularly during, analysis is most undesirable. If the bead is well annealed this will generally not occur unless undissolved mineral grains remain in the glass to act as nucleating centres. Some samples may have insufficient glass-forming elements in which case pure silica may be added (and subtracted from the analysis result) or BeO added. This is an especially good method for ‘blank’ beads but requires considerable care as beryllium is a highly toxic element.

(d) Atmospheric moisture rapidly attacks sodium borate glass, changing the composition of the bead surface and producing large errors in the lighter element analyses. Lithium borate glasses are affected more slowly but the deterioration is detectable after a few hours as the melt surface allows attack by other gases, especially the sulphur oxides. This can be a particular problem in industrial atmospheres where beads may sit in automatic sample loaders for many hours. The increase in sulphur content of the bead surface is detectable by XRF after two hours. It follows that beads should be stored in a desiccator and exposed to the atmosphere for as short a time as possible, in particular for reference samples which may be re-analysed a number of times. Changes in the chemical composition of borate glass under the X-ray beam, in particular of Si and Al, have been noted by Le Maître & Haukka (1976) and other authors; hence prolonged and repeated exposure is to be avoided.

(e) At ratios of sample to flux of 1:3 and greater a significant blank can be introduced for many elements. Table 9.6 lists typical maximum levels of impurity specified by a number of manufacturers for the X-ray fluorescence grade of both lithium metaborate and tetraborate fluxes. Higher purity is available with levels about an order of magnitude less, but these grades are extremely expensive. It should be stressed that impurity levels will change from batch to batch, and that frequent checking of blanks is essential. The level of Ca can be taken to illustrate potential errors. If it is at the maximum specified (0.01%), the apparent CaO content of a blank sample fused at a 1:3 ratio will be 0.07%.

### Table 9.5. Recommended sample-to-flux ratios for different sample types and the two common fluxes Li metaborate and Li tetraborate. * indicates minimum amount to give a clear stable bead. From Bennett & Oliver (1976)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parts of flux to 1 part ignited sample</th>
<th>Li metaborate</th>
<th>Li tetraborate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Silica-alumina range</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apatite</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zircon</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limestone</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>5*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dolomite</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>5*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amphibolite</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Si</th>
<th>P</th>
<th>Al</th>
<th>Fe</th>
<th>K</th>
<th>Ca</th>
<th>Mg</th>
<th>Na</th>
<th>Nb</th>
<th>Ti</th>
<th>Cr</th>
<th>Mn</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ppm</td>
<td>0.0010</td>
<td>0.0020</td>
<td>0.0050</td>
<td>0.0010</td>
<td>0.0020</td>
<td>0.0010</td>
<td>0.0020</td>
<td>0.0010</td>
<td>0.0020</td>
<td>0.0020</td>
<td>0.0020</td>
<td>0.0020</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 9.6. Typical maximum levels of impurity (in ppm) in Li metaborate and Li tetraborate fluxes used in X-ray fluorescence**

http://jurassic.ru/
an acetic acid solution buffered at pH 5.5 by excess acetate. For his analyses of very low concentrations of Cd, Zn and Ba in foraminiferal tests, dissolution was required to avoid leaching the non-carbonate fraction. Where detection limits allow, electron microprobe techniques are preferable (e.g. for Fe in impure carbonates). Alternatively by plotting chemical data against percentage of insoluble residue, some estimate can be made of the degree of leaching (Veizer et al., 1977, 1978). Veizer et al. (1978) found a clear relationship between insoluble residue content and the concentration of Cd, Zn and Ba in foraminiferal tests.

For his analyses of very low concentrations of Cd, Zn and Ba in foraminiferal tests, dissolution was required to avoid leaching the non-carbonate fraction. Where detection limits allow, electron microprobe techniques are preferable (e.g. for Fe in impure carbonates). Alternatively by plotting chemical data against percentage of insoluble residue, some estimate can be made of the degree of leaching (Veizer et al., 1977, 1978). Veizer et al. (1978) found a clear relationship between insoluble residue content and the concentration of Cd, Zn and Ba in foraminiferal tests.

9.6 ANALYTICAL TECHNIQUES

9.6.1 Introduction

In this section, the popular techniques for analysing sedimentary rocks are discussed, notably those involving instruments other than the 'classical', mostly 'wet' methods of rock analysis. Analysis by electron microprobe, X-ray fluorescence (XRF), atomic absorption spectrophotometry (AAS), inductively coupled plasma spectrometry (ICP), instrument neutron activation (INAA) and stable isotope mass spectrometry are described, with emphasis on how sedimentary rocks are treated, rather than on the details of the technique or instrument itself. There are numerous textbooks giving full explanations of the various techniques (see Potts, 1987, for one of the most recent), although these are often written from the point of view of the hard-rock geochemist, mostly concerned with silicate rocks. Techniques which are not covered here include flame photometry colorimetric methods, and those of organic geochemistry, notably gas chromatography, mass spectrometry and pyrolysis.

9.6.2 Electron beam microanalysis

Following a period of rapid development in the 1960s and early 1970s, reliable and fairly standardized methods of quantitative analysis on the micron scale have become widely available. The electron microprobe is an instrument specifically designed for such a purpose, but quantitative results are also obtainable from a scanning electron microscope (SEM) or a scanning transmission electron microscope (STEM) fitted with a suitable detection system.

In all cases, a focused beam of electrons in impinged upon a specimen (Fig. 9.9) causing the generation of an X-ray spectrum containing lines, characteristic of each element, whose intensity is related to the concentration of the element in the specimen.

There are several useful references for microscope work including the lucid book by Reed (1975) and the chapter by Long (1977). Goldstein et al.'s (1981) book covered nearly all aspects of SEM microprobe work, and Heinrich (1981) provided a thorough, but rather drier survey of the field. The ion microprobe is not covered here, but could have some important applications to carbonates in the future (Mason, 1987; Veizer et al., 1987).

MICROPROBE ANALYSIS: GENERAL ASPECTS

Samples (usually polished thin sections) and standards are inserted into a specimen chamber which is evacuated prior to analysis. Electron microprobes and some of the new generation of SEMs incorporate an optical microscope to allow the ready location of the areas to be analysed.

The electron beam is generated by heating a filament, usually of tungsten, to a tridox electron gun. The beam is focused by two sets of magnetic lenses. The first (the condenser) determines the beam diameter whilst the second (the objective) sharply focuses the beam. Accelerating voltages are 10–30 kV corresponding to electron energies within the range 10–30 keV. The beam can be kept stationary on a spot or traverse along a line or scan (raster) an area to derive a point analysis, line scan or areal distribution of an element as required.

A proportion of the electrons do not penetrate the sample, but are backscattered. Since this effect increases with average atomic number of the area, irradiated backscattered electrons can be used to produce 'atomic number contrast' images (Chapter 8). Electrons penetrating the specimen show complex trajectories (Fig. 9.10) due to various forms of interaction. They spread out over a diffuse region typically about 1 μm deep (size depending on accelerating voltage and atomic number). Although the incident electron beam can be made much narrower than 1 μm, this spreading effect determines the spatial limit of resolution in the microprobe. The interactions of electrons can be divided into elastic scattering, which involves a change in direction with minimal loss of energy, and inelastic scattering. The latter covers a variety or processes leading to energy loss. For example, excitation of lattice oscillations leads to heat production which is important because of the thermal instability of certain sedimentary minerals. The ejection of low-energy (<50 eV) secondary electrons from the outer parts of electrons is another inelastic scattering process, obviously important in forming specimen images in the SEM. Another process, important in some materials, is the release of long-wavelength photons: cathodoluminescence (Chapter 6). Also there is the deceleration of electrons by charge interaction with atoms, leading to the production of X-ray photons whose
energy varies up to a maximum corresponding to the energy of the incident electrons. A 'background' continuous X-ray spectrum is thus produced in which low energy X-rays (<1 keV) are missing due to absorption by the specimen. On this spectrum are superimposed peaks corresponding to specific electronic transitions in the specimen. These peaks form the characteristic spectrum and arise from decay of electrons from an outer to an inner energy shell following an initial excitation by an incident electron (Fig. 9.11). In the energy range of interest (1–10 keV) elements of higher atomic number are analysed successively by study of K, L, and M lines (Fig. 9.12). Quantitative analysis is normally restricted to elements with atomic number >11 unless special techniques are used. Energy-dispersive systems (see below) have been particularly limited in this respect, but analysis down to Z = 5 (boron) is now available (Statham, 1982) on commercial systems.

**DETECTOR SYSTEMS**

Two alternative methods of analysing the X-ray spectrum are available: wavelength-dispersive systems (WDS) and energy-dispersive systems (EDS).

The original, and most analytically-sensitive arrangement (WDS) is to make use of a Bragg spectrometer in which the X-rays are diffracted by a crystal and hence separated by wavelength (see also Chapter 7). The crystal has a curved surface to improve intensities of X-rays. Bragg's law applies:

\[ 2d \sin \theta = n \lambda \]

where \( d \) = interplanar spacing of the diffracting crystal, \( \theta \) = angle of incidence of the X-rays, \( n \) = a positive integer and \( \lambda \) = wavelength of the X-rays. Rays satisfying this equation are rotated 20 degrees in their angle of propagation. A detector is placed at the 20 angle of interest for analysing the largest first-order reflection available for a given element, or can be scanned through various 20 angles to obtain the whole spectrum. (The latter process is much more efficiently carried out by EDS, however.) X-ray photons of short wavelength can be analysed by a solid-state detector as described below for EDS, but normally in WDS the Bragg spectrometer is coupled to a gas-proportional counter. Here each X-ray photon causes ionization of the gas leading to the production of free electrons which are attracted to a wire and give rise to a pulse of charge. A sealed detector is used for shorter photon wavelengths, but otherwise a continuously-flowing gas is used. For qualitative analysis only the total number of pulses at a given 20 value need be counted. However, in order to eliminate higher-order reflections and pulses produced by inner-shell ionization of the counter gas, the instrument is set up only to count pulses within a certain voltage range (determined empirically in each case) corresponding to photons of a given energy (= given wavelength). A 20 scan in the area of interest reveals the form of the background continuum. Background counts are made on either side of the peak for each analysis. When two spectrometers are fitted, two elements can be determined simultaneously.

The most widely used detection system is that of EDS in which all the X-ray photons are collected in the same place. The detector used is a solid-state instrument containing a single-crystal slice of p-type silicon whose resistivity has been increased by addition of lithium: hence lithium-drifted silicon (Si(Li)). As in the gas-proportional counter, each X-ray photon causes the generation of charged particles which create an electrical pulse which, after amplification, is classified according to its amplitude. A multi-channel analyser is used so that a histogram of pulse intensities is built up which largely corresponds to the distribution of energies of the incoming photons. Counts are accumulated over a period of typically 2 min (Reed & Ware, 1975) corresponding to a 'live-time' (time when the counter is not processing a photon and thus able to accept another photon) of 100 s. Thus the overall chemistry of the analysed area is rapidly appreciated, but the histogram contains spurious peaks and overlapping peaks which complicate analysis.

In practice the energy-dispersive system is normally used for routine analyses because of its low cost and the speed with which data can be obtained. A wavelength-dispersive system is suitable when only a few elements are to be analysed or where trace elements are to be determined since the detection limits are significantly lower.

**STANDARDS**

The intensities of characteristic lines in the specimen's X-ray spectrum are compared with line intensities from material of known composition in order to obtain a quantitative analysis. Ideally the reference materials (standards) would be of very similar composition to the mineral analysed so that electron beam-mineral interactions would be the same, eliminating the need for a correction procedure. This approach is impractical where various minerals are to be analysed. Normally geological microprobe laboratories utilize a set of reference materials (elements, oxides and silicates) which are used in conjunction with a correction procedure for silicate and oxide analysis, and often carbonate and sulphide analysis as well. Examples of suitable materials are...
**SPECIMEN PREPARATION**

The normal practice is to analyse highly-polished thin sections of standard (30 μm) thickness. Successively finer abrasives are used, finishing on 0.25 μm alumina. A final hand polish using a cloth with 0.05–0.1 μm alumina is recommended by Taylor & Radtke (1965). A more rapid method is described by Allen (1984) using only 0.3 μm alumina. Exceptionally, diamond may be required rather than alumina if contamination of soft or porous materials by alumina occurs and AI-analysis is required. The necessity for a good polish arises since an uneven surface increases the statistical uncertainties of X-ray analysis, whilst sharp steps or grooves can lead to widely inaccurate results. The quality of the surface polish can be judged on the microprobe by specimen current imaging.

**OPERATING CONDITIONS**

Routinely, an accelerating voltage within the range 15–20 kV is used for analysis. Higher voltages may be used to increase the peak to background ratio for trace element analysis, whilst voltages of 10 kV may be required for very unstable (glassy) materials. The incident probe current is an important variable and needs to be monitored in some way to check constancy of analytical conditions. Sometimes authors report the specimen current (the current from specimen to earth). However, this current depends on the amount of backscattering and secondary electron generation and so varies with different materials. Energy-dispersive analysis requires a probe current of only 1 nA whereas 10–100 nA is more usual in WDS. Since specimen heating is directly proportional to current (as well as voltage), specimens liable to thermal decomposition should preferably be analysed on an EDS: this includes hydrous minerals such as mica, feldspar, and minerals containing alkali metals (e.g. alkali feldspar). Alternatively, using a WDS, decomposition may be reduced by focussing the beam to 20 μm or more in diameter. Since spatial resolution is important for clay mineral analysis, Veldie (1984) recommended use of a 5 μm spot on an EDS system with its associated low current and low counting times for a complete analysis. Another strategy (Fairchild, 1980b), designed particularly for characterizing minor elements in zoned carbonates, is to allow sample decomposition to occur under a probe current, but to use them as standard since these decompose to a comparable degree. Totals are normalized to allow for differential decomposition (Moberly, 1968). This ensures a high peak to background ratio. Cold coating and use of continuous scans rather than spot analyses were found to improve precision. The optimal coating material would appear to be silver, as its high thermal conductivity minimizes the melting rate at high values of probe current (Smith, 1986).

The rapid procedures of the EDS meet most requirements, but with a detection limit of the order of 1000 ppm (0.1 wt %), it is not appropriate for trace element analysis (e.g. Na or Sr in carbonates). Detection limits using WDS, although variable, are of the order of 100 ppm.

**CORRECTION PROCEDURES**

The simplest case is a WDS where standards are similar in composition to specimens. Following deduction of the background counts, the ratio of X-ray intensities are presumed equal to the ratio of concentrations of specimen and standard. More generally in WD analysis a series of corrections have to be applied (Long, 1977, p. 313). First, a ‘dead-time’ correction is made which allows for photons which were not counted because the proportional counter was processing the previous photon: this is only important at high count rates. Then there are corrections for atomic number, absorption and fluorescence differences between specimen and standard: the ZAF corrections.

The atomic number correction is the resultant of two opposing tendencies: backscattering which increases with increasing atomic number, and electron-stopping power which decreases with increasing atomic number. The absorption correction arises because the X-rays are generated below the surface of the specimen and particular wavelengths are then preferentially absorbed by different atoms. The fluorescence correction allows for the generation of ‘secondary’ X-rays by interaction of higher energy X-ray photons with atoms. These corrections are applied iteratively until satisfactory convergence has been reached.

A more complex method is required for an EDS (Statham, 1981) because of the presence of spurious peaks and common overlapping peaks in the spectrum: these must be removed before carrying out the ZAF corrections. ‘Escape’ peaks (caused by ionization of Si inner shell electrons in the detector, and displaced by the energy of the SiKα transition from the parent peak) and sum peaks (caused by simultaneous arrival of two photons) must clearly be removed. In order to separate peaks from background, either a model for the shape of the background can be generated or the peaks can be removed in stages until none remain. Overlapping peaks provide the major problem in EDS analysis. A major element will generate several peaks, some of which may coincide with the main peak of a minor element. To separate peaks, an accurate idea of their shape,
either from a theoretical model, or a 'library' of standard shapes, is required. Potential problems with peak overlap can be judged from Fig. 9.12. In severe cases (e.g. the analysis of small amounts of Fe in an Mn mineral), quantitative analysis with an EDS may not be possible. It is thus important to be aware of the particular problems of ED correction procedures in order to eliminate spurious results although many modern systems automatically advise on possible overlaps.

As an alternative to the ZAF procedure, many authors correct using empirical 'a-factors' (Bence & Albee, 1968) which summarize the effect of one element on the others present. This process involves less computation than the ZAF method and can obtain near-equivalent results, but is specific to one accelerating voltage and take-off angle (angle between electron beam and specimen surface).

Generally, results for unusual materials should, wherever possible, be checked against reference materials of similar composition in case of deficiencies.

**ANALYSIS USING AN SEM**

In the past there has been very little use of SEMs by sedimentologists for quantitative analysis. The problem is that the pre-eminent design aim has been spatial resolution rather than analytical convenience. Low take-off angles have led to high absorption corrections being necessary and the lack of optical microscope attachments have led to difficulties in specifying the area to be analysed. This situation has now changed with the introduction of combined SEM-microprobes and the increasing use of back-scattered electron imagery to relate chemical and petrographic features (Huggett, 1984a). If specimens are polished as for normal microscope work then the situation is the same as that described in the previous section.

The use of the SEM in qualitative analysis (and hence identification) is widespread in sedimentological studies and is straightforward if the alternatives are known and chemically distinct. Otherwise more care is needed: an excellent summary of guidelines for qualitative analysis is given in Goldstein et al. (1981, chapter 6). Often analysis is undertaken on fracture surfaces of rock chips: here one must be particularly aware of possibility that X-rays generated from adjacent minerals or the sample holder.

**ANALYSIS USING A STEM (SCANNING TRANSMISSION ELECTRON MICROSCOPE)**

This instrument enables analysis of areas as small as 5–10 nm in diameter, since the electron-transparent specimens required are so thin that there is no spreading effect of the electron beam. Also, given a negligible specimen thickness, there are no absorption or fluorescence effects so the correction procedure is simplified. High accelerating voltages, of the order of 100 kV, are used usually in conjunction with a Si(Li) detector (see review article by Goodhew & Chesca, 1980).

Polished thin sections are mounted on a metal grid and thinned by ion-beam milling until holes start to appear (Phakey, Curtis & Oettl, 1972). To be certain that specimen thickness is negligible, areas next to holes are analysed (Ireland, Curtis & White, 1983). The beam size must be above a certain minimum for each mineral to avoid loss of volatiles such as alkali metals. The correction procedure involves a knowledge of the relative efficiencies of X-ray generation of the element in question relative to, for example silicon, determined by analysis of thinned standards (Chaffee & Lorimer, 1975). The use of a STEM is powerful, not only because of the spatial resolution of the analysis, but also because TEM images can be obtained to illustrate textures, and selected-area diffraction patterns may be obtained from grains analysed: hence texture, mineralogy and crystal structure can be determined on sub-micron-sized grains. The STEM can also be used in other kinds of ways: for example in the analysis of fine suspended sediment. STEM analysis of individual particles can allow the interpretation of 'bulk' (100 μm area) analyses in terms of mineralogical percentages (Bryant & Williams, 1983).

**9.6.3 X-ray fluorescence**

XRF analysis is a standard technique in hard-rock petrology and in soft-rock circles it is frequently used for the whole-rock analysis of mudrocks, less often for sandstones and rarely for carbonates and evaporites. The principle behind this technique is that when a sample is bombarded with high energy X-rays, secondary radiation is emitted, which is dependent on the elements present. Measurement of the intensity of the characteristic radiation for a particular element gives a value reflecting its concentration in the sample.

The emission from standards is measured first to produce a calibration curve, against which the unknown samples can be compared. Primary X-rays are produced in an X-ray tube, commonly with a rhodium target, and the secondary radiation emitted is passed through a collimator system. The various wavelengths are then resolved by diffraction off LiF or PET crystals. The radiation passes to a counter, with a proportion being used for light elements (<22) and a scintillation counter for heavy elements. Two types of XRF system are currently available: wavelength dispersive (WD) and energy dispersive (ED). ED systems are a more recent development (early 1970s) than the WD units, and have some advantages in certain applications. For example, ED is cheaper and measures all elements, however, in general the detection limit is not as low as WD, and there are many instances of spectral line overlap.


Sample for XRF analysis mostly consist of powdered rocks made up into pressed pellets (briquettes) or fused discs. For the former, the powder is mixed with a commercially mixed binder, such as Mowiol, and pressed to 20,000 psi (1400 kg cm²) or more to form a briquette. Standard rocks and samples need to be prepared in exactly the same manner to achieve the same packing density. Fused discs involve the fusion of powdered rock with lithium tetraborate or metal oxide and the casting of the melt into a mould. With this technique the sample is homogenized, and synthetic standards can be prepared more readily. Also, discs are durable and can be many times. One disadvantage is that trace constituents are diluted further by the addition of the flux. The preparation of fused discs is detailed in Section 9.5.3. In recent years, pressed pellets have become more popular than the disc although discs are still considered better for major elements.

XRF is ideal for the determination of major and minor elements, such as Si, Al, Mg, Ca, Fe, K, Na, Ti, S and P in siliciclastic rocks and also for trace elements, such as metals Pb, Zn, Cd, Cr and Mn. Luminous spectra, on the other hand, are rarely analysed with XRF since a powdered sample will include the clay fraction, and it is the elements in the carbonate fraction which are mostly being sought. XRF has been very successfully used for the analysis of bromine (and other elements) in halite.

**CHEMICAL ANALYSIS OF SEDIMENTARY ROCKS**

**9.6.4 Atomic absorption analysis**

Atomic absorption spectrophotometry (AAS) has been widely used as a technique for elemental analysis of rocks and minerals, and also waters, since the 1960s. More than 50 useful elements can be detected and the technique has become popular since it is a relatively simple procedure, the instruments are generally sensitive and reliable, and a basic AAS machine is not too expensive. Information on AAS is presented by Angino & Biliungs (1972), Johnson & Maxwell (1981), Potts (1987), and others, and most instruction manuals supplied with AA instruments give much useful background material, as well as guidance. However, it is possible that in the future AAS will become less widespread in its use as ICP (Section 9.6.5) becomes more readily available.

The principle of AAS is the absorption of radiant energy by ground state atoms. When a substance is dispersed as an atomic vapour, it possesses the property of absorbing particular radiations, identical in wavelength to those which the substance can emit, as when it is heated for example. If a parallel beam of radiation of intensity $I_0$ is incident on an atomic vapour, $J$, is the intensity of transmitted radiation and $v$ is the frequency, then

$$I = I_0 e^{-Kv}$$

where $K$ is the absorption coefficient and $v$ is the atomic vapour thickness. The absorption coefficient is also proportional to the concentration of the free atoms in the vapour (Beer's law):

$$K = \frac{neI}{mc}$$

where $f$ is the oscillator strength (i.e. average number of electrons per atom which can be excited by the incident radiation), $N_e$ is the number of atoms per cm$^3$ which are capable of absorbing in the frequency $v$ to $dv$, $c$ is the velocity of light, $m$ is the electronic mass and $e$ the electronic charge. For absorption to take place, the atoms must be in the ground state; not excited. The fraction of total atoms available which exist in the excited state becomes significant only at high temperatures, or for atoms which have low ionization potentials. The spectral lines absorbed by atoms in their ground state are referred to as resonance lines.

AA analysis involves passing the characteristic spectrum of an element through a flame in which atoms are present. If the atoms are of the same element, then there is a reduction in intensity, due
to absorption, of a particular wavelength (Fig. 9.13). The amount of light absorbed depends upon the concentration of the element in the vapour (Beer's law, above). Generally, other metal atoms in the flame do not interfere, since there is no light of suitable wavelength for them to absorb.

The AA instrument requires a light source, a flame, an atomizer and a photomultiplier to measure the transmitted radiation (Fig. 9.14). A monochromator is inserted between the flame and the detection device so that any interfering light, such as generated by emission from the flame itself, is excluded. Hollow-cathode lamps supply the radiation, with the cathode made of the element whose spectrum is required. Multi-element lamps are popular, and save on time. Resonance lines are emitted from the lamps when a current is passed and the cathode is bombarded by ions from the filler gas, usually argon or neon. The characteristic wavelengths of the element are emitted as excited-state atoms return to the ground state. Many lines are produced for one element, and several prominent ones, not absorbed or interfered with by the atoms of the filler gas, are usually available for use in the analysis. The flame (or furnace) is the heart of the AA machine where the sample is atomized and through which the light from the spectral source is passed. The temperature of the flame is important; it must be one at which dissociation of all molecules in the sample occurs, but at which a minimum of ionization takes place.

The gases used in the flame are usually mixtures of two gases from acetylene, air, nitrous oxide, oxygen and hydrogen. Air-acetylene is used for much work, but at higher concentrations of the atoms are obtained and there is a more precise control on temperature. After transmission through the flame, the spectral line of interest is selected at the monochromator and then its intensity measured at the photomultiplier. The reduction in light intensity before and while the sample is in the flame, i.e. the absorbance, is displayed as a meter reading, chart record or digital printout. While measurements are being made the instrument must be stable, i.e. the temperature of the flame must not change, nor the output from the lamp. Rates of atomization of samples and standards must also be similar. Modern instruments are quite complicated in order to overcome these sorts of problems. For example, many instruments have a double-beam system, whereby the light is passed alternately through the flame and round the flame by a system of mirrors, and the ratio of the intensities is measured (Fig. 9.15).

Samples are presented to the AA machine in solution and the instrument is calibrated by running standards, either pure, off-the-shelf solutions with known concentrations of the element, or solutions of rocks of known composition. A range of standard solutions is made up with different concentrations; absorbances are measured and a calibration line is constructed. This should be a straight line, as predicted by Beer's law, but at higher concentrations it may be a curve.

INTERFERENCE

In atomic absorption analysis, interference is not generally a major problem. Spectral interference can arise where two elements have resonance lines at a similar wavelength, resulting in a positive error as the two signals are added together. An alternative line to measure can usually be found. Some metals have a low ionization potential so that a smaller number of atoms remain in the ground state where they can absorb their characteristic radiation. This ionization interference can be overcome by adding certain elements to the solution to suppress the ionization. Chemical interference results from elements combining to form stable compounds which do not break down in the flame to form ground state atoms. Negative errors arise, or even no absorption at all occurs. To overcome this, an excess of a metal is added which can compete with the metal being determined for combination with the interfering element. Alkaline earth metals are prone to interference. Ca\(^{2+}\) for example, shows the effect of interference in the presence of SO\(_2\)\(^{2-}\), PO\(_4\)\(^{3-}\), Al and Si, when complexes like Ca–Al or Ca–Si are formed. The addition of large amounts of strontium (in the form of SrCl\(_2\)) or lanthanum (LaCl\(_3\), HLaO\(_4\)) can overcome this source of error. Manganese can be interfered with by Si, and then Ca\(^{2+}\) is added. With strontium, there is a problem of ionization interference, especially in the presence of Na\(^{+}\) and K\(^{+}\), and so lanthanum or potassium (KCl) is added. The problem of interference is dealt with at length in Angino & Billings (1973), Johnson & Maxwell (1981) and Potts (1987).

SAMPLE PREPARATION

AAS has been widely used in the analysis of limestones and dolomites since the interests here are
mostly in the elements contained within the carbonate lattice. To obtain the solutions, powdered samples (0.2 g is a suitable weight) are dissolved in acids which is sufficiently strong to take up the carbonate, but not so strong that it completely dissolves or leaches the insoluble residue (clays, opaques, etc.). For limestones, 3% (v/v) cold acetic acid (25 ml on 0.2 g) overnight is sufficiently strong, and then solutions can be made up to 50 ml. Brand & Veizer (1980) used 3% (8% v/v) HCl for 15 hours; after this length of time the insoluble residue was extensively leached. With dolomites, stronger acid is required and 10% HCl at 60°C for 4 hours is widely used. With dolomite-calcite mixtures some trial and error may be required since dolomite solubility does depend on its ordering and stoichiometry. Burns & Baker (1987) first leached a mixed sample with acetic acid buffered with ammonium acetate (pH = 5) for 30 minutes to remove the calcite. After filtering and rinsing, the remaining solid was leached in 1 M HCl for 15 minutes to take up the dolomite.

Once solutions of powdered rock have been prepared then aliquots can be removed and diluted as appropriate for the machine. Several dilutions may be necessary to bring the unknown sample within the range for the element in question in the instrument, but with automatic diluters this is neither time consuming nor likely to introduce errors.

The common elements determined for carbonates are Ca, Mg, Sr, Na, Fe and Mn. For some of these it will be necessary to add solutions to prevent interference, as noted earlier. The quantity of rock frequently used in AAS (0.2 g) is not great, but much smaller weights can be used if judicious use of the solution is made. This is particularly useful for carbonates, where grains and different cement generations can be extracted with a dental drill or scalpel from thin sections. If a graphite furnace is available, then sample weights as low as 10 mg can be used.

AAS can also be used for other sedimentary rocks, sandstones, and mudrocks for example, although X-ray fluorescence can be easier. A whole-rock take-up is obviously necessary so that much stronger (and more dangerous) acids are required. A mixture of HF and HClO4 (perchloric), 2 ml of each on 0.2 g powder, heated on a hot plate, will break down the rock. A mixture of HF, H2SO4 and HCl (aqua regia) is also popular. Blanks are also made in the same take-up procedure, as are standard rocks, if these are being used.

**9.6.5 Inductively-coupled plasma spectrometry**

A plasma is a luminous volume of gas with atoms and molecules in an ionized state. In ICP analysis the gas used is usually argon. The plasma is formed by passing the gas through a torch made of quartz glass. A temperature of around 10000 K is produced by a radiofrequency generator connected to copper work coils surrounding the torch. The plasma is contained by the nature of the orifice of the gas injector tube in the torch and the gas flow rate so as to produce a toroidal or doughnut shaped fireball. Nitrogen, or more argon, is used as a coolant gas to stabilize the plasma centrally in the torch and to prevent the outer glass jacket of the torch from fusing or distorting. With the plasma established, the sample, in acid-solution, is passed through a nebulizer to form an aerosol and then mixed with the argon injector gas. In the fireball of the torch the sample is completely atomized at the very high temperatures there.

Now that the sample has been atomized and ionized, there are two completely different techniques for measuring the concentrations of the various elements present: atomic (or optical) emission spectrometry (ICP-AES) or ICP-OES) and mass spectrometry (ICP-MS). The instrumentation for ICP-AES has been available since the late 1970s, whereas ICP-MS is an early 1980s development. ICP-AES is related to AAS, whereas ICP-MS is more related to stable isotope analysis.

**Inductively-coupled plasma atomic emission spectrometry (ICP-AES)**

ICP-AES works on the principle that when atoms and ions are excited then light is emitted, and the wavelengths and intensities of the light reflect the elements present in the sample. The emission spectra from atomization in the plasma are analysed with a high resolution spectrometer within the wavelength range of 170—780 nm. The general arrangement of an ICP-AES machine is shown in Fig. 9.17. One of the major advantages of ICP-AES over AAS is that many elements can be analysed simultaneously; some instruments have a polychromator spectrometer capable of accommodating more than 50 spectral lines. One of the problems with ICP-AES has been spectral interferences from overlaps between emission lines of different elements, so that line selection and the identification and correction of overlap interferences are important considerations. Another attraction of ICP-AES is that for many elements the detection limit is much lower than for AAS, although for many metallic elements the detection limits are about the same and, for Zn, Na and K, AAS is more convenient. Another advantage is that calibrations are linear over 4 or 5 orders of magnitude so that dilutions are generally unnecessary and major, minor and trace elements can be determined in one run, lasting only a few minutes. Only a small amount of solution is also necessary for ICP-AES, 0.5—2.0 ml typically, so that very small quantities of sample, 1—10 mg, can be used. Powdered rocks are dissolved in acid and presented to the machine in a very dilute form. For carbonates, where ICP analysis is increasing in popularity, a scheme of solution preparation is presented later in this ICP section. Standard solutions can be prepared with a similar matrix to the samples (see Potts, 1987, p. 180 for recipes) or they can be bought off the shelf. Sample solutions are frequently spiked with an internal standard to

![Fig. 9.16. Schematic representation of the inductively-coupled plasma instrument.](http://jurassic.ru/page/319/)

![Fig. 9.17. Schematic representation of inductively-coupled plasma atomic emission spectrometer (ICP-AES).](http://jurassic.ru/page/319/)
compensate for variations in instrument sensitivity, matrix effects, electronic drift, etc. Identical concentrations of an element not present in the samples are added to all solutions and then the ratio of each measurement to the intensity of the internal standard will permit determination of any error.

**Inductively-coupled plasma mass spectrometry (ICP-MS)** is perhaps the most exciting development on the analytical front in decades. The technique has all the advantages of ICP-AES: rapid, multi-element trace analysis, but with much lower detection limits (ppb-level), including the determination of individual isotope ratios. In ICP-MS, the inductively-coupled argon plasma is used as a source of ions and their mass spectrum is measured using a quadrupole mass spectrometer. The argon plasma is produced in the same way as in ICP-AES (Fig. 9.16) and the sample in solution is nebulized into the plasma, although the torch is now in a horizontal position. At the very high temperatures of the ICP, the sample is very efficiently atomized and ionized, and there are few interferences. The ion beam emerging from the torch is collimated by cones and skimmers and focussed by a number of plates at particular potentials (see Fig. 9.18). The beam is then transmitted through the quadrupole mass filter where the mass peaks of the ions are measured in an electron channel multiplier ion detector, on the basis of their mass to charge ratio. The pulses are amplified and stored in a multi-channel analyser and quickly processed by a microcomputer.

ICP-MS could well be the routine instrument for geochemical analysis in the years to come, with its detection limits lower than most other techniques, the rapidity of multi-element analyses and relatively simple sample preparation. Much ICP-MS data will be forthcoming in the next few years and it is possible that particular elements will be found to have environmental and diagenetic significance.

Two potentially exciting developments with ICPMS are in the use of lasers on thin sections of rock and in the study of fluid inclusions. The energy of a laser beam can be used to vaporize material so that it is possible to zap a rock slice and have the volatilized material carried into an ICP machine for analysis (Thompson, Goulet & Sieper, 1981). Fluid inclusions can be analysed by heating the crystals containing them until the inclusions break and then having the contents carried in a stream of argon into the ICP instrument for analysis (Thompson et al., 1980).

**Inductively-coupled plasma techniques are treated at length in Thompson & Walsh (1983) and Potts (1987) and a review is given by Thompson (1986).**

### ANALYSIS OF CARBONATES USING ICP-AES

Carbonate workers are likely to want to use ICP-AES in preference to other solution-based techniques whenever it is available: both because of its rapid sample throughput and capability for simultaneous analysis of many elements, and because of the small sample size (1 — 10 mg) required. Micromassed powders can thus be analysed on a multi-channel analyser and quickly processed by a microcomputer.

Although data can be obtained using general-purpose standards designed for silicate rocks, considerable errors are likely to result because of the different acid matrix and major ion compositions of samples and standards. Instead, synthetic standards, closely matching the samples in terms of major-ion composition and acid type and strength should be prepared. Table 9.7 illustrates a possible range of standards. The acid-blank is a solution containing impurity-free acid of the same concentration as in samples and all standards and is used to monitor the baseline for background levels. The series 2C, 1C, 0.5C, 0.1C provides a Ca calibration, the top standard having twice the Ca concentration expected in a pure carbonate sample. Although a linear calibration between concentration and output voltage from the instrument is expected this should be directly tested; deviations from a straight-line relationship are likely at high concentrations (Fig. 9.19a). This series of standards additionally allows the effect of major elements (Ca) interference on the background of a minor element to be quantified (line C on Fig. 9.19b). The CM series are for Ca and Mg calibrations for dolomites, 1CM being the appropriate strength for a stoichiometric dolomite sample. The effects on backgrounds are shown as line CM in Fig. 9.19b; combining data from lines C...
and CM allows the separate effects of Ca and Mg on background to be quantified. Solutions CI to C4 are stand-alone standards designed to calibrate minor elements across their likely range in carbonates; likewise D1 to D5 for dolomites, D5 being included for ankerites. More extensive Fe-rich standards would be required for siderites. Other minor elements such as Ba, Pb, Cu and Zn might well need to be included in other investigations.

Dolomite samples and calcite samples should be run separately to simplify the process of calibration and possible problems of machine drift with time. Dolomite samples should be preceded by the full set of dolomite-matching standards and every tenth sample followed by a mixed dolomite-matching standard (e.g. D4) and an acid-blank to monitor drift in background values or sensitivity (Fig. 9.19c).

A correction procedure could be written into the instrumental output, but the carbonate worker can do it personally with the advantage of a full understanding of the corrections made and potential sources of error. It is not particularly difficult given the availability of computer spreadsheet software on which the calculations can be laid out. Also there are only a few major elements for whose interference effects minor element concentrations have to be corrected.

A spreadsheet is a table or matrix of material typically consisting partly of text, partly of input data and partly of the results of calculations. The instructions for carrying out calculations are 'hidden' in matrix cells. It is much easier to learn how to write a spreadsheet to carry out a series of corrections to results than to write a computer program, and intermediate steps are more easily seen. The examples given here were written using Microsoft Corporation's Multiplant spreadsheet software.

A data spreadsheet is created from the output voltages for the elements of interest for each sample and standard. A second spreadsheet file (e.g. Table 9.8) contains correction factors. Calculations for each element in turn are performed on separate spreadsheets (e.g. Table 9.9) which copy in data and correction factors as required from the other files. Another spreadsheet then copies the results of these calculations, totals them, normalizes them, and calculates molar percentages.

A comparative study of the analysis of HCl and H$_3$PO$_4$ solutes was made on 50 samples of calcite and dolomite. A table of results is given in Fairchild & Spiro (1987).

### Table 9.8. Example of a spreadsheet with factors used to correct data to concentrations.

| Date       | User   | Analysis nos | Srdrift | Cdrift | Fe $^{corr} \text{Mgbd}$ | Mgcorr | Fedrift | Mncorr
|------------|--------|--------------|---------|--------|--------------------------|--------|---------|--------
| 30/10/86   | ifj    | 17–44        | 10      | 70     | 0.0005                   | 17.5   | 108     | 40     |
| 30/10/86   | ifj    | 17–44        | 10      | 70     | 0.0005                   | 17.5   | 108     | 40     |
| 30/10/86   | ifj    | 17–44        | 10      | 70     | 0.0005                   | 17.5   | 108     | 40     |
| 30/10/86   | ifj    | 17–44        | 10      | 70     | 0.0005                   | 17.5   | 108     | 40     |
| 30/10/86   | ifj    | 17–44        | 10      | 70     | 0.0005                   | 17.5   | 108     | 40     |

### Fig. 9.15. Schematic illustrations of plots used to calculate correction factors for ICP-AES analysis of carbonates. CM and C refer to series of standards (Table 9.7).

The HC1 residues were obtained by dissolving a dried and accurately-weighed sample (in the range 5–40 mg) in 8 ml 10% v/v Aristar® grade HC1. Each sample was decanted into a new vial whenever there was a discernable insoluble residue. The insoluble residue was weighed after twice dilution and evaporation on a hotplate at 100°C. The results show detection limits of 3.5 ppm (Sr) to 70 ppm (Fe) calculated by the methods of Thompson & Walsh (1983) or 1–5 ppm calculated using the less rigorous definition that detection limits are three times the standard deviation of the background.
Table 9.9. Example of a spreadsheet used to correct output voltages (in this case for Fe) to concentrations. The first four columns and column 15 are automatically input from the file of correction factors (Table 9.8). The first steps are to compute the background Fe value allowing for the interference of Ca and Mg; the final background (column 8) is then subtracted from the Fe value output to give peak minus background in column 9. The Fe correction (column 10) is then modified for any drift (column 11, see also Table 9.8) to give a final correction (column 12) by which column 9 is multiplied to give the actual weight of carbonate minerals dissolved (column 14: total sample weight minus insoluble residue) to the standard sample weight (column 15) to yield Fe ppm (column 16).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>Sample</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>bca368v</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>7311</td>
<td>23300</td>
<td>305</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Fe062a</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1122</td>
<td>22250</td>
<td>5924</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Fe075a</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4838</td>
<td>31330</td>
<td>5999</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Fe089b</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2685</td>
<td>16214</td>
<td>10333</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Fe090a</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>1287</td>
<td>6768</td>
<td>2556</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Fe240a</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>3917</td>
<td>32020</td>
<td>3172</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>m355e</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>4102</td>
<td>20770</td>
<td>5488</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Fe069a</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>4910</td>
<td>26130</td>
<td>20770</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Fe093b</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>4314</td>
<td>23070</td>
<td>23070</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>m355e</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>22250</td>
<td>23300</td>
<td>23300</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>FeCC-3</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>1090</td>
<td>22250</td>
<td>23300</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Fin corr</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9.6.6 Instrument neutron activation analysis

This technique is mostly used to determine the contents of rare earth elements (La, Ce, Nd, Sm, Eu, Tb, Yb and Lu), and uranium, thorium, hafnium and tantalum (and some other trace elements) in a variety of rock-types. The basis of NAA is that when material, in this case powdered rock, is irradiated by nuclear particles in a reactor, some of the atoms in the sample interact with bombarding particles and are converted into radioactive isotopes. The induced radioactivity is separated, identified and measured relative to known standards. The elements are identified by the characteristic energy (gamma rays) emitted during the radioactive decay. A gamma-ray spectrometer is used as a detector, measuring the energies and intensities of various gamma-rays above background, which emanate from an activated sample. Complicated mathematical processing of the data is required to separate the complex spectrum into components that correspond to individual radioactivities. NAA is mostly used by hard-rock petrologists for rare earth and other elements, which are generally present at the level of tens of ppm. The technique has been used to determine REE in sandstones and mudrocks, and data from Archean and Proterozoic sediments have been used to discuss the origin of continental crust (see Taylor & McLennan, 1985) and the amount of recycling which has taken place. There are few studies of REE in carbonate rocks, but Tlig & M'Rabet (1985) have recently shown that typical REE distribution patterns are preserved during dolomitization, although total amounts are reduced. The decrease correlates with Sr and $\delta^{18}$O and is related to lower salinity (meteoric-mixed) dolomitizing fluids. REE determinations can also be made by ICP.

9.6.7 Stable isotopes

The main variations in technique arise from the mineralogical siting of the isotopic concerned and so the text is divided up accordingly. Covered here are sulphur and oxygen isotopes in sulphates, sulphur isotopes and sulphides, carbon and oxygen isotopes in carbonates and oxygen isotopes in silica. The reader is referred to the following references for analyses of other minerals. For the preparation of organic carbon in its various forms: see Dunbar & Wilson (1983) for coal, Jackson, Fritz & Drumme (1978) and Schoell (1980) for kerogen and extractable organic matter, and Schoell (1980) for methane. The extraction of oxygen from phosphatic shell material for $\delta^{18}$O determinations is covered by Tudge (1960), while Carothers & Kharka (1980) deal with the measurement of $\delta^{13}$C on dissolved $\text{HCO}_3^-$. Finally, the standard reference for $\delta^{18}$O work on waters is the CO$_2$ equilibration method of Epstein & Mayeda (1953).
MASS SPECTROMETRY

In simple terms a mass spectrometer may be thought of as an instrument to measure relative differences in the abundance of certain isotopes of a given element. In all cases the sample is introduced as a gas (e.g. CO₂, SO₂) via an inlet system designed to allow the rapid comparison of the sample with a reference gas prepared at the same time (Fig. 9.21). Once inside the instrument the gas is ionized by electrical bombardment in the 'source region', the ions are accelerated in an electrical field and collimated to emerge as an ion beam. The ions within this beam are then separated according to their mass by passage through a magnetic field, emerging as a series of beams, each with a given mass and a charge. Collectors for each mass, usually arranged in the form of a metal cup or Faraday cage, are placed at the appropriate spot to collect particular ions, which then discharge on to them. The strength of the discharge, proportional to the number of ions of each mass present, is then registered electronically and displayed as a ratio or, normally, transferred automatically for storage in a microcomputer.

SULPHATES AND SULPHIDES

Generally the preparation techniques for measuring sulphur isotope ratios seek to yield pure sulphur dioxide (SO₂), although some authors prefer SF₆ as an end-product. Sulphides are converted to SO₂ by reaction with a suitable oxidizing agent such as CuO or V₂O₅, while sulphates have been traditionally converted first to the sulphide by a variety of chemical means, and then oxidized in a similar manner. Since about 1970, however, a variety of thermal decomposition techniques have been developed which allow the direct reduction of sulphates to SO₂.

PURIFICATION AND REDUCTION PROCEDURES FOR SULPHATES

The treatment of sulphates may be conveniently divided into three steps: (a) purifying the sample sulphate, (b) reduction to sulphide-sulphur and (c) oxidation to SO₂. The last step is essentially the same as that for sulphides and will be outlined under that heading.

(a) Isolation of pure sulphate is usually achieved by dissolution of solid sulphates (in HCl or NaCl solutions for calcium sulphate) and precipitation as the insoluble salt BaSO₄ by addition of BaCl₂ solution (Longinelli & Craig, 1967; Claypool et al., 1980; Sakai et al., 1980; Cortezzi et al., 1981). Where impure sulphates are to be analysed for oxygen isotopes, the additional precaution of passing the solute through an ion-exchanger prior to addition of BaCl₂ is desirable to avoid coprecipitation of metal oxides with the BaSO₄ (Claypool et al., 1980).

(b) The rapid quantitative reduction of sulphide requires powerful reducing agents, a variety of which have been found satisfactory. Usually Ag₂S is designed to be the end-product of the process. Details are given in Thode, Monster & Dunford (1961), Gavelin, Parwel & Ryhage (1979), Sakai & Folinsbee (1979), Sakai et al. (1980) and Kiyosu (1980).

Direct-reduction of sulphide to SO₂ (thus eliminating the sulphide stage altogether) was advocated by Holt & Engelkemeir (1970). They headed BaSO₄ coated in pulverized quartz to 1400°C under vacuum to 1120°C. Although they were uncertain whether powdered silica need not be added since there was sufficient on the walls of the vacuum line.

(c) Oxidation to SO₂ is made possible by mixing their sulphate sample (15 mg) with cuprous oxide (Cu₂O, 200 mg) and pure quartz sand (600 mg, <75 μm) and heating the mixture under vacuum to 1200°C. Although they were unsure of the exact reaction involved, repeated use proved yields of 99 ± 1.3% and gave δ¹⁸S values on a laboratory reference sample, virtually identical to those obtained via the technique of reduction and subsequent oxidation.

ANALYSIS OF SULPHIDE-SULPHUR

The preparation procedure is relatively straightforward for a pure sample, requiring only the oxidation of the sample to yield SO₂. Use of oxygen as the oxidising agent (Thode et al., 1961) required extremely high temperatures (1350°C) to hinder fractionation by SO₂ production, and to avoid formation of Ag₂S from Ag₂S (Robinson & Kusakabe, 1975). Neither problem arises if a solid oxidant is used, as is now normal.

A range of solid materials are utilized including CuO (Ripley & Nicol, 1981), Cu₂O (Robinson & Kusakabe, 1975; Kiyosu, 1980) and V₂O₅ (Makela & Vartiainen, 1978; Gavelin et al., 1960) and at significantly reduced temperatures; generally in the range 600–850°C. Robinson & Kusakabe (1975) carried out their reactions at 800°C producing yields of 99–100% in approximately 10 minutes with concomitant CO₂ being removed via an n-pentane-liquid nitrogen trap.

A pre-concentration step is needed for the analysis of disseminated sulphide in a sample. Ripley & Nicol (1981) dissolved their sample in concentrated acid and used Thode solution (a boiling mixture of HCl, H₂PO₄ and HClO₃, Thode et al., 1961) to convert the sulphur to H₂S, and subsequently Ag₂S. Sasaki et al. (1979) stressed that Kiba reagent (a mixture of tin II and hydrochloric acid) was far more rapid than Thode solution in extracting sulphide from pyrite. Cameron (1983) used Kiba reagent, but found that since this also extracted organic S and S in BaSO₄ a sulphide-specific dissolution stage was needed first (Dinur, Spiro & Aizenbud, 1980).

SO₂ VERSUS SF₆

Despite the chemical stability of SO₂ it does cause some problems (Rees, 1978). Inter-laboratory correlations are made difficult by the tendency of SO₂ to stick in the inlet system, causing memory effects. Also, corrections need to be made for mass interferences in the spectrometer due to the presence of several isotopes of oxygen. The alternative is SF₆ chemically inert, insensitive to moisture, not prone to adsorb on to the vacuum line and needing no corrections for interference effects since ¹⁸F is the only stable isotope. The intensity of the SF₆ beam can be measured readily as it occurs in a mass region free of instrument background (Puchelt, Sables & Hoering, 1971).

Rees et al. (1978) produced SF₆ from Ag₂S by reaction with BrF₅, while Puchelt et al. (1971) preferred BrF₅ because it was less dangerous; although it is still very toxic, fumes in moist air and reacts violently with water and organic matter! Despite these problems, they maintained that elemental sulphur and many metallic sulphides react rapidly and completely with BrF₅ according to the reaction:

\[ 2SF₂ + 10BrF₅ \rightarrow 4SF₆ + 2F₂ + 5Br₂ \]

The reaction products are sufficiently distinct chemically to allow the easy separation and purification of SF₆.

The apparent lack of any widespread acceptance of SF₆ in sulphur isotope work in the face of its obvious advantages may be related to the toxicity of BrF₅ and their high cost. Moreover, sulphates still require reduction to metal sulphide before reaction to SF₆, so that the direct reduction method to SO₂ is still more convenient.

OXYGEN ISOTOPES IN SULPHATES

There are two possible objectives: the analysis of ¹⁸O/¹⁶O in the sulphate or that associated with interstitial water of crystallization.

In the former case, the most widely used preparation technique is the graphite reduction method of Rafter (1967). Earlier work by Rafter (1957) had proved the general feasibility of producing CO₂ by reduction with carbon according to the reaction:

\[ BaSO₄ + 2C \rightarrow BaS + CO₂ \]

but at the temperatures involved (900–1000°C) a CO₂-graphite reduction reaction also occurred which converted some of the CO₂ to CO. He therefore developed a modified technique in which the first appearance of CO caused a pressure change in the vacuum line which induced a high voltage electrical discharge across two elements; converting CO to...
CO₂ by the reaction:

\[ 2\text{CO} \rightarrow \text{CO}_2 + \text{C} \]

According to Sakai (1977) this reaction proceeds to the right if the CO₂ formed is continuously condensed on to a glass wall cooled by liquid air. Later (1967) also showed that the intimate mixing and fine grinding of sample (BaSO₄) and graphite allowed the reaction temperature to be lowered, diminishing the formation of CO₂. Sakai & Krouse (1971) modified this technique slightly by using internally heated reaction cells with cooled quartz walls rather than the externally heated quartz tube of Rafter (1967). This eliminated memory effects caused by oxygen isotope exchange between the hot quartz walls and CO₂. Other examples of the use of graphite reduction include Longnelli & Craig (1967), Claypool (1980) and Cortecci et al. (1981).

The measurement of \(^{18}\text{O}/^{16}\text{O}\) associated with the water of crystallization of sulphates is a relatively simple affair (Sofer, 1978; Halas & Krouse, 1982). The basic technique involves heating the sample in vacuo and collecting any expelled water in a cold trap. The oxygen isotopic composition of this water is then determined using a standard CO₂ equilibration method (Epstein & Mayeda, 1953).

**CARBONATES**

Both \(^{18}\text{O}/^{16}\text{O}\) and \(^{13}\text{C}/^{12}\text{C}\) ratios can be determined in one operation by the evolution of CO₂ from carbonates. McCrea (1950) laid the basis for the technique now used. Measurements of the ratios of CO₂ with mass 44 \(^{13}\text{C}^{18}\text{O}_2\) and 46 \(^{12}\text{C}^{18}\text{O}_2\) allows the two ratios to be determined since \(^{13}\text{C}\) and \(^{18}\text{O}\) are by far the most abundant isotopes. Successful mass spectrometry of CO₂ thus required a quantitative and reproducible extraction procedure, lacking impurities in the mass range 44-46, as well as a lack of opportunity for oxygen isotopic exchange. McCrea (1950) found that thermal decomposition did not give reproducible results, and experimented with various acids. The use of 100% orthophosphoric acid (H₃PO₄) to produce 100% H₃PO₄ is therefore usually prepared, left overnight in a water bath at 25°C and the CO₂ collected and measured the following day. However, because the reaction itself will go to completion in a matter of tens of minutes, modern fully automated systems allow batches of samples to be prepared and measured more or less continuously. In this latter case some laboratories react their carbonates with H₃PO₄ at 50°C to hasten the evolution of CO₂ (Fig. 9.22).

Because of the relatively small quantities of phosphoric acid consumed annually, to our knowledge it is not available commercially in the desired purity. Individual laboratories therefore usually prepare their own according to their needs; adding phosphorous pentoxide (P₂O₅) to produce 100% H₃PO₄.

**ISOTOPIC CORRECTIONS**

No attempt will be made here to provide a thorough account of the various corrections that may be applied to 'raw' isotopic data, since a good number are concerned with machine errors (e.g. inlet valve leakage) or interference effects which are, strictly speaking, outside the scope of this discussion; but see Craig (1957), Deines (1970) and Blattner & Hulston (1978). Since the processing of raw data is usually done by computer, all necessary corrections may be incorporated within the program and applied automatically to yield the adjusted delta value. It is recommended that all correction factors should be quoted when publishing isotopic data together with an approximation of the total analytical error (i.e. the preparation and machine error combined).

One correction factor that needs particular judgement is that in respect of isotopic fractionation during phosphoric acid digestion. Although all the sample may be consumed, only about 66% of the total oxygen finds its way into the CO₂; the remainder reacting with H⁺ ions to form water. This imparts a fractionation factor \(\alpha\) of the form:

\[ \alpha = \frac{\delta^{18}O_{\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4}}{\delta^{18}O_{\text{carbonate}}} \]

which results in the uncorrected \(\delta^{18}O\) value being approximately 10% too heavy. This fractionation mechanism is temperature-dependent, hence it is important always to perform the acid decomposition reaction at the same temperature (e.g. 25°C or 50°C). Sharma & Clayton (1965) provided an account of this particular correction, while Tarutani, Clayton & Mageda (1969) and Rubinson & Clayton (1969) outlined additional corrections for Mg calcites and aragonite. Rosenbaum & Sheppard (1986) provided the best compilation of data on Fe- and Mg-bearing carbonates at varying temperatures. Dolomite poses particular problems since there is no agreement on its fractionation factor with phosphoric acid. Most
REMOVAL OF ORGANIC MATTER

The presence of organic carbon in samples of carbonates leads to the introduction of volatile substances into the mass spectrometer which form a variety of reaction products in the ionization chamber and interfere with the weak mass 45 and 46 ion beams. Although pre-treatments for the removal of organic matter are more relevant to Recent skeletal aragonite, which has a very high organic content, it repays to give some thought to the effect on ancient carbonates. Charell & Sheppard (1984) noted that sulphur-rich organic material is particularly troublesome.

By far the simplest technique for removing organic carbon involves soaking the sample in a solution of sodium hypochlorite (NaClO), chlorine or hydrogen peroxide (H₂O₂) to oxidize the organic material (e.g. Wefer & Berger, 1981; Cummings & McCarty, 1982). A more elaborate procedure was developed by Epstein et al. (1953) and involved 'roasting' the sample in a continuous stream of helium which swept away the decomposition products of the heated organic materials and preserved the sample in an inert atmosphere. Weber et al. (1976), Land, Long & Barnes (1977), Durazzi (1977) and Wei & Dott (1981) are among those that have attempted experimental work to quantify the effectiveness of each of these techniques and any isotopic fractionation effects they may have. The general consensus is that neither the chloroXH₂O₂ treatments nor high temperature roasting are capable of removing all organic carbon and there is considerable evidence that the former will impart some error to the measured isotopic value; although provided all samples are prepared in the same manner any errors will be systematic. Because of the possibility of some organic carbon remaining even after thorough pre-treatment, Weber et al. (1976) devised a rejection procedure based on a careful examination of the reference and sample chart recorder traces that allowed an excessive input from organic matter to be recognized. It should also be noted that roasting is not suited to aragonite samples since some conversion of the unstable phase to calcite is likely under the high temperature conditions.

MICROSMAPPING

In common with chemical analyses discussed elsewhere, the effectiveness of isotope studies on carbonates is often greatly enhanced by being able to resolve differences between individual rock components such as grain and cement types (Hudson, 1977a). One of the most popular methods of microsampling carbonate rocks is to use a dental drill modified to accept very small drill bits which ideally need to be <0.5 mm in diameter. Prezbindowski (1980) outlined some of the requirements of such a sampling procedure and described a miniature vertical milling machine developed for such a role and capable of both vertical and horizontal (furrow) cutting movements.

A precise, but more time-consuming alternative is to use a scalpel or razor blade to cut out particular components of interest from a thin-section. Dickson & Coleman (1980) used multiple 40 μm thin sections cut from a single hand specimen which had been mounted in Lakeside 70 and stained. Samples of >5 mg were cut from each thin section using a scalpel and binocular microscope and they were able to prove that neither the mounting glue nor the stain affected the measured isotopic composition of the carbonate.

SILICATES

Techniques designed for crystalline rocks have been adapted for sedimentary silicates. (016) and D/H ratios are the only important ones; see Douthitt (1982) for silicon isotopes.

OXYGEN IN SILICATES

Oxygen isotope ratio measurements are performed exclusively on CO₂ in preference to O₂ because it lies in a mass region relatively free of background interference. Moreover, CO₂ is less reactive than O₂ and thus less likely to be involved in chemical reactions with substances within the preparation line mass spectrometer assembly which could introduce an isotope fractionation effect. Hence, the method...
of sample preparation is usually a two-step process involving the extraction of $O_2$ from the sample followed by its quantitative conversion to $CO_2$ for measurement on the mass spectrometer.

The initial liberation of $O_2$ from the silicate structure requires oxidation with a suitable reagent, the two most commonly in use being $F_2$ (Taylor & Epstein, 1962) and $BrF_5$ (Clayton & Mayeda, 1963); which have largely superseded the high temperature carbon reduction method of Baertschi & Schwander (1952), which is prone to contamination.

Bromine pentafluoride ($BrF_5$) at room temperature is highly corrosive to glass although it may be handled safely when cooled by liquid nitrogen; while at typical reaction temperatures ($400-600^\circ C$) nickel is the only suitable material for handling the substance. According to Clayton & Mayeda (1963) a five-fold excess of $BrF_5$ over stoichiometric requirements was desirable, sample size ranging from 5 to 30 mg which yielded 100-400 $\mu$mol of $O_2$. On completion of the reaction, $O_2$ was collected via a liquid nitrogen cold-trap (Fig. 9.23) which removed unwanted product gases (e.g. $BrF_3$, $Br_2$, SiF$_4$ and HF). The extraction of $O_2$ using $F_2$ follows similar lines to the $BrF_5$ technique with most published accounts quoting Taylor & Epstein (1962) as the definitive treatment. A minor modification to this method was suggested by Savin & Epstein (1970) who used hot mercury in addition to a KBr trap to remove excess $F_2$ and other contaminants from the oxygen.

Once pure $O_2$ has been isolated from other product gases the next step is to convert the $O_2$ to $CO_2$ quantitatively, and in both the $F_2$ and $BrF_5$ examples cited above this was achieved by passing the gas over an electrically heated graphite rod. The $CO_2$ produced is then measured in the conventional way with standard corrections (Craig, 1957), while Taylor & Epstein (1962) pointed out that $O_2$ introduced with fluorine in their method required a correction of 0.1-0.2%. Pisciotto (1981) provided an account of how to calculate the $\delta^{18}O$ value for opal CT from an opal CT/quartz mixture.

The only substantial modification to either of the above techniques to date involves the method of sample entry into the reaction vessel. While Clayton & Mayeda (1963) opened their reaction vessels in a $P_2O_5$ dry-box to prevent entry of water vapour, Friedman & Gleason (1973) and Labeyrie & Jullet (1982) suggested loading the sample directly under a positive pressure of dry nitrogen. This procedure is less complex and providing the reaction vessel is open for no more than one minute the amount of water vapour that enters is negligible and has no apparent effect on the measured $\delta^{18}O$ ratio.

In recent years there has been some attempt to find a cheaper alternative to $BrF_5$, which has become prohibitively expensive for routine $O_2$ isotope work as supplies have dwindled. Borthwick & Harmon (1982) examined the suitability of a variety of potential oxidation reagents and concluded that $ClF_5$ had the most desirable characteristics, being easily flushed from the preparation line while its ability to freeze completely in liquid nitrogen prevented contamination of evolved $O_2$. They also provided a short description of their analytical procedure to highlight the small differences compared with conventional methods.

Sedimentary rocks often require pre-treatment to remove carbonates, organic carbon and oxides which provide a source of non-silicate oxygen. McMurt, Chong-Ho Wang & Yeh (1983) removed calcium carbonate with an acetic acid solution buffered with sodium acetate to pH 5. Organic matter can be oxidized with 30% hydrogen peroxide ($H_2O_2$) or sodium hypochlorite 'chlorox' ($NaClO_3$) adjusted to pH 9.5 with 1% HCl. Iron and possibly manganese oxides can be removed using the sodium citrate-dithionite solution buffered with sodium bicarbonate developed by Methra & Jackson (1960). In some cases it may also be necessary to analyse specific grain-size fractions. Le Roux, Clayton & Jackson (1980), for example, isolating the 1–10 $\mu$m portion of their samples by a combination of sedimentation and centrifuge techniques (see also Jackson, 1979). They also isolated quartz from the remainder of the sediment using a modified form of the sodium pyrosulphate fusion-hexafluorosilicic acid technique of Syers, Chapman & Jackson (1968) developed by Sridhar, Jackson & Clayton (1975) and Jackson, Savin & Clayton (1976). Pisciotto (1981) used this technique to remove clays and feldspars from siliceous mudrocks.

Also of crucial importance is the removal of interlayer or adsorbed water from clays without affecting H/D or $\delta^{18}O$ ratios of structural H and O. Savin & Epstein (1970) suggested that clays for $\delta^{18}O$ analysis should be kept in a $P_2O_5$ dry-box for at least 24 hours prior to oxidation, while Yeh & Savin (1977) replaced the atmosphere in their dry-box with dry nitrogen.

Fig. 9.23. Top: apparatus for reaction of oxygen compounds with bromine pentafluoride. Bottom: apparatus for collection of oxygen and conversion to carbon dioxide (from Clayton & Mayeda, 1963).
nitrogen two hours after the sample had been introduced. The small amount of water vapour remaining after 24 hours was not expected to affect the measured $6^{18}O$ value by more than a few tenths per mil. Particular care should be taken when preparing smectite clays where the ability to adsorb relatively large amounts of water and may require more thorough drying. For H/D measurements preliminary out-gassing needs to be much more intensive. Savin & Epstein (1970) recommended heating the sample under vacuum at 100–250°C for 24 hours or more, while Yeh (1980) dried his samples at between 250 and 300°C for not less than three hours followed by storage in a nitrogen filled P.O. dry-box. Both methods should be capable of removing virtually all adsorbed and inter-layer water.

D/H RATIO MEASUREMENTS ON SILICATES

The measurement is performed on hydrogen gas which is prepared by a fairly standard technique. The initial step after out-gassing is to extract hydrogen from the silicate structure as molecular water by heating the sample under vacuum at high temperature, anywhere between 900°C (Savin & Epstein, 1970) and 1500–1700°C (Godfrey, 1962). Since some hydrogen is also liberated in the molecular form this is converted to water by reaction with CuO. This water may then be quantitatively converted to H$_2$ by reaction with hot uranium (400–700°C) or hot zinc after which it is collected via a liquid nitrogen cold trap.

If a single technique is used to analyse repeatedly a perfectly homogeneous geological material then a range of results will be obtained for the elemental concentration(s). The variation arises because of the small errors introduced at all stages of the preparation and measurement of the sample, and if sufficient replicates are plotted as a frequency diagram they will generally follow a Gaussian distribution. The results can thus be described by the mean ($\bar{x}$) and the standard deviation ($\sigma$), the latter term being known as the repeatability (reproducibility is often used synonymously but it may also be used for the specific meaning of the variation between laboratories which have analysed that sample by the same method). Relative repeatability is more convenient than standard deviation with the terms relative standard deviation (rsd = $s$/ $\bar{x}$), coefficient of variation (C = $s$/$\bar{x}$% ) and precision ($P = 2s$/ $\bar{x}$% ) being used. Precision is often used loosely instead of repeatability.

Accuracy is the extent to which the mean approaches the 'true' concentration and bias the difference between the mean or median and the 'true' value. For geological materials the true concentration is unknowable and is approximated by a consensus 'usable value' (see Section 9.7.2). The properties of the Normal distribution allow an analyst to predict the proportion of the total number of measurements which lie between the given ranges (for a Gaussian distribution 68.3% of observations lie in the range $\pm s$). This allows criteria for the rejection of results which may be in error, the rejection limit usually being set at 95% confidence (strictly speaking $1.645s$ but usually approximated to $\pm 2s$). It should be stressed that 5% of valid results will be rejected and possibly some erroneous results accepted. The observations in error are usually termed 'fliers' and arise from unusual situations, for example, a series of measurements by XRF could include generator and tube variation (1), sample choucers (2) and geometry reset (3), all contributing small errors to the total where:

$$C_{obs} = \sqrt{C_1^2 + C_2^2 + C_3^2}$$

This type of experiment is especially valuable where an instrument malfunction is suspected as individual functions can be tested and their contribution to the total error isolated.

The use of mini and microcomputers attached to automated analytical instruments allows such information to be readily collected and stored, and statistical evaluation software is usually provided by the manufacturer. Stable samples such as pressed powder pellets for XRF may be re-measured at several years, giving a very comprehensive measure of instrument performance, whereas solutions used, for example, in ICP and AAS have a relatively limited life. The rejection of instrumental hardware and software varies from the ability to measure one or more references at fixed intervals to a program where the samples are selected within a random sequence. Computer control also allows automatic repetition of samples until a required precision of measurement is reached.

The above information is also desirable where less automated equipment is used although it is much more time consuming to produce. It should be stressed that only the instrument repeatability is being tested and that the precision figure represents the best possible case.

(b) The second and more important measurement is the repeatability of sample preparation which should be tested for each analytical method and sample type. Unfortunately this is time consuming and frequently ignored. Ideally it should be established by preparing a relatively large number (10 or more) of replicates from the same homogeneous bulk sample, either from the analysts collection or an 'in house' reference material. The factors concerning sample homogeneity discussed in Section 9.5.2 should be very carefully considered. It is likely that the bulk samples, and especially 'in house' references, will have a smaller grain size than routine samples and consequently will be more readily decomposed during sample preparation. This will tend to give an optimistic view of the repeatability of sample preparation. The value for routine samples can be obtained from duplicates included in the batches. The variation measured will of course be a combination of the total instrumental error and the sample preparation variation. It should be stressed that the physical and chemical characteristics of rocks and minerals can strongly influence the efficiency of sample preparation; hence each major sample type should be tested.

(c) Finally, it is rare for a large collection of samples to be prepared and measured at the same time. Normally they are split into batches and hence may be prepared with different reagents or analysed with different instrumental calibrations. It follows that some check must be made of the overall consistency results during the period of the project. First, the within batch variation should be tested, the precise method depending on the analytical technique used. Instrument drift may be checked and corrected with monitor samples or standard solutions preferably introduced randomly. In addition, 'in house' reference samples should be prepared and analysed, again randomly, and preferably 'blind'. This last requirement is obviously more simple to arrange where analysis is performed by an external laboratory. An average of one reference per ten unknowns inserted at random in each batch is ideal with at least two reference samples with chemical compositions near the top and bottom of the range of the unknowns plus one blank. The choice of such reference samples is especially diffi-
cult where multi-element analytical methods are used as it is unlikely that the range of elemental concentrations will be covered in just two or three samples.

A further test of analytical reproducibility can be provided by analysing a number of unknown samples in duplicate, the duplicates again being spread randomly within the batch. Between batch variation can be computed as the standard deviation of the same reference samples.

In large-scale surveys, where the unknown samples' numbers are randomized to avoid systematic analytical errors being interpreted as geochemical trends, numbers are also allocated to duplicates and to reference samples (Plant et al., 1975; Howarth, 1977).

The schemes described obviously increase effort and cost by adding to the number of samples but this is offset by the improved knowledge of the quality of results and by early indications of systematic bias. An absolute minimum is to analyse 'in house' reference samples whenever reagents or calibrations are changed.

Accuracy is finally judged by comparison with international reference materials which are discussed in Section 9.7.2. Because of their very high value they should not be used as replicates in the above schemes, particularly in analytical methods which destroy the sample. Instead, the 'in house' references should be calibrated against international standards, and the latter on rare occasions treated as unknowns within a batch.

9.7.2 Standardization

All the analytical techniques previously described require calibration, that is comparison of their instrumental response with that of known concentrations of the element(s) of interest. Broadly three methods can be used for calibration:

1. Standardization against known weights of extremely pure elements or compounds. (2) Standard addition or spiking. (3) Comparison with geological reference materials.

The distinction should be clearly made between standards and reference materials. The former are usually simple compounds of known stoichiometry and chemical composition, whereas the latter are natural materials for which consensus concentration values are available. Despite the common practice of referring to them as 'geostandards' or 'international standards' they are not primary standards and strictly their true composition can never be known!

(1) This method is generally used where the sample is presented for analysis as a solution. Potts (1987, table 5.4) listed suitable standard materials for all elements in a particular table. Such compounds must be available in a very pure form (generally 99.999% or better), be stoichiometric and generally be stable in air to allow for accurate weighing. Finally, they must be readily soluble in water or dilute acids, and these solutions should be stable over a reasonable period of time. Particular care is needed in drying the substances before weighing as too high a temperature may cause some to decompose partially while others may retain water or carbon dioxide even at high temperatures (e.g. La2O3 may retain some 20% CO2 below 700°C). Such standard solutions are used for initial calibration but also to monitor drift of calibration lines. In techniques such as ICP multi-element standard solutions are needed and it is necessary to establish that individual elements do not precipitate or polymerize in the presence of others. Potts (1987) identified Nb, Ta, Mo and W as particularly difficult. Standard solutions are available commercially (usually at concentrations of 1000 μg ml−1) and similar precautions should be taken if these are mixed.

Finally it is generally necessary to 'matrix-match' standards to unknowns in terms of major element levels and salt or acid content. This may cause problems if acids or fluxes are not sufficiently pure (Table 9.6) or if the matrix elements are not added as pure compounds. For example, in the analysis of Sr in carbonates the matrix Ca must be added as Spectrapure® or equivalent carbonate as Andar® material can contain in excess of 0.06% Sr. Such considerations are also important where the multi-element standards are used to determine interference effects (Table 9.7).

The same method can also be used to standardize the fused bead technique in XRF analysis. Here oxides are generally used and the possible loss of elements at high fusion temperatures must be considered (Oliver, 1979).

In general the set of standards with concentrations covering the whole range of the calibration should be individually prepared from the 'master' solution to avoid propagation of errors.

(2) Standard addition is used mainly in areas where the matrix of the unknown must be exactly matched with that of the calibration standards, for example in flame photometry. The unknown solution is divided into a minimum of six aliquots, five of which are spiked with increasing amounts of the element to be analysed. A graph is then made of added concentration against instrument response, the negative concentration intercept giving the value of the unspiked sample. A similar method can be employed to calibrate powder samples in XRF and INAA. Here standards can be added for a range of elements, as powdered oxides, as aqueous solutions or as organo-metal solutions. Great care is needed to ensure homogeneity, usually involving further grinding and mixing of the samples. Although good (linear) calibration lines are generally produced they may not provide true concentrations because of differing analytical response between the element in a mineral and the same element in a simple laboratory chemical. This is particularly so for the analysis of lighter elements by XRF.

(3) Geological reference materials are unfortunately increasingly being used for standardization. This practice should be avoided wherever practicable and the reference materials used only as a means of comparing sets of samples analysed in different laboratories, or by different methods which have been calibrated by primary methods. One great danger in using comparative standardization is the propagation of errors in each new reference material whose 'consensus' concentrations may relate to a very few original 'standards' analysed by primary methods.

9.7.3 Geological reference materials

Over the past 25 years a large number of geologically related reference materials have been produced. The most comprehensive list of those available is by Flanagan (1986) who detailed more than 830 samples for use as chemical, isotopic or microprobe references. Unfortunately the greater proportion of these are of igneous materials, and even where natural sedimentary samples are available the quality of information is generally inferior to that for igneous samples.

The most recent compilation of values is due to Govindaraju (1984) in a special issue of Geo-standards Newsletter where 'working values' for a wide range of elements in 170 reference samples are listed. This journal is the major source of information on GRMs with periodic updates of values for existing material plus the announcement of new samples.

Working values are generally obtained by distributing samples for analysis to interested laboratories and the large amounts of data independently returned are statistically treated to remove outliers before arriving, with a greater or lesser degree of subjectivity, at an accepted 'recommended', 'certified', 'best' or 'working' value. If the original results are studied there is usually a considerable spread, even after the removal of outliers, and the user of GRMs is advised to study these before making use of compiled 'recommended' values. It should be obvious that analytical methods whose calibration relies on these consensus values should not be used to provide values for new reference samples, or those values should be treated with caution. There are many examples in the literature where there has been extensive extrapolation of calibrations, and where many analysts use the same method and comparative calibration samples a consistent but biased 'working value' may be used. A good example is the analysis of Zr where most values are obtained by XRF.

Most reference materials are distributed free of charge by their producers, usually national geological surveys or similar organizations. However, they are extremely costly to produce and analyse and so should be used sparingly. Indeed the supplies of a number of early reference samples were exhausted before reliable working values were reached.

The main purpose of a GRM is to allow users (and suppliers) of analytical data to judge its reliability, and hence the results of geochemical analyses should be accompanied by equivalent data on reference materials of similar composition and analysed by the same methods. This particularly allows the efficiency of sample preparation to be tested.

The aim should be to apply a reference only when an analytical technique is essentially proven and for each laboratory to provide its own 'in-house' references for day to day quality control and for method development. This is particularly important for all methods which destroy the original material. Users of GRMs and in particular those provided free of charge should be prepared to provide the issuing organization with reliable data on the samples within a reasonable time.
Geochemical data from sedimentary rocks are reported in several forms, and there are many ways in which the data can be presented to illustrate trends, patterns and variations in distribution. In addition, data are frequently examined statistically to determine means, standard deviations, correlation coefficients and other parameters.

Analyses of major and some minor elements in siliciclastic rocks are usually quoted in percentages as the oxides. This is the convention adopted in hard-rock petrology, and it is useful since it does give an indication of the completeness of the analysis. Many of the less common metals and other elements present in only trace quantities are expressed as the elemental form in ppm or ppb. With carbonates it is usual to give the results in elemental form, as % or ppm, although for limestones the acid-soluble Mg content is often quoted as the mole % MgCO$_3$ present in the calcite lattice. With dolomites, the Ca and Mg values are often recalculated to give the mole % of each carbonate in 100% dolomite, so that the stoichiometry is obvious.

Where limestones in an analysed suite have a variable insoluble residue, then direct comparison of trace element (and major element) values between samples is difficult. To get round this problem, analyses of the acid-soluble fraction of limestones and dolomites are frequently recalculated to give insoluble residue-free values (i.e. 100% soluble carbonate).

Insoluble Residue (IR) are frequently determined for carbonate rocks, as they give a value for the purity of the rock. In addition, one can see if there is any positive correlation between IR and trace elements in the acid-soluble fraction (notably Fe$^{3+}$, Mg$^{2+}$, Al$^{3+}$ and Mn$^{2+}$), which would indicate leaching (Abbott, 1979). After acid digestion, the IR is removed by filtering and then is weighed after ashing the filter paper at, say, 900°C for 2 hours. If organic carbon is present, then this would be oxidized and removed along with the paper on ashing.

The validity of the interpretation of geochemical data depends on the quality of those data, and it is therefore necessary for an author to provide the reader with sufficient information to make a judgement. It follows that such information should also be documented in the laboratory before publication.

A brief description of collection and crushing procedures should be given together with sample pretreatment (for example the drying temperature before analysis). The method of analysis should be described, and if this is modified from a published technique any deviations or improvements should be indicated. Sample weights and the method of calibration used are especially important. The aim should be to allow the reader to repeat the method of analysis exactly. Reference materials quoted should have been analysed by the same method.

Steele (1978) has listed the essential information which an analyst should provide when reporting on values of reference materials; this list is an excellent model for the reporting of all analytical data. Where extensive use is made of unpublished primary data (for example through lack of journal space) the full set and analytical information should be available on request.

The precision and accuracy of analyses are often given in methods sections of papers and here it is normal to quote the reference materials used and a figure for accuracy and instrumental and analytical precision in relative per cent. Where no indication of this uncertainty is given then, in terms of the number of significant figures for an element in an analysis, it is generally held that the last figure is correct to ±2 or 3; that is, a figure of 35.2% means the actual value is probably between 35.5 and 34.9%; with 35.24, it would lie between 35.21 and 35.27.

Geochemical data are frequently displayed as scatter plots of one element against another. With limestones, Na or Sr, Na or Sr or Mn, Mn or Fe, δ$^{13}$C v. δ$^{18}$O and Na or Sr v. δ$^{18}$O are frequently studied (see e.g. Al-Aasm & Veizer, 1982; Tucker, 1986). In some instances two elements are added together and plotted against a third; e.g. Fe + Mn v. Sr, Fe and Mn are normally low in marine carbonate precipitates (Sr is high) and they are picked up during diagenesis (Sr is lost), so that Fe + Mn v. Sr will reflect the degree of diagenetic alteration. Ratios of elements are also used, e.g. 1000 Sr/Ca, which allows for variations in Ca content between samples. Brand & Veizer (1980) used a plot of 1000 Sr/Ca v. Mn to show the amount of alteration of fossils during diagenesis.

In limestones, as most rocks, the trace element contents are log-normally distributed. To clarify chemical trends in carbonates, data are frequently plotted on log scales.

Geochemical data can be treated at length statistically, especially now that data manipulation can be undertaken by computer. Necessary values, such as mean, standard deviation, precision and accuracy are easily calculated. It is common to go further than this and undertake tests of significance, analysis of variance and calculations of correlation and regression. Correlation coefficients are useful and allow one to find meaningful relationships between the different parameters. Significant correlations can help in the interpretation of the data. For example, with dolomites a positive correlation between δ$^{13}$C and δ$^{18}$O or Sr and δ$^{18}$O can support a mixing-zone origin for the dolomitization. As noted earlier, negative correlations of Sr and Mn, or Na and Mn, reflect degrees of diagenetic change. Mn and Fe normally co-vary, as do Na and Sr, and Ca and Mg.

More elaborate statistical techniques can be used and include factor analysis, to identify the reasons for variations in the measured elements and discriminant analysis, to distinguish between different suites of samples. Factor analysis was used by Brand & Veizer (1980) and Al-Aasm & Veizer (1982) to account for the variations of trace elements in various components of Silurian and Mississippian limestones, and in rudist bivalves, Walters et al. (1987) used discriminant analysis to separate Jurassic-Cretaceous shales of marine and non-marine origin. Details of these and other methods of statistical analysis are contained in the many textbooks on this subject.

9.8 EXAMPLES

In this section, a few of the applications of chemical analysis of sedimentary rocks are presented, roughly in the order of the objectives A to E outlined in Section 9.1.

9.8.1 Provenance and weathering

These two topics (objective A and part of objective B) are treated together because of the difficulty in establishing that weathering effects were minimal in provenance determinations. Chemical analysis has much ground to make up on purely mineralogical studies in these areas. For example, the precise interpretation of provenance from heavy mineral studies has been long established, as are interpretations of the tectonic significance of the source and depositional areas deduced from the modal percentages of the main minerals; the climatic significance of the clay mineralogy of detrital sediments is also well known. In many cases, therefore, the direct route to the objective is by purely mineralogical rather than chemical study, but some notable exceptions are given below.

Blatt, Middleton & Murray (1980) reviewed examples where knowledge of mineral chemistry, particularly of heavy minerals, can be used to reconstruct provenance. Garnet is a notable example because of its chemical variability in the source area and chemical stability (Morton, 1985). Among major constituents, feldspar has particular promise. Trevena & Nash (1981) argued that microprobe analysis of de-trital feldspars should be more widely used in provenance determinations, and they spelt out the significance of feldspar chemistry in terms of source rocks. In contrast to whole-rock work, only fresh, unweathered grains are chosen for analysis. Although weathering is not a problem in this approach (providing some fresh grains are present), diagenetic alteration must be carefully evaluated.

If one considers the whole-rock analytical approach, only in glacially-transported sediments can it be realistically supposed that minimal chemical weathering has occurred. Unless inert chemical components are studied, such analyses are likely to reveal more about chemical weathering processes than source rock chemistry. The study of Nesbitt, Markovics & Price (1980) on granodiorite weathering in an 'average' climate illustrates the varying susceptibility of cations to the combination of leaching and adsorption processes operating here. Their results are consistent with adsorption theory and the leachate has very similar element ratios to world-average river water. Applying this approach to the Early Proterozoic Huronian Supergroup, Nesbitt & Young (1982) reasoned that mudrocks would give a good index of possible changes in intensity of chemical weathering with time. Using a chemical alteration index (Fig. 9.24) they were apparently able to demonstrate climatic changes between (i) a regime of active chemical weathering at the top and bottom of the studied section and (ii) the glacial Gowganda Formation in the central part of the section in which chemical weathering effects were small, particularly in the matrix of diamictites. This approach is worthy of further development, which will be helped by theoretical and experimental studies (e.g. Nesbitt & Young, 1984).
The device of using inert chemical components to monitor provenance has been explored by various authors. Strontium has been advocated as an evaluator of the geographic siting and type of terrigenous input by Parra, Puechmaille & Carrkesco (1981). However, their use of whole-rock analyses causes problems since there is abundant Sr sited in biogenic carbonates in their studied sediments. They estimated the Sr content of the non-carbonate fraction as the intercept on plots of Sr versus CaCO₃ content. It would have been more straightforward to have analysed carbonate-free insoluble residues.

Rare-earth elements (REE) and certain other trace elements such as Th are regarded as the most reliable elemental inert components in the sedimentary cycle (Piper, 1974; Bhatia & Taylor, 1981; McLennan, 1982; Pacey, 1984). Relatively little work has been done, however, on the effects of weathering processes on these elements. It will not usually be possible to tackle the problem in the elegant fashion of Tieg, Ledger & Rowe (1980), who used fission-track images to demonstrate that U was lost only from intergranular sites during weathering of granites. Nesbitt (1979) showed in a study of granodiorite weathering that REE elements were leached in acid, upper portions of soils and precipitated or adsorbed, in accordance with theoretical predictions, as pH increased to neutral down the soil profile. He argued that Ti will be the most inert element here. In a similar study, but on a more reactive volcanogenic sandstone, Duddy (1980) came to similar conclusions, but by using microprobe analyses was able to show that vermiculite was a major repository of rare earths, in quantities sufficiently large (up to 10%) to indicate sitting within the lattice rather than by adsorption. Thus little of the REE find their way into solution, and are there in similar proportions to the host rocks anyway (Piper, 1974). Taylor, McLennan & McCulloch (1983), in testing loess as a sampling agent for the composition of the upper crust, found REE patterns (but not other elemental abundances) very constant. This testifies to the inert nature of REE, but also illustrates their impression as source indicators. Basu, Blauchard & Brannon (1982) found that weathering climate was irrelevant to REE patterns (but not absolute abundances), but indicated that some variation with rock type may occur. Nevertheless, REE may be more useful in assessing the terrigenous contribution to a sediment rather than specifying provenance. The study of Tlig & Steinberg (1982) is instructive in illustrating that this will not be possible in sediments with complex mixtures of chemical components. In their sediments, a bland whole-rock REE pattern, similar to that of typical shales, is seen to consist of a mixture of two patterns: one with a negative Ce-anomaly in the coarser, biogenic size fractions (similar to the REE pattern of sea water) and a pattern with a positive Ce-anomaly, associated with authigenic smectite in the finer size fractions (Fig. 9.25).

The possibilities of using geochemical parameters to estimate the size of the terrigenous component in sediments has been exploited to good effect by

---

**Fig. 9.24.** Plot of 'chemical index of alteration' of sedimentary rocks from the Huronian Supergroup compared with Quaternary clays and the Archaean source rocks for the Huronian Supergroup. Note that CaO* refers to silicate Ca, i.e. the data are whole-rock data on a carbonate-free basis. For comparison, CIAs for basalts are 30-45, and for granites 45-55. High CIAs denote greater chemical weathering (after Nesbitt & Young, 1982).

**Fig. 9.25.** Rare earth element patterns and mineralogical variation for different size fractions of a Recent sediment from a site in the Indian Ocean. BS = bulk sample (after Tlig & Steinberg, 1982).
It follows, therefore, that for an element to be of use as an index of salinity it must meet certain criteria: (a) It must be widespread in common sediments and abundant enough to be detected and measured with a reasonable degree of precision. (b) Its concentration should depend as far as possible on salinity and not on any other factors. (c) Equilibrium should exist between its concentration in the sediment and the solution from which the sediment was deposited. (d) Diagenetic, metamorphic and weathering processes should have no effect on the concentration of the element.

These elements which broadly satisfy these requirements include V, Cr, Ga, Ni, Rb, and B; although with the exception of boron most of these are treated with scepticism today. Degens, Williams & Keith (1957) and Potter, Shimp & Witters (1963) are among the few authors who have successfully applied such a bundle of elements to specific palaeoenvironmental problems.

More commonly it is to boron that most geologists have turned in the hope of arriving at credible salinity interpretations. However, even with boron relatively few attempts have been made to apply the technique to real problems directly. Many researchers have concentrated instead on validating the boron-salinity relationship using as guides sediments with good faunal-salinity data. This is in large part due to the wide range of factors that can affect its measured concentration (i.e. it does not strictly conform with (b) above). In this respect boron is a good example of how an apparently simple geochemical relationship becomes complicated when attempting to use it to solve geological problems (Walker, 1975).

The concentration of boron in natural waters is primarily linked to salinity via the ability of certain dissolved salts to promote the dissociation of boric acid (H3BO3). Hence in sea water the presence of Na, K and Mg salts increases the number of boron anion groups (e.g. B(OH)4−) being liberated into solution and thus available for adsorption by clays. Conversely the reduced concentration of these salts in river water inhibits the dissociation process and explains the low values for dissolved boron in such solutions (i.e. 0.013 ppm compared to 4.8 ppm). From this relationship it may be reasoned that marine clays will contain more boron than freshwater clays, and indeed this is what the earliest research found (e.g. Goldschmidt & Peters, 1932; Landergren & Carvajal, 1969; Frederickson & Reynolds, 1960). However, in the intervening years it has become clear that this simple boron-salinity relationship is complicated by a range of other natural phenomena.

Not all clay minerals fix boron at an equal rate, most research showing that the element has a strong affinity for illite (Hingston, 1964; Fleet, 1965). Hence it is the concentration of boron in illite that is usually determined, while since grain size also affects the amount of boron adsorbed it is usual to confine all measurements to a single particle size or range (e.g. <2 μm). This also removes the possibility of introducing boron as tournamaline. To complicate matters, some research has shown that smectitic clays are capable of adsorbing as much or more boron than illite (Tourtelot, Schultz & Huffman, 1961; Lerman, 1966), while successful palaeosalinity interpretations have been made using kaolinite (Couch, 1971).

Poorly crystallized illites are capable of adsorbing more boron than well crystallized varieties (Porrenna, 1967), a phenomenon apparently reflecting the division of each particle into a 'structurally coherent silicate core' with little or no vacant sites, surrounded by an 'incoherent rind' or 'frayed edge' with abundant adsorbing sites (Jackson, 1963; Gaudette, Grim & Metzger, 1966; Fig. 9.26). Hence, as crystallinity improves, the silicate core occupies a larger proportion of the illite particle and less boron can be fixed. The reverse is true for poorly crystallized particles.

Even when apparently pure illite is isolated, compositional variations can affect the uptake of boron. C.T. Walker (1962) used the concentration of K2O in illite to determine the number of muscovite-type layers present, deriving what he termed 'adjusted' boron. This correction was refined by Walker & Price (1963) because 'adjusted' boron was found to be dependent on the potassium content. Their 'equivalent' boron they suggested was capable of resolving small salinity variations.

Spears (1985), while accepting the validity of 'adjusted' boron, rejected 'equivalent' boron because it was based on unique empirical data which could not be expected to be applicable to all sedimentary basins. Spears went further, however, and appeared to reject both corrections; believing that the boron/ K2O ratio was not solely influenced by the chemistry of the depositional solution but was greatly affected by weathering of source rocks, boron being more stable than potassium.

The concentration of organic matter in solution can also affect the fixation process, Bader (1962) showing that clays have the potential to adsorb 350% of their own mass of colloidal organic carbon from solution, hence forming a 'protective skin' (Landergren & Carvaljal, 1969) around each clay particle, thus retarding or even stopping the adsorption of boron.

Purely detrital organic matter has a simple diluting effect, as does CaCO3 and SiO2, such that the fluctuating concentration of these substances through a sedimentary sequence will produce changes in boron unrelated to salinity, unless corrected for.

Sedimentation rate is also important since the second step in the fixation mechanism after initial adsorption is the diffusion of boron into the clay's interior (Couch & Grim, 1968) which is slow at surface temperatures and pressures. Hence alternations of limestone (slowly deposited) and sandstone (rapidly deposited) may also produce spurious boron variations.

This tenaceous bonding of boron to illite via structural incorporation has profound consequences for the use of boron as a salinity tool because it introduces the problem of element re-cycling. It is this problem of 'inherited' boron which has dogged the technique and which tempered much of the early enthusiasm for the method.

Landergren & Carvajal (1969) defined inherited boron in terms of 'relie (detrital) boron which did not reflect the existing set of environmental conditions but nevertheless belonged to the same depositional episode and recycled or redeposited boron which had undergone one or more sedimentary cycles.

Experimental work by Fleet (1965) and Couch & Grim (1968) revealed that illites with an inherited
Recent work by one of us (Quest, 1985) on the Purbeck Beds (Upper Jurassic—Lower Cretaceous) of Dorset appears to confirm that syn-sedimentary leaching of boron is possible. Illite in these beds is thought to have been derived from erosion of the underlying marine Kimmeridge Clay and thus should give the whole sequence a marine signature, while faunal studies (Clements, 1973) record a fluctuating salinity regime from hypersaline to near fresh water. From an examination of approximately 30 beds chosen on the basis of their fauna as belonging to one of four salinity groups (hypersaline, marine, brackish and freshwater), Quest was able to show that boron in illite was a realistic measure of palaeosalinity and that boron recycling was unimportant (Fig. 9.27). Leaching of boron from the marine Kimmeridge source rocks must have occurred prior to deposition. Smith & Briden (1976) suggested a palaeolatitude of about 36°N for the Dorset Purbeck and thus appreciable chemical weathering in the warm humid climate would be expected.

**CHEMICAL ANALYSIS OF SEDIMENTARY ROCKS 345**

**SKELETAL GEOCHEMISTRY**

A good introduction to this topic was provided in the text by Dodd & Stanton (1981) who detailed the chemical properties of fossils as tools in palaeoenvironmental reconstruction, concentrating on skeletal mineralogy, trace chemistry and isotopic techniques. They suggested that the main factors controlling skeletal chemistry (physical-chemical, environmental, physiological and diagenetic) can be regarded as the four corners of a tetrahedron (Fig. 9.28), with the actual trace element or isotopic composition of the shell plotting as a point whose position is determined by the relative importance of each factor. Clearly, such processes are not simple but several are amenable to well-constrained appendixes, this information being provided by Dodd & Stanton, 1981, and other work reviewed in Section 9.8.3). They believed that the study of biogeochemistry can help in the solution of four major types of geological problem: (a) general carbonate geochemistry, (b) carbonate diagenesis, (c) element recycling within the crust and (d) palaeoenvironmental interpretation. Numerous examples of such applications are provided including an examination of oxygen isotope palaeothermometry.

A particularly good example of the combined use of trace element and isotope geochemistry was provided by the same authors (Stanton & Dodd, 1970) in their study of Oligo–Pliocene invertebrates from the Kettleman Hills, central California. The purpose of this work, among other things, was to compare and contrast faunal and geochemical methods for reconstructing palaeoenvironments and, in particular, temperature and salinity. The sediments consisted of sandstones, siltstones and claystones with local conglomerates deposited in a marine embayment which became gradually isolated until lacustrine and fluvial environments were established. Hence relatively large-scale salinity fluctuations could be expected, and this was confirmed by a gradual cooling towards the early Pleistocene. Fossil invertebrates were abundant and well preserved with extant varieties for comparison. Palaeoceanographic estimates were made using the concentration of Sr in the outer calcitic layer of *Mytilus* shells. All analyses were performed on the same species of bivalve to avoid phylogenetic effects. Estimating the Sr/Ca ratio in the depositional waters proved difficult because of the restricted nature of the palaeoenvironment and a variable freshwater input. Extensive diagenetic modification was, however, ruled out because ontogenetic Sr variations could be recognized.

The Sr palaeotemperature data they produced were found to be in broad agreement with faunal interpretations with no systematic variations. Unfortunately the authors failed to include an examination of how the Sr concentrations were converted to palaeotemperatures, this information being provided by Dodd (1966). He found that the concentration of Sr expressed as mol % SrCO₃ in the calcite layer of modern *Mytilus* shells was related to temperature over the range 12—20°C by the equation:

\[
T = 3477S^r - 32.9
\]

When attempting to apply oxygen isotope data to an understanding of palaeosalinity, the authors had to concede that only crude trends in salinity could be deduced because the δ¹⁸O/δ₁⁰O ratio for the Kettleman environment was not known due to the uncertain influence of inflowing fresh water. This also ruled out palaeotemperature work, although they suggested that if the Sr palaeotemperature and the oxygen isotopic composition of the shell were put into the palaeotemperature equation of Epstein et al. (1953), then it could be solved to give the δ¹⁸O/δ₁⁰O ratio of the water in which the shell grew. Diagenetic alteration was once again found to be unimportant due to the lack of any significant lightening of the measured δ¹⁰O values. Oxygen isotope palaeosalinities also corresponded well to those deduced faunally.

The authors concluded that the interpretative value of a combined faunal and geochemical study was very strong because the two methods complemented
each other. Geochemistry allowed the quantification of temperature and salinity while the structure and composition of the fauna provided an estimate of the degree of isolation from the sea. In addition the agreement between geochemistry and palaeo­
tology was thought to be a good indication of a lack of diagenetic alteration although independent petro­
graphic verification of lack of alteration is preferable. In a later paper, Dodd & Stanton (1975) were able to provide palaeosalinity contours for the Kettleman region in two stratigraphic zones. They assumed that during the deposition in the same zone temperature at which calcification occurred was more or less the same such that the $^{18}O/H$ ratio in the water (and hence in the shell) was a function of salinity alone. By analysing known marine and freshwater bivalves they were able to establish end­
members for their salinity spectrum. Thus a shell with a $^{18}O$ intermediate between these points would correspond to a given amount of mixing of marine and fresh waters. Using this technique they were able to identify the mouth of the embayment and the points of inflow of river water.

Most theoretical discussions of oxygen isotope palaeothermometry assume that the skeletal material being analysed is derived from fully mixed open marine conditions. As the above example shows, however, this may not be the case since many inver­
tebrates inhabit marginal near-shore regions with an input of light $^{18}O$ that is difficult to quantify. Mook (1971) overcame this problem in his study of molluscs from four Dutch estuaries. He found that when the isotopic composition of the shell carbonate from these estuaries was plotted on a graph of $\delta^{18}O$ v. $\delta^{13}C$ they each described a straight line (Fig. 9.29). This relationship arose because the isotopic composi­tion of the brackish water in which the organisms calcified was related linearly to the $\delta^{18}O$ and $\delta^{13}C$ content of the mixed marine and fresh waters and their dissolved bicarbonate. The fact that molluscs from each estuary plotted on separate lines was because the freshwater source in each case was isotopically distinct. Since all four estuaries contain­
ed some marine water of common isotopic composi­tion, Mook found that the data for each converged on a point equivalent to the $\delta^{18}O$ and $\delta^{13}C$ content of marine carbonate. Since the $^{18}O/^{16}O$ ratio of sea water is known, a palaeotemperature could be calcu­
culated for the estuaries.

These studies are precise because of the younger age of the studied material. In older rocks, material which has suffered minimal alteration is harder to find. Cathodoluminescence can help to select un­
altered portions of shells (Popp, Anderson & Saud-
berg, 1986); this will be particularly useful when combined with analytical techniques (such as ICP) that use minimal sample. Alternatively, preserved aragonite can yield valuable information, even using the mobile element Na (Brand, 1986). Brand & Morrison (1987) provided a good review of fossil skeletal geochemistry.

9.8.3 Diagenesis

Chemical analysis has played a full part in the revolutionary advances in the understanding of dia­
genesis that have taken place in recent years, yet we are far short of the goal of predictive, rather than deductive, diagenesis. Most space will be devoted here to carbonate rocks because of the special im­
pact of chemical rather than merely mineralogical analysis.

While most carbonate workers have carried out integrated field-petrographic-geochemical studies on individual stratigraphic units, an alternative ap­
proach, spearheaded by Veizer and co-workers in numerous publications, seeks to characterize chemi­
diagenetic processes in a more general way by the empirical geochemical study of more widely­
drawn samples, or by focussing on diagenetic altera­tion of particular depositional components. This alternative approach is reviewed first.

The study of Veizer (1974) on the diagenesis of certain Jurassic belemnites is illustrative and partic­
ularly apposite given the choice of a belemnite as the isotopic (PDB) standard, presumably in the hope that it was both homogeneous and unaltered in composition. Veizer (1974) found that although the Sr ($\delta^{18}O$) and Mg contents of belemnite rostra were fairly constant, Mn ($\delta^{18}O$) and Fe were much more variable. The chemical composition of the phragmacone septa (originally aragonite) was nearly identical to the carbonate in the host rock. Veizer inferred that the rostra must have been partly recrystallized or had had internal pores cemented (or both) and deduced the degree of this diagenetic altera­tion from the approach of the Mn content to the host rock value (Fig. 9.30b). The secondary calcite must have contained much more Fe and Mn than the original rostra, but differed little in Sr and Mg. Those rostra with slightly more negative $\delta^{18}O$ values also have high Mn contents, invalidating previous conclusions of palaeotemperature varia­tions in the Jurassic seas supposedly evidenced by $\delta^{18}O$ values. Some points from this study that have been found to be generally valid are (1) carbonate rocks are chemically heterogeneous with original mineralogy having an important control on chemical diagenetic changes, (2) diagenetic alteration may not be detectable by a single chemical parameter and (3) the direction of diagenetic change of minor elements can be predicted from partition coefficients (e.g. Sr decreases, Mn and Fe increase).

Empirical observations suggest that solid-state diffusion and consequent enhanced exchange of ions with pore fluid is insignificant in carbonate rocks even for oxygen isotopes (Hudson, 1977a; Brand, 1982). Neither does repeated recrystallization by dissolution-reprecipitation occur (Veizer, 1977). A contrary opinion regarding isotope data is some­
times expressed by isotope geochemists working on burial diagenesis (e.g. Longstaffe, 1983) and indeed little empirical evidence is available to check the experimental studies of Anderson (1969) which quantified the increasing amount of oxygen isotope exchange in calcite with increasing temperature. Carbon isotopes and minor elements would be less susceptible to exchange; Fairchild (1980b, 1985) showed that fine chemical zones in dolomite (but not calcite) survived regional metamorphism with tem­
peratures attaining $900^\circ$C, and Tucker (unpublished data) has found oxygen isotope data from massive dolomites in the same geological setting to show a similar range as unmetamorphosed ones of similar age elsewhere.

The evidence for different geochemical pathways for different original carbonate minerals has been summarized by Veizer (1977, 1983). Brand & Veizer (1980, 1981) carried out a particularly sophisticated study of this type in which they recognize three different diagenetic trends on Sr—Mn plots, corre­
ponding to original calcite, aragonite and Mg-calcite, allowing original mineralogy to be determined as long as diagenetic alteration is in the lesser half of the studied samples. Al-Assn & Veizer (1982) and Brand (1981a, b, 1982) confirmed the small degree of recrystallization apparently normal for calcitic bio­
clasts and illustrated the preservation in special circumstances of arguably original chemistry of pre­
served metastable carbonates, although Brand (1983) recognized the importance of later cementation of pores within bioclasts. Veizer (e.g. 1977) and Pingo­
tore (1976, 1979, 1982) have stressed the importance in neomorphism of a ‘thin’ or ‘mesenger’ aqueous film, between dissolving and precipitating crystals, of different chemistry to the bulk pore fluid. Thus,
0 values corresponding to F. C. 3. 5 etc.

Fig. 9.30. (a) Sr and (b) Mn analyses of Jurassic belemnites from SW Germany (from Veizer, 1974). Calcite<sub>sw</sub> and Calcite<sub>fw</sub> indicate compositions in equilibrium with sea water and average fresh water respectively. In (b) the percentage figures indicate calculated degree of recrystallization from an original content of 15 ppm in rostra.

necromorphic or replacive carbonates can retain some memory of the chemistry of their precursor, the more so the more ‘closed’ the system. Veizer et al. (1978) expressed this concept in terms of the percentage of ions in the thin film derived from the dissolving solid phase; this illustrates the important point that the system will be more ‘open’ to some components (particularly oxygen isotopes) than others.

Veizer (1983) reviewed future developments in the approach to chemical diagenesis of carbonates. More physical separation of components, or availability of use of microanalytical techniques, together with use of conventional and luminescence petrography, will clearly help interpretations. When components are physically mixed, factor analysis of data (e.g. Brand & Veizer, 1980, 1981) can be employed, but is clearly a less direct method. There is also the danger of over-interpreting the results: of assuming that every factor represents a single physical phenomenon (such as salinity variations). This need not be so (see Gould, 1980, for a lucid explanation of this). Interpretations of Na data (e.g. Veizer et al., 1977, 1978; Rao, 1981) need to be rethought in the light of the work of Busenberg & Plummer (1985). Finally the explicit assumption that stabilization only occurs in meteoric waters (Veizer 1977, 1983) needs evaluation. Possible stabilization in marine-derived fluids should be considered and modelled.

Chemical characteristics of marine cements in modern and ancient carbonates are not discussed here, but see Milliman (1974), Bathurst (1975) and James & Choquette (1983).

Following earlier controversy about the extent to which raw carbon isotope data can tell us about the prevalence of meteoric water diagenesis (Hudson, 1975; Allan & Matthews, 1977; Bathurst, 1980), Allison & Matthews (1982) have provided useful examples of the characteristics of isotope profiles across ancient exposure surfaces, interpreting their results by analogy with Quaternary sections on Barbados. Among other points made are the observations that the variability in oxygen isotope ratios is much less than that of carbon isotopes when diagenesis is by a single fresh groundwater system, that abrupt decreases in δ<sup>18</sup>O are likely across exposure surfaces, and that covariance of C and O is to be expected when diagenesis in the freshwater-marine water mixing zone occurs. Figure 9.31 (from Allan & Matthews, 1982) illustrates a Mississippian profile which can be interpreted in this way. It ought to be said, however, that since so little of the stratigraphic column has been studied by detailed isotopic profiles, chemical data alone are insufficient to be conclusive.

Elemental characters of meteoric carbonate cements are variable. Vadose cements will be iron-free; also Benson (1974) demonstrated, by microprobe analysis, a zonation with successive Mg and Sr peaks corresponding to the successive stabilization of Mg-calcite and of aragonite in the aquifer. Since meteoric lenses change in response to seasonal and longer-term climatic changes, phreatic cements should be expected to show complex zonation (Steinen, Matthews & Sealy, 1978), as is apparently demonstrated in Mississippian limestones of New Mexico (Meyers, 1978). Complexly zoned cements and replacements have, however, also been argued to originate by burial diagenetic processes (Fairchild, 1980b; Wong & Oldershaw, 1981).

Many studies have demonstrated the chemical differences between depositional components, earlier and later cements, allowing assignment of the later cements to burial diagenesis. Dickson & Coleman (1980) provided a particularly convincing example on Dinantian limestones from the Isle of Man, England where a sequence of zoned calcite cements followed by dolomite and kaolinite cements display increasingly negative δ<sup>18</sup>O values of Cretaceous Chalks systematically lighter in more deeply buried, less porous Chalks.
since the reprecipitated calcite crystallized at elevated temperatures. Chalks which were cemented on the seafloor (hardgrounds) show a weaker, similar trend with higher $\delta^{18}O$ values as their residual porosity is diminished. Kilgaley (1983) proposed that burial recrystallization could account for the apparent climatic cooling trend deduced from isotopic study of Tertiary oozes, but this suggestion has not yet been rigorously assessed. Minor element changes, notably loss of Sr and gain of Mg (Fig. 9.32), accompanying the burial diagenesis of oozes have been well documented by Baker et al. (1982) who studied pore water and sediment chemical data. Particularly significant is their demonstration that, when diffusion is allowed for, there can be a major export of Sr from sediments (particularly when sedimentation rates are slow, see Fig. 9.33: meteoric fluids. Land (1980) has critically reviewed these topics. Bein & Land (1983) stressed that a simplistic interpretation of one geochemical parameter (e.g. Sr in terms of salinity) is certainly to be avoided (see also Sass & Katz, 1982 and Zhao & Fairchild, 1987).

Whereas in pure carbonate sediments the effects of non-carbonate components are insignificant, reactive silicates or organic matter, where present, have a major impact. Even small amounts of alteration of reactive volcanic material can be detected by $\delta^{87}Sr/Sr$ analysis of recrystallized carbonate (Elderfield & Gieskes, 1982). More widely recognized now in carbonate minerals in terrigenous rocks are carbon isotopic signatures indicative of carbon derivation from particular bacterial reactions (e.g. Irwin et al., 1977; Pisciotta & Mahoney, 1981; Marshall, 1981). Another development has been the recognition that carbonates of extremely variable chemical composition are very common (e.g. Curtis, Pearson & Somogyi, 1975; Matsumoto & Iijima, 1981; Tasse & Hesse, 1984). Matsumoto & Iijima’s (1981) study is instructive in correlating the chemistry of authigenic carbonates with pore fluid chemistry as controlled by depositional setting, whilst Tasse & Hesse (1984) have utilized a particularly effective mode of data presentation (Fig. 9.33). Matsumoto & Matsuhashi (1985) not only describe the elemental variation of Neogene authigenic carbonates from the Japan trench, but elegantly place them in burial context by oxygen isotope analysis. Dolomite formation in sulphate-bearing pore waters is just one of the many interesting inferences that can be made from their data.

As for carbonates, the true chemical variability of clay minerals is now becoming apparent, aided particularly by microbeam analysis. Glauciclastic clays are amenable to wet chemical analyses because pellets can be physically separated: Odin & Matter (1981) summarized these data. Although they distinguish two separate families: high-Fe glauconitic minerals and low-Fe illites, Berg-Madsen (1983), on the basis of microprobe results, showed that intermediate-Fe, high-Al glauconites occur and proposed a cool-water origin for them. In contrast, Ireland et al. (1983), in presenting STEM analyses of clays, noted the association (also present in Berg-Madsen’s clays) of high-Al glauconite with pyrite and proposed a diagenetic origin for the clay chemistry. Clearly, development of our understanding of the nature and origin of clay-mineral chemical varia-

---

**Fig. 9.32.** Variations in composition with depth of pelagic carbonates from two DSDP drill sites. Data replotted from Baker et al. (1982). Site 305 has the slower rate of sedimentation.

**Fig. 9.33.** Compositional fields of siderite (S), dolomite (D) and rhodochrosites (R) of concretions from Cretaceous black shales of the western Alps projected on to each face of the CaCO$_3$-FeCO$_3$-MnCO$_3$-MgCO$_3$ tetrahedron. Straight lines are regression lines calculated for the most elongated fields (simplified from Tasse & Hesse, 1984).
tions is most likely to be rapidly advanced by combined microchemical-microstructural studies.

Isotopic studies on silicates have been relatively few because of the complexity of the technique, but have yielded some extremely useful results (reviewed by Longstaffe, 1983). Particularly appealing is the prospect of the possibility of using co-existing minerals to tie down palaeotemperatures, irrespective of isotopic values of the pure fluid (Elinsinger, Savva & Yeh, 1979).

9.8.4 Elemental cycling

The geological cycle involves transfer of sediments between several reservoirs which, on the simplest level, are the atmosphere, continental waters, sea water and sediments and rocks. Models of the kinetics of these processes (e.g. Garrels & McKenzie, 1971; Veizer & Jansen, 1979; Berner, Lasaga & Garrels, 1983) depend on the existence of reliable chemical and mineralogical data from rocks of various ages. Possible secular changes in the composition of these reservoirs are of interest from many points of view.

Analyses of terrigenous material should provide evidence of the composition of the upper crust. Obtaining average estimates of the chemical composition of sedimentary sequences of various ages is, of course, replete with pitfalls. Schwab (1978) made an extensive compilation of 'terrigenous' compositions and correctly excluded the carbonate fraction, but he did not disregard other chemical sediments. Another criticism (McLennan, 1982) is that he placed too much emphasis on glacially transported, chemically unweathered sediments in early Proterozoic sections (Fig. 9.24). When this is allowed for it is clear that the Archaean-Proterozoic boundary marks the most significant change in the sedimentary record. However, McLennan (1982), McLennan, Taylor & Eriksson, 1983; McLennan, 1982).

Considerable attention continues to be given to possible changes in oceanic chemistry with time. Being for most purposes and at most results well-mixed, sea water offers a sensitive indicator of changes in patterns of cycling between other reservoirs and itself. Perhaps the most important putative change was an increase in oxidation state accompanied by increased oxygen accumulation in the atmosphere, largely during the Proterozoic. It is very difficult to provide chemical data from marine sediments to constrain this. For example, it is clear that the Fe and Mn content of dolostones decreased during the Precambrian (whole rock data of Veizer, 1978; for microprobe data and a review of whole rock data for purely finely crystalline dolostones see Fairchild, 1980b), which could be explained by an increasing Eh of surface environments. This cannot be readily proven, however, because of the great variation in chemistry at any one time due to palaeogographic considerations, and potential variability in the timing of formation of the dolomite. Less equivocal evidence comes from chemical analyses of palaeosols (and studies on the survivability of easily oxidized detrital minerals in placers) which constrain atmospheric CO₂/O₂ ratios (Holland, 1984).

The proposition that seawater chemistry can be treated in equilibrium terms (Sillen, 1967) has given way to the view that kinetic factors (fluxes in and out of sea water) predominate, although Holland (1972, 1984) showed that the mineralogy of preserved sediments constrained the possible past excursions in oceanic chemistry within half an order of magnitude limits of abundance of many individual elements, at least in the Phanerozoic. Establishing the major element composition of sea water at different times within these limits is extremely difficult. In some circumstances, minor elements are tractable. For example, Graham et al. (1982) demonstrated small, but significant variations in oceanic Sr/Ca by analyzing well-preserved Tertiary planktonic foraminifera and utilizing their well-known partition coefficient for Sr. Even if aspects of the composition of sea water were known, establishing the nature of the temporally-changing kinetic processes is a more important, yet more remote objective. For example, the model of Berner et al. (1983) of the control of the carbonate-silicate geochemical cycle for the last 100 million years illustrates the complexity of the controls on oceanic pH and abundance of Ca²⁺ and Mg²⁺, and conversely the difficulty in finding geochemical parameters that give information about few (preferably only two) kinetic processes. There are certain parameters that meet this requirement, however: notably Sr/Ca, δ³⁴S, δ¹⁸O/H and δ¹⁸O Sr. For example, Graham et al.'s (1982) results cited above can be interpreted in terms of two processes: seawall spreading rate (affecting Ca re-

moved by hydrothermal action) and aragonite precipitation rate (removing material with high Sr/Ca).

Strontium isotope variation reflects the balance of input of Sr in solution with relatively high δ⁸⁷Sr/⁸⁶Sr (derived from the upper continental crust) and input by interaction with basaltic oceanic crust (with low δ⁸⁷Sr/⁸⁶Sr). The composition of carbonates in equilibration with sea water readily yields information on Sr isotopes in sea water since there is no fractionation during carbonate precipitation. By analysis of the carbonate fraction of carbonate-rich sediments, major data sets have been compiled by Veizer & Compston (1974, 1976), Burke et al. (1982) and Veizer et al. (1983). Samples with low Sr abundance, or which may have been contaminated by abundant δ⁸⁷Sr in a high insoluble residue (Burke et al., 1982), or low Ca/Sr or high Mn indicative of diageneric alteration (Veizer et al., 1983) are rejected. The curve of Burke et al. (1982) (Fig. 9.34) is the best available data set covering the whole of the Phanerozoic for any chemical parameter, because of the precision both of the analyses and of the stratigraphic age of the samples. Realization of the full potential of this approach requires more careful screening of samples, using both the valuable geochemical approach of Veizer et al. (1983), and more integration with petrography.

Carbon and sulphur iso­tope variations in carbonates and sulphate evaporites respectively have been well documented. Despite the cruder age grouping, particularly of the carbon isotopic datato, antipathetic variation is clearly shown (Veizer, Holser & Wilgus, 1980) illustrating a coupling of C and S cycles by an overall reaction such as: 15CH₃O + 8CaSO₄ + 2FeC₇O₃ + 7MgSiO₃ = 4FeS₈ + 8CaCO₃ + 7MgCO₃ + 7H₂O. + 15H₂O.

The geological consequences are very interesting (Berner & Raiswell, 1983) as are the short-term violations of this relationship (Anderson & Arthur, 1983). Because of the heterogeneity of carbon isotope values in carbonate rocks at any one time, there is much scope for refinement of the sampling procedure, particularly for examining shorter-term variations. Magaritz et al. (1983) have demonstrated an extraordinarily rapid rise in δ¹⁸O of 8.5% in only 4000 years in the Upper Permian of Texas that correlates with other rapid rises world-wide. Likewise, Claypool et al. (1980) showed that some δ¹⁸O rises are very rapid and postulate that sudden de-

http://jurassic.ru/
stratification of an ocean basin is the only mechanism that can explain them. Secular variation in the oxygen isotope composition of carbonates, cherts and phosphorites takes the form of a progressive decrease in average δ18O in older rocks (Veizer & Hoefs, 1976; Knauf & Lowe, 1978; Anderson & Arthur, 1983). The cause of this variation, whether increased total recrystallization with age, temperature change, or secular variation in seawater isotopic composition, is hotly disputed, although the strong buffering of sea water δ18O by interaction with new ocean crust is increasingly evident (Holland, 1984). The careful analysis of little-altered portions of Palaeozoic brachiopod shells (Popp et al., 1986; Veizer, Fritz & Jones, 1986) demonstrated that Palaeozoic sea water was not as isotopically depleted as previously thought. Similarly, Tucker (1986) and Fairchild & Spiro (1987) argued that the average pronounced isotopic depletion in late Proterozoic carbonates relates to mineralogical stabilization rather than changes in oxygen isotopic composition of sea water. The alternative approach of using chert-phosphate pairs to derive both palaeotemperatures and isotopic compositions of pore fluids (Karhu & Epstein, 1986) has yielded startlingly high palaeotemperatures in Precambrian samples. As so often with the chemical analysis of sedimentary rocks, such interpretations cannot be accepted until the mineralogical and petrological history of the analysed samples is well understood.

References


impurity cations. Chem. Geol. 27, 181–205.
Stable isotope study of karst-related dolomitization: Jurassic rocks from the coastal plain, Israel. / J. sedim. Petrol. 54, 236–256.


REFERENCES


REFERENCES


REFERENCES

379


REFERENCES

379

<http://jurassic.ru/>
Stockdale, P.B. (1926) The stratigraphic significance of
Aquatic Chemistry — an
calculating solubility of clay minerals. Clay Miner. 16, 361—373.
variation or the carbonate-Sr/S secular variations. C/S and Sr/86
S/C and 86384 REFERENCES
Van Houten, F.B. (1974) Northern Alpine Molasse and
INDEX

390

gold, coating of SEM samples with 249
graded concrete aggregates, grain size of 61, 84, 85
grain morphology 116–117
grain orientation 120, 121
grain size, determination and interpretation of 2, 13–14, 13
14, 63–85
analysis of lithified sediments 72–73, 73
Coulter counter 72
direct measurement of grain size 65
environmental interpretation from grain size data 86–88, 81, 82, 84
grain size analysis 73–80
alternative grain size distribution 79–80
curvature by statistical methods 76–78, 78
graphic presentation 74–75, 75, 76
moment methods 78–79
scales of size 73–74, 74
sample preparation 64–65
sizing 65–69, 66, 67
drying 66, 68
wet sizing 66–69
size analysis by sedimentation methods 69–72
pipette method 69–71, 70
sedimentation tube 71–72
sorting measurements 118–120, 118, 119, 120
see also texture
graphic logs
use of 25–27, 26, 28–31, 32
presentation 27, 33–34
Euymsm
optical properties of 112–113
staining for 98
X-ray diffraction of 206
hematite

cement formation by 139, 148–149, 152
optical properties of 112–113
halite

cement formation by 139, 151, 152
optical properties of 112–113
barytine, X-ray diffraction of 218
hematite, X-ray diffraction of 208
hydrochloric acid, sample decomposition by 304
hydrofluoric acid
sample decomposition by 304–305
use of in etching 96–97, 96
hydrogen
isotope fractionation of 293
in silicates 334
stable isotopes 294
illites
boron absorption by 343
optical properties of 112–113
scanning electron microscopy of 258, 259
un cite-lilte transformation 261, 263
X-ray diffraction of 206, 218, 219, 220
individual mineral replacement fabrics 125, 159–160, 161, 162
inductively-coupled plasma atomic emission spectrometry 319–320, 319
analysis of carbonates by 320–325, 309, 322, 323, 324, 325
inductively-coupled plasma spectrometry 318–325, 318
induration and weathering, recording of 17
instrument neutron activation analysis 325
Jacob staff, use of 24–25, 25
jadite, as Na standard for electron beam microanalysis 312
kaolinite
optical properties of 112–113
replacement of by illite 261
scanning electron microscopy of 236, 259
X-ray diffraction of 207, 218, 219, 220
large-scale replacement fabrics 160, 163
lateral relations, recording of 27, 35, 36
lepidocrocite, X-ray diffraction of 207
limestone diagenesis 266–267
limestones
bedding of 19, 20
determination of organic carbon in 300
dolomitization of 268, 269
etching of 97, 243
identification and description of 10–12
microscopical examination of scanning electron microscopy 244
slices 88–89, 88
thin sections 95
scanning electron microscopy of carbonate grains 265
cementation of carbonates 265–266, 267
diagenetic-carbonate porosity 267–268
dolomitization 268, 269
limonite, cement formation by 109–109
lithofacies codes, use of 25–27, 33–34
Munsell Colour System 15, 77
muscovite
opal-A, X-ray diffraction of 227, 229
opal-CT, X-ray diffraction of 227–228
opal-calcite
optical properties of 112–113
X-ray diffraction of 208
optical properties of 112–113
stable isotopes 294
paleoecosystem data, collection and analysis of 27, 30–32, 34, 37–50
interpretation of results 46–50
bedform hierarchies 46–48, 47, 48, 49
paleoecosystem patterns 49–50, 51
relationship of sedimentary structures to environment 49, 50
use of variability in environmental interpretation 48–49
measurement of directional structures 31–32, 34, 37–41
cross-stratification 32, 34, 37
flute marks 38
imbraction and clast orientation 37–38, 38
linear structures 31–32
sampling 39–41
slump folds 38–39, 39, 40
presentation of data 43–46, 43, 44
removal of tectonic effects 41–43, 41, 42
polygons, X-ray diffraction of 218, 219, 220
peels 2, 101–103
material and solvents for 101
preparation of 101–102
stained peels 101–102
processing samples 86, 87
sedimentary petrography 2, 108–110
components and petrofabrics 109–110
deposition fabrics 110–121
stained peels 110–121
111, 117, 118, 120, 121, 122, 122, 124, 125
fabric features 123–125, 125
127, 128–132, 133, 134–138
140–151, 133
154–160
recording of data 167–173, 168–171, 172, 173
techniques and tools 108–109
slices 2, 86–89
examination of cut faces 88–89
preparation of 87–88
staining 2, 97–101
aragonite 98
calcite 99–100
calcium minerals 100
magnesite 98
magnesium and anhydrite 98
magnesium carbonate biostimulation 100–101
thin section preparation 89–95
high quality section-making process 96
97, 97
pyroxene

calcite 99
pyrolusite 112–113
nomenclature 123–124, 128–129
porous rocks
scanning electron microscopy of 241–243
dried-air samples 242
critical points of 243
freeze drying 243
oilsaturated samples 242–243
potassium hydroxide, sample decomposition by 305
Powder Diffraction Index for Minerals (JCPDS) 204–205
provenance studies 120–121, 122, 123, 339–342, 340, 341
use of cathodoluminescence microscopy in 102, 105
pyrite
optical properties of 112–113
X-ray diffraction of 208
quartz
as Si standard for electron beam microanalysis 312
cathodoluminescence microscopy of 182, 187–188
cement formation by 139, 142, 144, 152, 167
optical properties of 112–113
scanning electron microscopy of 236, 258, 259
trimming and mounting 103
washing prepared sample 102
preparation of 101–102
use of in description of carbonate rocks 10
see also slices, thin sections
preparation of 95–96
penettite, X-ray diffraction of 207
pericline, as Mg standard for electron beam microanalysis 312
petrographic microscope 106
phosphates
cement formation by 139, 151, 152
optical properties of 112–113
photomicrography 106
plagioclase
diagenetic processes in 113
optical properties of 112–113
polyhedral
pores
porosity and permeability 15, 84, 85, 259, 260, 264, 269
carbonates 267–268, 269
nomenclature 123–124, 128–129
porous rocks
scanning electron microscopy of 241–243
air-dried samples 242
critical points of 243
freeze drying 243
oil-saturated samples 242–243
potassium hydroxide, sample decomposition by 305
Potassium Diffraction Index for Minerals (JCPDS) 204–205
provenance studies 120–121, 122, 123, 339–342, 340, 341
use of cathodoluminescence microscopy in 102, 105
pyrite
optical properties of 112–113
X-ray diffraction of 208
identification and description of 6
microscopic examination of
slices 88
thin sections 90—91
scanning electron microscopy of
quartz 245—246
see also field spar, quartz
saponite, X-ray diffraction of 206
sandstone diagenesis 167
replacement 302—303
sedimentary facies and sequence
modeling 58—59
problems of SEM operation 133
porous rocks viewed on fractured
surfaces 241—243
sedimentary grains 258—264
sedimentary rocks 257—258
sandstone cross-sections 262—263
dissolution and replacement of
grains 260, 261
dissolution at grain contact 260,
detrital and authigenic phases
258, 260, 261
diagenetic sequence 262—263
diagenesis 258-264
problems of SEM operation
250—252
poor photographs 251—252,
porous rock image 250—251
quartz grain surface textures
252—258
ancient deposits 257
experimental work 256—257
processes, textures and
procedures 253—256, 253, 254,
quartz overgrowths 259, 261
Rayleigh test, in presentation of
palaeocurrent data 45
replacement 252—258
sedimentary rocks 257—258
sandstone diagenesis 167
replacement 302—303
sedimentary facies and sequence
modeling 58—59
problems of SEM operation 133
porous rocks viewed on fractured
surfaces 241—243
sedimentary grains 258—264
sedimentary rocks 257—258
sandstone cross-sections 262—263
dissolution and replacement of
grains 260, 261
dissolution at grain contact 260,
detrital and authigenic phases
258, 260, 261
diagenetic sequence 262—263
diagenesis 258-264
problems of SEM operation
250—252
poor photographs 251—252,
porous rock image 250—251
quartz grain surface textures
252—258
ancient deposits 257
experimental work 256—257
processes, textures and
procedures 253—256, 253, 254,
quartz overgrowths 259, 261
Rayleigh test, in presentation of
palaeocurrent data 45
replacement 252—258
sedimentary rocks 257—258
sandstone diagenesis 167
replacement 302—303
sedimentary facies and sequence
modeling 58—59
problems of SEM operation 133
porous rocks viewed on fractured
surfaces 241—243
sedimentary grains 258—264
sedimentary rocks 257—258
sandstone cross-sections 262—263
dissolution and replacement of
grains 260, 261

Techniques in Sedimentology

The techniques available for the study of sediments and sedimentary rocks form the focus of this book. While field aspects are included, greater emphasis is placed on the laboratory examination of sediments. Each chapter provides introductory background material and then proceeds to a discussion of technique, the equipment, and its limitations. Examples are included of how the techniques can be used to solve sedimentological problems. Techniques in Sedimentology will be an unrivalled textbook for undergraduate and postgraduate students and of great use to many other geologists.

Some titles of related interest

Sedimentary Environments and Facies
H.G. Reading
This book describes present day sedimentary environments and discusses the recognition of ancient analogues. It emphasizes processes and their products, the use of facies, facies associations and sequences in the interpretation of ancient rocks. It has been designed for final year undergraduates, postgraduates and professional geologists, especially those working on industrial problems.

Foreland Basins
Special Publications of the International Society of Sedimentologists No. 8
Edited by P.A. Allen and P. Homewood
1986. 462 pages, 270 illustrations
The outcome of a symposium held in Friburg, Switzerland, this book represents a collection of case-studies covering a wide range of basin types and tectonic and stratigraphic settings. The text will be of special interest to teachers, researchers and petroleum geologists concerned with the relationships between tectonics and sedimentation.

Paleosols: their Recognition and Interpretation
Edited by V.P. Wright
1986. 330 pages, 97 illustrations
This book contains selected reviews and case studies on paleopedology, including the geological history of soils, time resolution in alluvial stratigraphy, and Quaternary pedogenesis. Case studies illustrating the various approaches to paleosols and their uses in archaeology, stratigraphy, sedimentology and basin analysis are also included.

Deformation of Sediments and Sedimentary Rocks
Special Publications of the Geological Society No. 29
Edited by M.E. Jones and R.M.F. Preston
1987. 358 pages, 275 illustrations
This text reports the proceedings of an international conference held at University College, London, in April 1985. It contains theoretical and field studies and gives descriptive accounts of areas as well as the mechanisms of sediment deformation. It will be of great use to sedimentologists and structural geologists in academic institutions, in the field and in the oil industry.

Sedimentary Petrology: an Introduction
Geoscience Texts, Volume 3
M.E. Tucker
1981. 260 pages, 180 illustrations
Some 70% of the rocks at the earth's surface are sedimentary in origin, yet only recently have their formation processes been appreciated. This book concentrates on up-to-date information and a concise account of sedimentary petrology. Each rock group is examined in turn, with composition, petrography, sedimentary structures and diagenesis being discussed. This is a welcome addition to textbooks for first- and second-year undergraduates.

Carbonate Sedimentology
M.E. Tucker and V.P. Wright
Early 1990. 496 pages, 394 illustrations
This book covers the generation, sedimentation and subsequent diagenesis of carbonate sediments in every major environmental setting. The aim is to explain the principles underlying the processes which control carbonate rock generation. Primarily an undergraduate textbook, it will also be invaluable to teachers and to geologists in industry.

BLACKWELL SCIENTIFIC PUBLICATIONS LTD
Oxney Mead, Oxford OX2 0EL
8 John Street, London WC1N 2DE
23 Ainslie Place, Edinburgh EH8 9YF
3 Cambridge Center, 30 Cambridge Center, Massachusetts 02142, USA
107 Barry Street, Carlton, Victoria 3053, Australia